

Information Technology-
Telecommunications and Information Exchange Between Systems –
LAN/MAN Specific Requirements –

Air Interface for Fixed Broadband Wireless Access Systems Part A: Systems between 2 and 11 GHz

~~Spensor-~~
~~LAN MAN Standards Committee~~
~~of the IEEE Computer Society~~

Abstract: This document is an amendment to the IEEE 802.16 standard for medium-access and physical layer components that meet the functional requirements of a point-to-multipoint Broadband Wireless Access (BWA) system between 2 and 11 GHz as defined by the IEEE 802.16 Working Group. Detailed logical, electrical, and signal processing specifications are presented that enable the production of interoperable equipment.

Keywords: wireless metropolitan area network (WirelessMAN[TM]) standards, fixed broadband wireless access networks, millimeter waves

1

-
- The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.
3 Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5997, USA
~~All rights reserved. Published August 2000. Printed in the United States of America.~~
~~Print: ISBN 0-7381-xxxx-x SHxxxxx~~
~~PDF: ISBN 0-7381-xxxx-x SSxxxxx~~

~~No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form, in an electronic retrieval system or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.~~

This is an unapproved document being circulated by the 802.16a/b editorial team for comment. 1

IEEE Standards documents are developed within the IEEE Societies and the Standards Coordinating Committees of the IEEE Standards Association (IEEE-SA) Standards Board. Members of the committees serve voluntarily and without compensation. They are not necessarily members of the Institute. The standards developed within IEEE represent a consensus of the broad expertise on the subject within the Institute as well as those activities outside of IEEE that have expressed an interest in participating in the development of the standard.

Use of an IEEE Standard is wholly voluntary. The existence of an IEEE Standard does not imply that there are no other ways to produce, test, measure, purchase, market, or provide other goods and services related to the scope of the IEEE Standard. Furthermore, the viewpoint expressed at the time a standard is approved and issued is subject to change brought about through developments in the state of the art and comments received from users of the standard. Every IEEE Standard is subjected to review at least every five years for revision or reaffirmation. When a document is more than five years old and has not been reaffirmed, it is reasonable to conclude that its contents, although still of some value, do not wholly reflect the present state of the art. Users are cautioned to check to determine that they have the latest edition of any IEEE Standard.

Comments for revision of IEEE Standards are welcome from any interested party, regardless of membership affiliation with IEEE. Suggestions for changes in documents should be in the form of a proposed change of text, together with appropriate supporting comments.

Interpretations: Occasionally questions may arise regarding the meaning of portions of standards as they relate to specific applications. When the need for interpretations is brought to the attention of IEEE, the Institute will initiate action to prepare appropriate responses. Since IEEE Standards represent a consensus of all concerned interests, it is important to ensure that any interpretation has also received the concurrence of a balance of interests. For this reason, IEEE and the members of its societies and Standards Coordinating Committees are not able to provide an instant response to interpretation requests except in those cases where the matter has previously received formal consideration.

Comments on standards and requests for interpretations should be addressed to:

Secretary, IEEE-SA Standards Board
445 Hoes Lane
P.O. Box 1331
Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331
USA

Note: Attention is called to the possibility that implementation of this standard may require use of subject matter covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken with respect to the existence or validity of any patent rights in connection therewith. The IEEE shall not be responsible for identifying patents for which a license may be required by an IEEE standard or for conducting inquiries into the legal validity or scope of those patents that are brought to its attention

IEEE is the sole entity that may authorize the use of certification marks, trademarks, or other designations to indicate compliance with the materials set forth herein.

Authorization to photocopy portions of any individual standard for internal or personal use is granted by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc., provided that the appropriate fee is paid to Copyright Clearance Center. To arrange for payment of licensing fee, please contact Copyright Clearance Center, Customer Service, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923 USA; (978) 750-8400. Permission to photocopy portions of any individual standard for educational classroom use can also be obtained through the Copyright Clearance Center.

1 **Introduction**

2
3
4 (This introduction is not part of IEEE Std 802.16, IEEE Standard for Broadband Wireless Access.)

5
6 This document defines services and protocol elements that permit the exchange of management information
7 between stations attached to IEEE 802 local and metropolitan area networks. The standard includes the
8 specification of managed objects that permit the operation of the protocol elements to be remotely managed.
9

10
11
12 **Participants**

13
14
15 ~~At the time the draft of this standard was sent to sponsor ballot, the IEEE 802.16 Working Group on Broad-~~
16 ~~band Wireless Access had the following members:~~

17
18 Current list of responsible officials:

19

20 Roger B. Marks,	Chair 802.16
21 Brian Kiernan,	Chair 802.16a
22 Durga Satapathy,	Chair 802.16b
23 Nico van Waes,	Editor 8.3.1, 8.3.2, 8.3.3, 8.3.6.1, 8.3.6.2, 8.3.6.3,...
24	bibliography, appendices
25	
26 Anader Benyamin - Seeyar,	Editor 8.3.5
27 Octavian Sarca,	Editor 8.3.6.4
28 Ken Peirce,	Editor 8.3.4
29	
30	

31
32
33 <list of voting members>
34
35

36
37
38
39
40 *Member Emeritus

41
42 Also included is the following nonvoting IEEE-SA Standards Board liaison:
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

Contents

8.3 Physical Layer for frequencies between 2 and 11 GHz

8.3.1 Introduction.....	14
8.3.1.1 General.....	14
8.3.1.1.1 PHY Components.....	14
8.3.1.1.1.1 Scrambling.....	15
8.3.1.1.1.2 Channel Coding.....	15
8.3.1.1.1.3 Interleaving.....	15
8.3.1.1.1.4 Modulation.....	15
8.3.1.1.1.5 Single Carrier - Frequency Domain Equalization.....	15
8.3.1.1.1.6 Time/Frequency Map.....	16
8.3.1.1.1.7 Frequency and Time Domain Processing (F&T).....	17
8.3.1.1.1.8 RF Transceiver (RF TX and RF RX).....	17
8.3.1.2 Key System Capabilities.....	17
8.3.2 Targeted frequency bands, channel bandwidths and applicable Masks.....	17
8.3.2.1 Frequency range and the channel bandwidth.....	17
8.3.2.2 Licensed Bands.....	18
8.3.2.3 License Exempt Bands.....	20
8.3.2.3.1 Introduction.....	20
8.3.2.3.2 USA.....	21
8.3.3 Downlink and Uplink Channels.....	21
8.3.3.1 Introduction.....	21
8.3.3.1.1 Duplexing Modes.....	21
8.3.3.1.2 Multiple Access.....	22
8.3.3.1.3 Transmission Stream.....	22
8.3.3.1.4 Scrambling (randomization).....	22
8.3.3.1.5 Channel Coding Schemes.....	22
8.3.3.1.5.1 Downlink Channel FEC.....	22
8.3.3.1.5.2 Concatenated Reed Solomon / Convolutional Code:.....	22
8.3.3.1.5.3 Turbo Product Coding (optional).....	25
8.3.3.1.5.4 Constellation mapping.....	29
8.3.3.1.6 Adaptive Modulations.....	30
8.3.3.2 Downlink.....	30
8.3.3.2.1 Downlink multiplexing.....	30
8.3.3.2.2 Downlink Modulation Schemes.....	31
8.3.3.3 Uplink.....	31
8.3.3.3.1 Uplink Modulation Schemes.....	31
8.3.4 MAC and PHY Interface.....	32
8.3.4.1 Overview.....	32
8.3.4.2 Downlink and Uplink Operation.....	32
8.3.4.2.1 Mode A - Continuous Downlink.....	32
8.3.4.2.2 Mode B - Burst Downlink.....	33
8.3.4.2.2.1 Uplink.....	34
8.3.4.3 Multiplexing and Multiple Access Technique.....	34
8.3.4.3.1 Duplexing Technique.....	34
8.3.4.3.1.1 Mode A: Continuous Downstream for FDD Systems.....	34

1	8.3.4.3.1.2 Mode B: Burst Downstream for Burst FDD Systems.....	35
2	8.3.4.3.1.3 Mode B: Burst Downstream for TDD Systems.....	35
3	8.3.4.3.2 Uplink Burst Subframe Structure.....	37
4	8.3.4.3.2.1 Mode A and Mode B: Uplink Burst Profile Modes.....	37
5	8.3.4.3.3 PHY SAP Parameter Definitions.....	38
6	8.3.4.3.4 Downlink Physical Layer.....	38
7	8.3.4.3.4.1 Physical layer type (PHY type) encodings.....	38
8	8.3.4.3.4.2 Mode A: Continuous Downlink Transmission.....	38
9	8.3.4.3.4.3 Downlink Mode A: Message field definitions.....	39
10	8.3.4.3.4.4 Mode B: Burst Downlink Transmission.....	40
11	8.3.4.4 OFDM PHY Burst Definition and MAP Messages.....	44
12	8.3.4.5 OFDMA PHY Burst Definition and MAP Messages.....	44
13	8.3.4.5.1 Introduction.....	44
14	8.3.4.5.2 Basic Parameters.....	45
15	8.3.4.5.2.1 Region and PHY Burst.....	45
16	8.3.4.5.2.2 UL Transmission.....	45
17	8.3.4.5.2.3 DL Transmissions.....	47
18	8.3.5 Single Carrier PHY Layer.....	51
19	8.3.5.1 General.....	51
20	8.3.5.2 Single Carrier PHY Features.....	51
21	8.3.5.3 SC-FDE Wireless Access System Model.....	52
22	8.3.5.4 Single-Carrier with Frequency Domain Equalization (SC-FDE) Scheme.....	53
23	8.3.5.4.1 Single Carrier-Frequency Domain Equalization (SC-FDE).....	55
24	8.3.5.4.2 Compatibility of Single Carrier (SC-FDE) and OFDM.....	56
25	8.3.5.5 DL: Randomization, FEC, Interleaving, Symbol Mapping, Baseband Shaping	57
26	8.3.5.5.1 Randomization for Spectrum Shaping.....	57
27	8.3.5.5.2 Downlink Channel FEC definitions.....	57
28	8.3.5.5.2.1 Concatenated Reed-Solomon+Convolutional code.....	57
29	8.3.5.5.2.2 Turbo Product Code.....	58
30	8.3.5.5.3 Symbol Mapping.....	61
31	8.3.5.5.4 Baseband Pulse Shaping.....	61
32	8.3.5.6 UL Channel.....	62
33	8.3.5.6.1 UL Multiple Access.....	62
34	8.3.5.6.2 UL Modulation Format.....	62
35	8.3.5.7 UL: Randomization, FEC, Interleaving, Symbol Mapping Baseband Shaping.	62
36	8.3.5.7.1 Randomization for Spectrum Shaping.....	62
37	8.3.5.7.2 FEC schemes for the uplink channel.....	62
38	8.3.5.7.3 Interleaving for the uplink channel.....	62
39	8.3.5.7.4 Baseband Pulse Shaping.....	63
40	8.3.5.8 Multiple Access Formats and Framing.....	63
41	8.3.5.9 Overview of Frame Formats and Their Application.....	63
42	8.3.5.10 Continuous Transmission Format.....	64
43	8.3.5.10.1 Unique Word: Interval Requirements and Usage.....	64
44	8.3.5.10.1.1 Unique Word Interval Requirements.....	64
45	8.3.5.10.1.2 Unique Word Usage.....	64
46	8.3.5.10.2 Frame Header Indication Sequence: Requirements and Usage.	64
47	8.3.5.10.2.1 Frame Header Indication Sequence Requirements.....	65
48	8.3.5.10.2.2 Frame Header Indication Sequence Usage.....	65
49	8.3.5.10.3 Adaptive Modulation.....	66
50	8.3.5.10.3.1 Concept of Adaptive Modulation.....	66
51	8.3.5.10.3.2 Frame Control Header Information and Adaptive Modulation.....	66
52	8.3.5.10.3.3 Adaptive Modulation Sequencing.....	66
53	8.3.5.10.3.4 UW Boundary-free Transitions Between Modulation Types..	67

1	8.3.5.10.3.5 Per-Adaptive-Modulation-Type FEC Encapsulation.....	67
2	8.3.5.10.3.6 MAC Header FEC Encapsulation.....	67
3	8.3.5.10.4 Empty payloads.....	67
4	8.3.5.10.5 Additional Pilot Symbols.....	67
5	8.3.5.11 Burst Transmission Format.....	69
6	8.3.5.11.1 Burst Ramping: Ramp-Up and Ramp-Down.....	69
7	8.3.5.11.2 Unique Word: Description and Usage within a burst.....	70
8	8.3.5.11.2.1 Unique Word: Interval Requirements.....	70
9	8.3.5.11.2.2 Unique Word Usage.....	71
10	8.3.5.11.3 Additional Pilot Symbols.....	71
11	8.3.5.11.4 Burst Element Details Including the Acquisition Preamble.....	72
12	8.3.5.11.5 Details Pertinent to TDMA Bursts.....	73
13	8.3.5.11.6 Details Pertinent to TDM Bursts.....	74
14	8.3.5.11.6.1 Adaptive Modulation Sequencing for TDM bursts.....	74
15	8.3.5.11.6.2 UW Boundary-free Transitions Between Modulation Types (TDM) ...	74
16	8.3.5.11.6.3 Per-Adaptive-Modulation-Type FEC Encapsulation (TDM)...	74
17	8.3.5.11.6.4 MAC Header FEC Encapsulation (TDM).....	74
18	8.3.5.12 Unique Word Details.....	74
19	8.3.5.12.1 Unique Word Sequence Design Criteria.....	74
20	8.3.5.12.2 Unique Word Sequence Specification.....	75
21	8.3.5.13 FFT Interval (UW Interval) Specifications.....	75
22	8.3.5.14 Framing Recommendations for Transmit Diversity.....	76
23	8.3.5.15 The Alamouti Algorithm.....	76
24	8.3.5.16 Standard Burst Configuration.....	79
25	8.3.5.17 Antenna Systems.....	80
26	8.3.5.17.1 Application of Smart Antenna.....	80
27	8.3.5.17.2 Antenna Diversity.....	80
28	8.3.5.18 SC-FDE System Capacity and Modulation Efficiency.....	81
29	8.3.5.18.0.1 System Capacity:.....	81
30	8.3.5.18.1 SC-FDE System Throughput.....	82
31	8.3.6 OFDM PHY Layers.....	84
32	8.3.6.1 Introduction.....	84
33	8.3.6.1.1 Generic OFDM Symbol description.....	84
34	8.3.6.1.2 Time domain description.....	85
35	8.3.6.1.3 Frequency Domain Description.....	86
36	8.3.6.1.4 Overview of OFDM Symbol Parameters.....	87
37	8.3.6.2 Common elements.....	92
38	8.3.6.2.1 PMP Frame structure.....	92
39	8.3.6.2.2 Ranging.....	93
40	8.3.6.2.3 Multiple Antenna Technology (optional).....	93
41	8.3.6.2.3.1 Transmit diversity Alamouti's Space-Time Coding.....	93
42	8.3.6.2.3.2 MISO channel estimation and synchronization.....	94
43	8.3.6.2.3.3 Alamouti STC Encoding.....	94
44	8.3.6.2.3.4 Alamouti STC Decoding.....	95
45	8.3.6.3 OFDM PHY Layer for licensed bands.....	96
46	8.3.6.3.1 Introduction.....	96
47	8.3.6.3.2 Common elements.....	96
48	8.3.6.3.2.1 Channel Coding.....	96
49	8.3.6.3.2.2 Modulation.....	98
50	8.3.6.3.2.3 Framing Structure.....	99
51	8.3.6.3.2.4 Control Mechanisms.....	100
52	8.3.6.3.3 Mode A - OFDM.....	101
53	8.3.6.3.3.1 OFDM Symbol Parameters.....	101
54		
55		
56		
57		
58		
59		
60		
61		
62		
63		
64		
65		

1	8.3.6.3.3.2 Channel Coding.....	102
2	8.3.6.3.3.3 Control Mechanisms.....	105
3	8.3.6.3.3.4 Frame structure.....	106
4	8.3.6.3.3.5 Preamble structure.....	106
5	8.3.6.3.3.6 Alamouti STC preambles (optional).....	106
6	8.3.6.3.4 Mode B - OFDMA.....	107
7	8.3.6.3.4.1 OFDM Symbol Parameters.....	107
8	8.3.6.3.4.2 Channel Coding.....	112
9	8.3.6.3.4.3 Control Mechanisms.....	114
10	8.3.6.3.4.4 Frame structure.....	116
11	8.3.6.3.4.5 Alamouti STC preamble (optional).....	118
12	8.3.6.3.5 Mode C (optional).....	118
13	8.3.6.3.5.1 Symbol Structure.....	118
14	8.3.6.3.5.2 Frame Format.....	118
15	8.3.6.3.5.3 Superframe Format.....	120
16	8.3.6.4 OFDM PHY Layer for license-exempt bands.....	122
17	8.3.6.4.1 Introduction.....	122
18	8.3.6.4.2 Common elements.....	122
19	8.3.6.4.2.1 Symbol Description.....	122
20	8.3.6.4.2.2 Preambles.....	123
21	8.3.6.4.2.3 Transmitter Requirements.....	124
22	8.3.6.4.2.4 Receiver Requirements.....	128
23	8.3.6.4.2.5 Frequency Control Requirements.....	129
24	8.3.6.4.2.6 Channel Coding.....	131
25	8.3.6.4.2.7 Control mechanisms.....	137
26	8.3.6.4.3 Mode A - OFDM, 64 FFT.....	137
27	8.3.6.4.3.1 OFDM Symbol Parameters.....	137
28	8.3.6.4.3.2 Channel Coding.....	137
29	8.3.6.4.3.3 Control Mechanisms.....	137
30	8.3.6.4.4 Mode B - OFDM, 256 FFT.....	138
31	8.3.6.4.4.1 OFDM Symbol Parameters.....	138
32	8.3.6.4.4.2 Channel Coding.....	138
33	8.3.6.4.4.3 Control Mechanisms.....	138
34	8.3.6.4.5 Mode C - OFDMA (optional).....	138
35	8.3.6.4.5.1 Channel Coding.....	139
36	8.3.6.4.5.2 Control Mechanisms.....	139
37	8.3.7 Bibliography.....	140
38	8.3.8 Annex TPC.....	142
39	8.3.8.1 Example of a Shortened 2-Dimensional TPC.....	142
40	8.3.8.2 Iterative Decoding.....	142
41	8.3.9 Annex License-exempt.....	144
42	8.3.9.1 Coexistence in middle UNII band: Interference and Sharing Mechanisms	144
43	8.3.9.1.1 General.....	144
44	8.3.9.1.2 EESS SAR interference requirement.....	144
45	8.3.9.1.3 Antenna directivity to mitigate interference to EESS.....	144
46	8.3.9.1.4 DFS to mitigate interference.....	146
47	8.3.9.1.5 Transmitted power control to mitigate interference.....	146
48	8.3.9.1.6 Antenna polarization to mitigate interference.....	146
49	8.3.9.1.7 No-transmit mode when a Spaceborne SAR is in the area.....	146
50	8.3.9.1.8 Other ways to mitigate interference.....	146
51	8.3.9.2 Recommended practice for cellular & sectorized operation.....	146

1	8.3.9.2.1 Time synchronization in sectorized environments.....	146
2	8.3.9.2.2 Time synchronization in cellular environments.....	147
3	8.3.9.2.3 Power coordination in sectorized environments.....	147
4	8.3.9.2.4 Power coordination in cellular environments.....	147
5	8.3.9.2.5 Dynamic frequency selection in sectorized environments.....	148
6	8.3.9.2.6 Dynamic frequency selection in cellular environments.....	148
7	8.3.9.3 Loose parts for further discussion.....	148
8	8.3.9.3.1 Power Control.....	148
9	8.3.9.3.1.1 Frequency Bands 10 - 66GHz.....	148
10	8.3.9.3.1.2 License Exempt Bands.....	148
11	8.3.9.3.1.3 Downlink Power Control.....	149
12	8.3.9.3.1.4 Uplink Power Control.....	149
13	8.3.9.3.1.5 Uplink Power Control in Ranging Request (RNG-REQ).....	149
14	8.3.9.3.2 Ranging and Access schemes.....	149
15	8.3.9.3.2.1 Subcarrier-based polling using on-off keying.....	150
16	8.3.9.3.2.2 Subcarrier-based polling using DBPSK.....	150
17	8.3.9.4 Channel and Interference Model.....	150
18	8.3.9.4.1 Introduction.....	150
19	8.3.9.4.2 Multipath channel.....	151
20	8.3.9.4.3 Interference models.....	152
21	8.3.9.4.3.1 Basic assumptions.....	153
22	8.3.9.4.3.2 Signal Wave shape.....	153
23	8.3.9.4.3.3 Generating Procedure.....	154
24	8.3.9.4.4 Radio Impairments.....	154
25	8.3.9.4.4.1 Power amplifier non-linearity.....	154
26	8.3.9.4.4.2 Phase noise.....	155
27	8.3.10 Annex: MIMO Systems and Beamforming Antenna Technology.....	155
28	8.3.10.1 Introduction.....	155
29	8.3.10.2 Multiple Input (MI) Systems.....	157
30	8.3.10.3 Multiple Output Systems.....	158
31	8.3.10.4 Application of Beam Forming Antenna Technology.....	158
32	8.3.11 Annex: SC LINK Budget Analysis.....	162
33	8.3.12 Annex OFDM/OFDMA - FDD/TDD Co-existence.....	164
34		
35		
36		
37		
38		
39		
40		
41		
42		
43		
44		
45		
46		
47		
48		
49		
50		
51		
52		
53		
54		
55		
56		
57		
58		
59		
60		
61		
62		
63		
64		
65		

Figures

Figure 1—Generic OFDM PHY Block Diagram.....	14
Figure 2—SC-FDE Decision Feedback Equalization at the Receiver.....	16
Figure 3—Time/Frequency Mapping Function.....	16
Figure 4—ETSI OFDM spectral mask.....	18
Figure 5—ETSI SC Mask.....	19
Figure 6—WCS Spectral Mask.....	20
Figure 7—MMDS Spectral Mask.....	20
Figure 8—Concatenated Reed Solomon / Convolutional Code Encoder Block.....	23
Figure 9—Convolutional encoder of rate 1/2.....	24
Figure 10—Two-dimensional TPC Matrix.....	26
Figure 11—Example of an encoded TPC block.....	27
Figure 12—BPSK, QPSK, 16 QAM and 64 QAM constellations.....	29
Figure 13—256 QAM Constellation (SC mode only).....	30
Figure 14—Example of burst FDD Bandwidth Allocation.....	33
Figure 15—TDD Frame.....	35
Figure 16—Downlink MAP usage and shortened FEC blocks.....	36
Figure 17—Uplink Subframe Structure.....	37
Figure 18—Uplink Mapping in the Continuous Downstream FDD Case.....	38
Figure 19—PHY Synchronization Field (PHY Type = 2).....	39
Figure 20—UL-MAP Alloc Start Time.....	40
Figure 21—Mode B Downlink Subframe Structure.....	42
Figure 22—PHY Synchronization Field (PHY Type = {0,1}).....	43
Figure 23—Example of a Two dimensional Pattern.....	45
Figure 24—UL PHY Burst example.....	46
Figure 25—UL Burst definition Example #1.....	47
Figure 26—UL Burst Definition Example #2.....	47
Figure 27—DL Period example #1.....	48
Figure 28—DL Period example #2.....	49
Figure 29—DL Frame Prefix Structure.....	50
Figure 30—SC block diagram.....	52
Figure 31—OFDM Compatible SC PHY Block Diagram.....	53
Figure 32—SC-FDE with Linear Equalization.....	53
Figure 33—SC-FDE with Linear Equalization - Details.....	54
Figure 34—SC-FDE with Decision Feedback Equalizer (FD-DFE).....	54
Figure 35—OFDM and SC-FDE relation.....	55
Figure 36—OFDM and SC-FDE 'convertible' Modem.....	56
Figure 37—Block Processing in FDE.....	56
Figure 38—16 QAM Signal Mapping.....	59
Figure 39—64 QAM Signal Mapping.....	60
Figure 40—(39,32)2 TPC TCM Encoder.....	61
Figure 41—Unique Word Intervals for Continuous Format.....	64
Figure 42—Frame Header Intervals for Continuous Format.....	65
Figure 43—Frame Header Indication Sequence Position within a Unique Word Interval.....	65
Figure 44—Adaptive Modulation Sequencing within a Continuous Mode Frame.....	67
Figure 45—Extra pilot symbols addition examples, using Unique Word cyclic extension	68
Figure 46—Example Comparison of TDMA and TDM bursts.....	69
Figure 47—Extra pilot symbol addition examples using Unique Word cyclic extension	72
Figure 48—TDM/TDMA burst format: element locations and details.....	73
Figure 49—Example of optional TDM/TDMA burst format.....	73
Figure 50—Two Blocks (Unique Word Intervals) for Alamouti transmit diversity combining ..	76
Figure 51—Frame structure for Alamouti TX diversity signaling with channel estimation	78

1	Figure 52—Frame structure for Alamouti TX diversity signaling without channel estimation .	79
2	Figure 53—Standard Burst Configuration.....	79
3	Figure 54—Smallest Burst Configuration.....	80
4	Figure 55—SC-FDE with Smart Antenna Array.....	81
5	Figure 56—OFDM Symbol time structure.....	85
6	Figure 57—OFDM frequency description (256-FFT example).....	86
7	Figure 58—OFDMA frequency description (3 channel schematic example).....	86
8	Figure 59—Time Plan - One TDD time frame.....	93
9	Figure 60—Illustration of the Alamouti STC.....	94
10	Figure 61—Alamouti Scheme Usage with OFDM/OFDMA.....	95
11	Figure 62—PRBS for Data Randomization.....	96
12	Figure 63—PRBS for Bit-Interleaver Array.....	97
13	Figure 64—PRBS for pilot modulation.....	99
14	Figure 65—DL Frame Structure.....	100
15	Figure 66—OFDM Randomizer Initialization vector.....	102
16	Figure 67—Symbol Interleaver for 512 FFT.....	105
17	Figure 68—Ranging Symbol Allocation.....	105
18	Figure 69—Mode A UL Framing.....	106
19	Figure 70—Mode A DL Framing.....	106
20	Figure 71—Pilot and data carrier location in DL OFDMA symbol.....	108
21	Figure 72—Pilot and data carrier Allocation of UL Sub-channel.....	110
22	Figure 73—OFDMA Randomizer Initialization Vector.....	112
23	Figure 74—PRBS for Ranging Code Generation.....	114
24	Figure 75—Ranging subchannel allocation (2K mode default configuration).....	115
25	Figure 76—DL Framing.....	116
26	Figure 77—UL bandwidth Allocation.....	117
27	Figure 78—UL Framing.....	117
28	Figure 79—Downlink Framing.....	119
29	Figure 80—Downlink Framing, using Mode B Framing.....	119
30	Figure 81—UL Framing.....	120
31	Figure 82—UL Framing Example.....	120
32	Figure 83—Superframe Structure.....	120
33	Figure 84—Superframe Layout.....	121
34	Figure 85—Mesh Frame Structure (optional).....	122
35	Figure 86—Complete Preamble Structure.....	123
36	Figure 87—Shortened preamble: Long traing symbol with large GI.....	124
37	Figure 88—U-NII Frequency plan.....	125
38	Figure 89—Transmit Spectral Mask (see Table 35).....	126
39	Figure 90—Data Randomizer.....	132
40	Figure 91—Convolutional Encoder.....	133
41	Figure 92—Puncturing for R=3/4, Transmission and Reception.....	133
42	Figure 93—Puncturing for R=2/3, Transmission and Reception.....	134
43	Figure 94—Puncturing for R=1/2, Transmission and Reception.....	134
44	Figure 95—Turbo Encoder.....	135
45	Figure 96—RSC Encoder.....	135
46	Figure 97—Structure of Shortened 2d Block.....	142
47	Figure 98—2-D TPC Decoding Procedure.....	143
48	Figure 99—Basic Model.....	151
49	Figure 100—Power Profile (black) and realization (gray) (time staggered for clarity only) ...	152
50	Figure 101—Interference Model.....	153
51	Figure 102—Interference Signal Generation.....	154
52	Figure 103—Phase Noise PSD.....	155
53	Figure 104—Selection Diversity Receiver.....	158
54	Figure 105—Combining Diversity Receiver.....	158

Figure 106—MAC/PHY Coordination concept with Beam Forming Antenna..... 159

Figure 107—BS sector with 3 Subscribers..... 159

Figure 108—Beamforming Concept for TDD and FDD..... 160

Figure 109—FDD with Independent UL/DL Beam Forming Example..... 161

Figure 110—BS sector using Spacial Concatenated Communication..... 161

Figure 111—TDD with Concatenated Packet Transmission Example..... 162

Figure 112—Path Loss Model..... 162

Tables

Table 1—Frequency Bands and Channel Bandwidth.....	18
Table 2—U-NII Regulator Power Limitations.....	21
Table 3—The inner Convolutional code with Puncturing Configuration.....	25
Table 4—Hamming Code Generator Polynomials.....	26
Table 5—TPC Component Codes.....	27
Table 6— Downlink Modulation Schemes (M= Mandatory, O=Optional)...	31
Table 7—Downlink Modulation Schemes (M= Mandatory, O=Optional)...	31
Table 8—PHY Type Parameter encoding.....	38
Table 9—Allowable Frame Times.....	43
Table 10—UL profiles.....	46
Table 11—Inner Code rates per modulation.....	57
Table 12— Recommended TPC Codes.....	58
Table 13—UW lengths and Generator Polynomials for I Channel PN -Sequences....	75
Table 14—Multiplexing arrangement for block Alamouti-like processing...	76
Table 15—Mandatory burst encoding.....	80
Table 16—System Capacity Objectives Example.....	82
Table 17—Throughput for various Models in 1.75 MHz Channel.....	83
Table 18—MMDS Channelization Parameters.....	87
Table 19—ETSI Channelization Parameters.....	89
Table 20—PCS/WCS Channelization Parameters.....	91
Table 21—U-NII Channelization Parameters.....	92
Table 22—Normalization factors.....	98
Table 23—Symbol Parameters.....	102
Table 24—Mandatory Channel Coding per Modulation.....	103
Table 25—Optional Channel Coding per Modulation.....	103
Table 26—Number of bits in OFDM symbol.....	104
Table 27—Downlink Symbol Parameters.....	109
Table 28—Uplink Symbol Parameters.....	111
Table 29—Mandatory Channel Coding per Modulation.....	113
Table 30—Optional Channel Coding per Modulation.....	113
Table 31—Bit Interleaver Sizes.....	113
Table 32—Mandatory and optional modes.....	122
Table 33—Offset recovery capabilities.....	124
Table 34—Channelization.....	125
Table 35—Transmit Spectral Mask Parameters.....	126
Table 36—Spectral Flatness.....	127
Table 37—Receiver Sensitivity.....	128
Table 38—Minimum Adjacent and Non-Adjacent Channel Rejection.....	128
Table 39—Interference Requirements.....	129
Table 40—Operational Temperature Classes.....	130
Table 41—Channel Coding Schemes.....	131
Table 42—Puncturing patterns.....	135
Table 43—BPSK Channel Coding.....	138
Table 44—BPSK Channel Coding.....	139
Table 45—Single U-NII BFWA to SAR-4 Interference.....	145

1 Table 46—Delay spread parameters.....156
2 Table 47—Channel Model.....163
3 Table 48—Typical Link Budgets for SC and OFDM for QPSK (1.5 and 6 MHz) ...164
4 Table 49—Typical Link Budget for SC and OFDM for 64QAM (1.5 and 6 MHz) .164
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

8.3 Physical Layer for frequencies between 2 and 11 GHz

8.3.1 Introduction

In order to claim compliance of a system with the IEEE 802.16 standard for licensed frequencies between 2 and 11 GHz, the system SHALL comply with the Single Carrier (SC) Physical Layer (PHY) as described in clause 8.3.5 or the Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing (OFDM) PHY as described in clause 8.3.6.2 and 8.3.6.3. The system MAY implement both PHYs. It SHALL further comply with all requirements set out in clause 8.3.1 through 8.3.4 that apply to the implemented PHY(s) and with the Medium Access Control Layer (MAC) as described in ???.

In order to claim compliance of a system with the IEEE 802.16 standard for license-exempt frequencies, the system SHALL comply with the OFDM Physical Layer (PHY) as described in clause 8.3.6.2 and 8.3.6.4. It SHALL further comply with all requirements set out in clause 8.3.1 through 8.3.4 that apply to the implemented mode and with the Medium Access Control Layer (MAC) as described in ???.

8.3.1.1 General

8.3.1.1.1 PHY Components

Conceptually, the PHY can be described in terms of upper and lower physical layers. As part of the upper physical layer, higher layer (data link, transport, session, etc.) information and PHY control/management data (e.g., training and synchronization) are mapped to symbols. For transmit data, the upper physical layer includes randomization, channel coding, interleaving and modulation to form data symbols, while the lower physical layer maps the data symbols to tones and forms either OFDM symbols or unique words.

The PHY specification addresses the definition of each of the blocks shown in Figure 1. This figure is not meant to imply a specific method or manner of implementation. Neither is it intended to suggest that the same implementation of a block can be used for both an OFDM and SC based PHY.

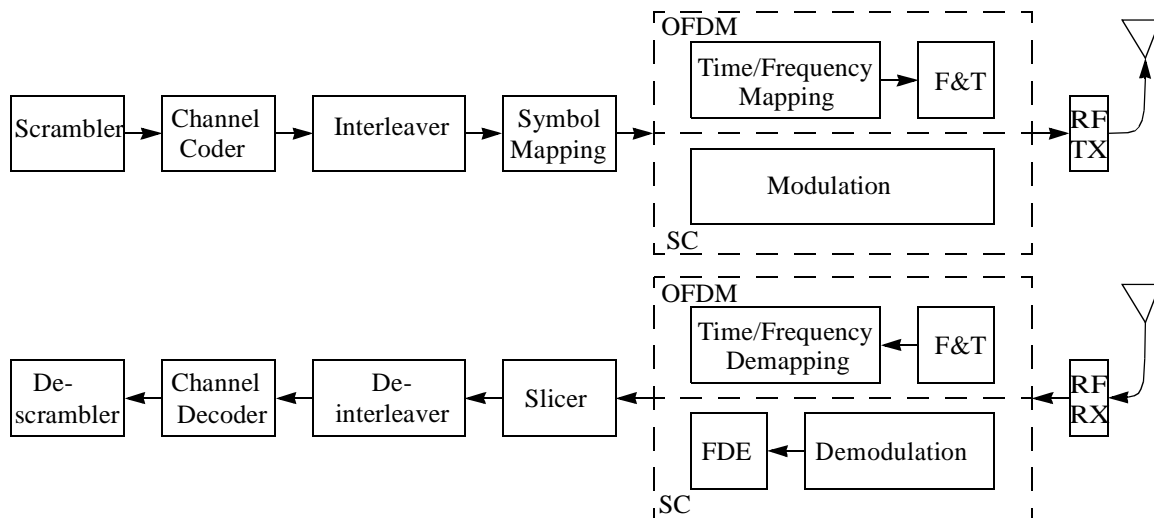


Figure 1—Generic OFDM PHY Block Diagram

8.3.1.1.1.1 Scrambling

The scrambling (randomization) ensures a uniform spectrum and sufficient bit transitions to simplify other PHY functions such as clock recovery and demodulation. Design criteria include the size of the scrambler (i.e., the number of bits), seed size, and how often the seed is set. A concern is how to set the scrambler so as to keep both ends of a communication link synchronized.

8.3.1.1.1.2 Channel Coding

The coding performance in different channel conditions (other than AWGN) is a significant design consideration, especially the performance in frequency selective faded channels. In some cases, coding effect should be understood in the context of other signal processing receiver techniques used by the system (such as diversity, space-time processing etc.). The amount of coding gain required may differ between uplink and downlink due to the different propagation characteristics these channels may have.

8.3.1.1.1.3 Interleaving

Interleaving is used to spread consecutive bits into separate symbols after modulation; the purpose of the interleaver is to prevent a series of consecutive bad symbols, which may occur due to channel conditions.

8.3.1.1.1.4 Modulation

Modulation is the means for mapping digital data to discrete or analog symbols in a manner that efficiently utilizes the available communication channel bandwidth. The goal of modulated data transmission is to transfer data to a distant receiver over a prescribed channel bandwidth, within transmit power, reliability, and receiver complexity constraints. Such modulated data transmission may be implemented using a single carrier or multiple carriers.

In a single carrier system, data is mapped to symbols and transmitted as a high-speed serial stream that is modulated, i.e., borne, upon a single carrier. At the receiver, an equalizer is used to compensate for any distortion resulting from a non-ideal frequency response of a channel. Of particular importance to the Single Carrier PHY is the Frequency Domain Equalizer (FDE). The FDE provides a low complexity means to compensate for severe multipath channel impairments.

In a multi-carrier system, data is mapped to symbols and then multiplexed into a number of simultaneous lower-speed streams, with each stream being modulated, i.e., borne, by a different carrier. The available channel bandwidth is thereby subdivided among these multiple carriers. Although the frequency response over the entire channel bandwidth may be non-ideal (i.e., non-constant), the spacing between the modulated carriers is chosen to be small, so that the frequency response over the signaling bandwidth of any modulated carrier is approximately constant. This facilitates a simple multiplicative method by which each carrier stream may be equalized to compensate for the overall channel non-ideality.

For OFDM, a channel is defined as consisting of all carriers residing within the full signaling bandwidth. Using OFDMA, sub-channels are defined as a fraction of the available carriers within the full signaling bandwidth.

8.3.1.1.1.5 Single Carrier - Frequency Domain Equalization

The Single Carrier (SC) system transmits a single carrier, modulated at a high symbol rate. Equalization is often required to compensate the received data for the effects due to multipath propagation, since the multipath creates inter-symbol interference among the received symbols. Time domain equalization is one method used to compensate for multipath effects in a SC system. Frequency Domain Equalization in a SC system is another method of channel equalization. Frequency domain equalization is simply the frequency domain analog of what is done by a conventional linear time domain equalizer. The convolution applied by a linear equalizer in the time domain is replaced by multiplication applied by a frequency domain equalizer in the frequency domain. Since frequency domain equalizer

operates upon blocks of data at a time, using computationally efficient FFTs, IFFTs, it can be computationally more efficient than a long temporal convolution filter, when confronted channels with longer multipath delay spans.

A mixed domain (frequency and time domain) equalizer may also be implemented, to emulate the linear and nonlinear (feedback) functions of a decision feedback equalizer (DFE) and exploits the respective capabilities of each. Such a mixed-domain equalizer is called a Frequency Domain Decision Feedback Equalizer (FD-DFE), and is depicted in Figure 2. Additional details on a SC-FDE will be presented in clause 8.3.5.

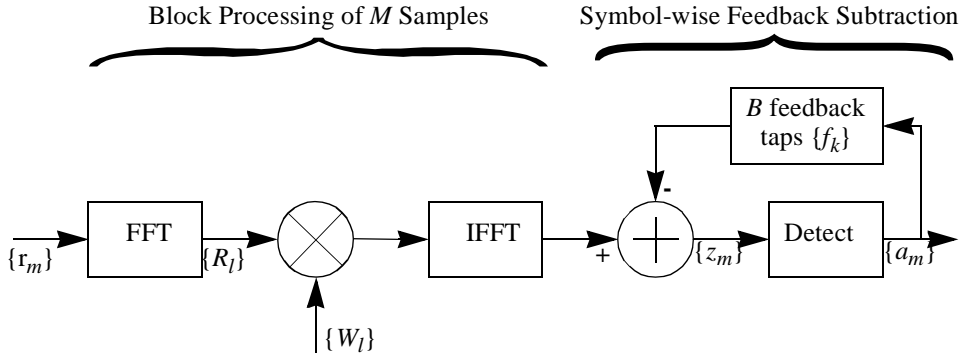


Figure 2—SC-FDE Decision Feedback Equalization at the Receiver

Both multi carrier (MC) and SC systems can be enhanced by coding (which is in fact, required for multicarrier systems), adaptive modulation and spatial diversity. In addition, OFDM can be incorporate peak-to-average reduction signal processing to partially (but not completely) alleviate its sensitivity to power amplifier nonlinearities. A SC-FDE can be enhanced by adding decision feedback equalization or maximum likelihood sequence estimation.

8.3.1.1.6 Time/Frequency Map

This block, shown in Figure 3, exists in the OFDM based PHYs only.

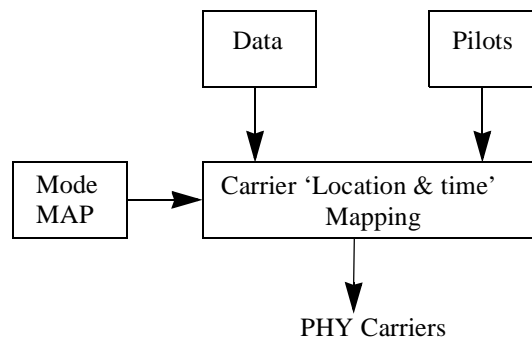


Figure 3—Time/Frequency Mapping Function

The time frequency map takes modulated data and maps it into specific sub-carriers, according to a defined mapping scheme. The time frequency map function should be able to identify the input data origin, in order to be able to perform mapping of a data stream containing data from different sources. As an example: An input data stream may con-

tain MAC originated data bits, coming from different users, and PHY control information altogether. The MAP will identify data origin (user 1, user 2, etc., PHY control) and MAP each data stream into its specified sub-carriers.

In OFDM mode, the basic resource allocation quantum is an OFDM symbol. The amount of data that fits into an OFDM symbol depends on the constellation and the coding method used within this symbol as well as the number of data carriers per symbol.

In OFDMA mode, the basic resource allocation quantum is a subchannel. For all FFT sizes, each OFDM symbol contains an integer number of subchannels, both on downlink and on uplink. The amount of data that fits into a subchannel depends on the constellation and the coding method used within this subchannel as well as the number of data carriers per subchannel.

In a two-dimensional map, one dimension denotes blocks within the OFDM symbol (frequency domain), and the other denotes the consecutive OFDM symbols (time domain).

The framing structure describes how logical channels or blocks are mapped into physical layer tones as a function of the symbol number. Logical channels or blocks include payload channels, ranging channels, null channels, access channels, and training channels. Synchronization, pilot tones, and null tones are also mapped into the physical layer tones.

The framing structure is determined by the selection of OFDM or OFDMA and on the differences between the multiple access methodologies used in OFDM and OFDMA. As such, the framing structure takes on different time/frequency maps according to the design selections made by the equipment suppliers.

8.3.1.1.7 Frequency and Time Domain Processing (F&T)

This block includes nulling the guard bins, and implementing an inverse transform. In the time domain, it also includes a cyclic prefix operation, and may include windowing, clipping and filtering.

8.3.1.1.8 RF Transceiver (RF TX and RF RX)

The discrete-time signal is converted to an analog waveform and mixed to a RF frequency. The non-linear distortions introduced as part of the RF conversion can create significant out-of-band interference, and must be reviewed in the context of deployment in specific frequency bands and out-of-band requirements, coexistence with adjacent (in-band and out-of-band) systems (in particular TDD/FDD), and tradeoffs in terms of guard bands, system performance, and system complexity.

8.3.1.2 Key System Capabilities

Multiple operational modes are defined. Although the desire is to converge to a limited set of modes, ultimately it will be up to the vendors and operators to decide which modes are supported based on market objectives such as service requirements and cost objectives.

8.3.2 Targeted frequency bands, channel bandwidths and applicable Masks

8.3.2.1 Frequency range and the channel bandwidth

This clause is informative, and abstracts regulatory requirements for frequency bands to which this standard may be applicable. The frequency range and the downlink and uplink channel bandwidth of the PHY system are given in Table 1.

Table 1—Frequency Bands and Channel Bandwidth

Frequency Bands	Channel Bandwidth Options	Reference
2.15- 2.162 GHz, 2.50- 2.690 GHz	2 to 6 MHz downlink, 200 kHz to 6 MHz uplink	FCC 47 CFR 21.901 (MDS) FCC 47 CFR 74.902 (ITFS, MMDS) Industry Canada SRSP-302.5 (Fixed Services operating in the 2500 to 2686 MHz band)
3.5 GHz	1.75- 7 MHz downlink, 250 KHz to 7 MHz uplink	EN 301 021, CEPT/ERC Rec. 14-03 E, CEPT/ERC Rec. 12-08 E, Others (TBD)
5.25 – 5.35 GHz, 5.725 – 5.835 GHz	N/A	FCC U-NII
10.5 GHz	3.5, 5 and 7 MHz	EN 301 021, CEPT/ERC Rec. 12-05 E

8.3.2.2 Licensed Bands

The ETSI masks are shown in Figure 4 and Figure 5 for OFDM and SC respectively [1]. The spectral mask for the WCS band is shown in Figure 6; The spectral mask for the MMDS band is shown in Figure 7.

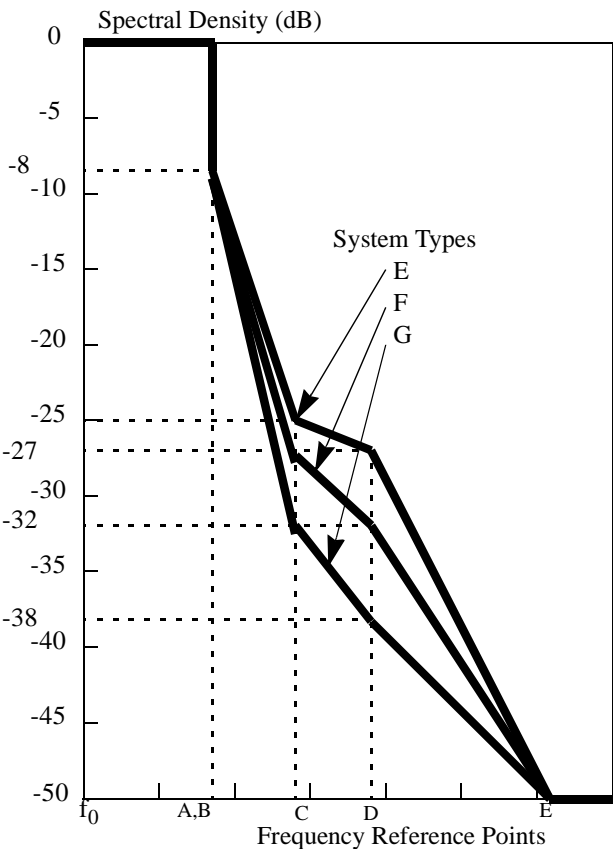


Figure 4—ETSI OFDM spectral mask

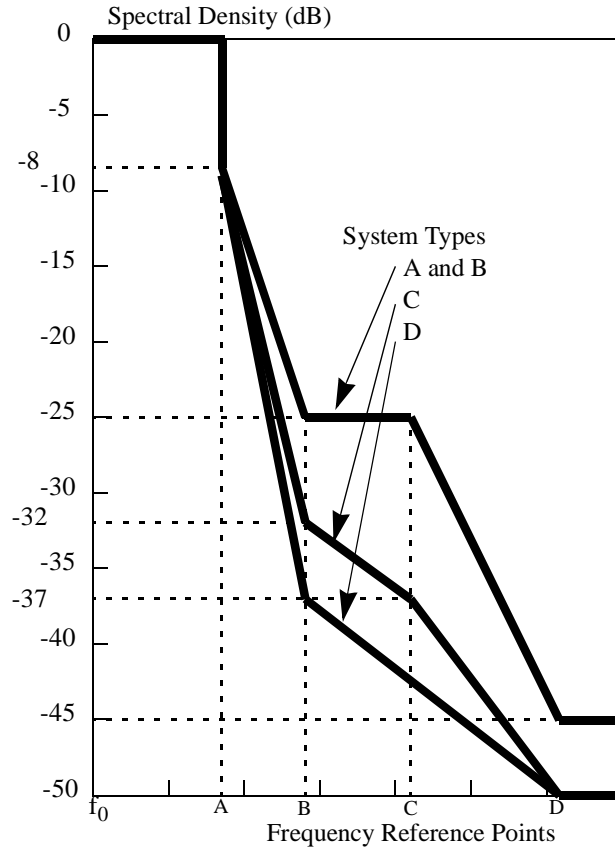


Figure 5—ETSI SC Mask

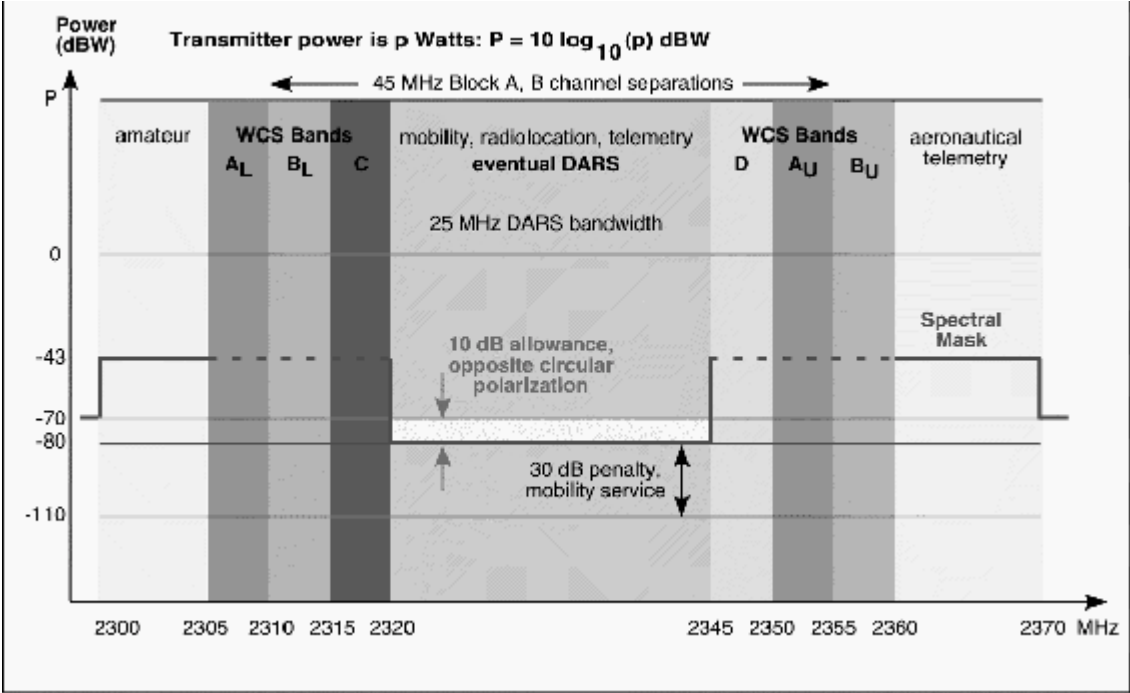


Figure 6—WCS Spectral Mask

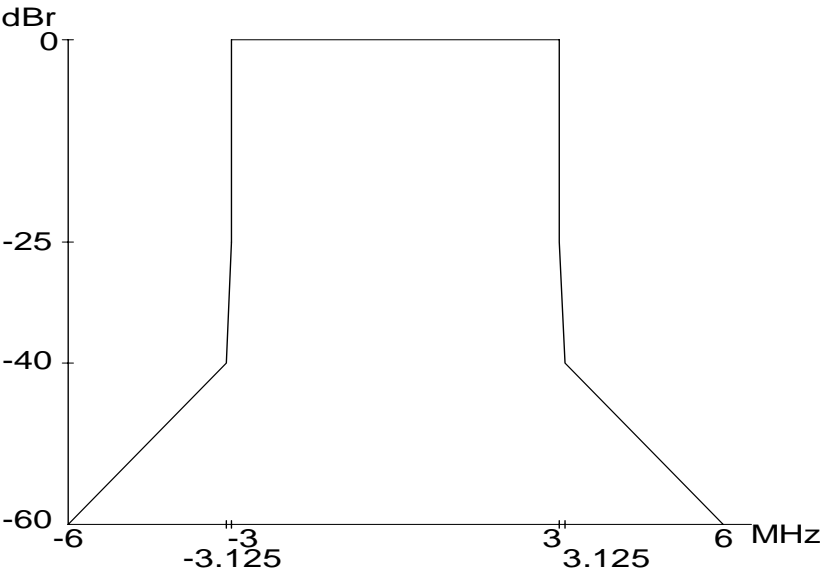


Figure 7—MMDs Spectral Mask

8.3.2.3 License Exempt Bands

8.3.2.3.1 Introduction

The 802.16 standard for license exempt bands is applicable for all license exempt bands between 2 and 11 GHz, but is specifically designed for operation in the 5 GHz band. Spectrum allocation in the 5 GHz band is subject to authorities responsible for geographic specific regulatory domains e.g. global, regional, and national. The particular channeliza-

tion to be used for this standard is dependent on such allocation as well as the associated regulations for use of the allocations. These regulations are subject to revision, or may be superseded. In the USA, the FCC is the agency responsible for the allocation of the 5 GHz U-NII bands.

In some regulatory domains several license-exempt frequency bands may be available for FWA devices. These bands may be contiguous or not, and different regulatory limits may be applicable. A compliant PHY shall support at least one frequency band in at least one regulatory domain.

8.3.2.3.2 USA

License exempt equipment in the USA is regulated by FCC Title 47, Part 15 [2]. An interpretation of Subpart E, Section 15.407 is provided below for convenience. No rights may be derived from this text.

The 5.15-5.25GHz lower U-NII band is restricted to indoor use only. As at least one device on an FWA link needs to be outdoors (typically the base station), this band is not available for FWA. As a result of this, the rule that the device must meet the maximum -27 dBm/MHz limit below 5250 MHz and above 5350 MHz applies. For the upper U-NII, the limits are maximum -27 dBm/MHz below 5715 MHz and above 5835 MHz, and maximum -17 dBm/MHz in the band 5715 - 5725 MHz and 5825 - 5835 MHz.

In the middle U-NII band, the transmit power is limited to the lesser of 24 dBm (250 mW) or $11+10\log(B_{26dB})$ dBm, with the peak power density (n.b. this is not the peak power) not exceeding 11 dBm/MHz. In the upper U-NII band, the transmit power is limited to the lesser of 30 dBm (1W) or $17+10\log(B_{26dB})$ dBm, with the peak power density not exceeding 17 dBm/MHz. For any multi-point system using directional antenna with gain over 6 dBi, limits for both bands are reduced by the antenna gain in excess of 6dBi.

The maximum allowed output power for this standard's channelization is shown in Table 2.

Table 2—U-NII Regulator Power Limitations

Regulator Domain	band	Maximum Output Power			Comments
		20 MHz	10 MHz	5 MHz	
USA	U-NII midle	24	21	18	Up to 6 dBi antenna gain, reduction 1 dB per 1dBi exceeding 6
USA	U-NII upper	30	27	24	

The channelization and emission requirements required for compliance with this standard are provided in clause 8.3.6.4.2.3.

8.3.3 Downlink and Uplink Channels

8.3.3.1 Introduction

8.3.3.1.1 Duplexing Modes

Frequency division duplex (FDD), half-duplex frequency division (H-FDD) and time division duplex (TDD) modes provide for bi-directional operation, except for operation in the license-exempt band, where provision is only made for TDD operation.

TDD flexibility permits efficient allocation of the available bandwidth and hence is capable of efficiently allocating the available traffic transport capacity for applications whose uplink to downlink traffic transport demand ratio can vary with time.

FDD /H-FDD can be used by applications that require fixed asymmetric allocation between their uplink and downlink traffic transport demand.

8.3.3.1.2 Multiple Access

In a point to multipoint (P-MP) system, the downlink (DL) and uplink (UL) access to shared resources can be handled differently. In the DL, a base station (BS) can manage (schedule) resources, while in the UL some measure of contention must be supported. In either case, multiple access can be based on one or more orthogonal or nearly orthogonal resources such as divisions in time, frequency, code, and space.

8.3.3.1.3 Transmission Stream

Transmissions may be organized in either a burst or continuous mode. In a packet switched system, both DL and UL links operate in a burst mode. Some designs use a continuous mode in the DL, although this approach is problematic when incorporating adaptive antenna arrays for spatial processing because of the limitations associated with a broadcast mechanism.

8.3.3.1.4 Scrambling (randomization)

Data randomization is performed on source data transmitted, before FEC encoding, on both the Downlink (DL) and Uplink (UL). Randomization is performed on each allocation (DL or UL) which means that for each allocation of a data block the randomizer shall be used independently.

The bits from the randomizer shall be passed to the channel encoder.

8.3.3.1.5 Channel Coding Schemes

8.3.3.1.5.1 Downlink Channel FEC

A Forward Error Correction code (FEC), consisting of the concatenation of a Reed-Solomon outer code and a rate-compatible Convolutional inner code, shall be supported on the downlink. Turbo Product Coding (TPC) is optional for all modes.

8.3.3.1.5.2 Concatenated Reed Solomon / Convolutional Code:

The concatenated Reed-Solomon/ Convolutional code FEC is based on the serial concatenation of an outer Reed Solomon code, and an inner Convolutional code. The outer code is derived from a Reed Solomon RS (255,239, t=8) 'mother code.' This Reed Solomon 'mother code' may be shortened and punctured to accommodate variable allocation block sizes and/or outer code error correction capabilities. The inner code is derived from a nonsystematic, rate 1/2 Convolutional 'mother code', with constraint length K=7, and generator polynomials designated by 171(octal), 133(octal). In addition to rate 1/2, this convolutional code shall also support other rates through puncturing the mother Convolutional code (In addition, in the SC mode, systematic bits, which bypass the inner coder, are used.) , A pragmatic symbol map is used to map convolutionally coded bits to channel symbols. For certain modes, interleaving is defined between the outer and inner encoders.

Figure 8 illustrates the concatenated Reed Solomon/ Convolutional code FEC.

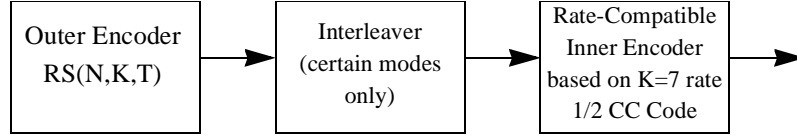


Figure 8—Concatenated Reed Solomon / Convolutional Code Encoder Block.

Encoding begins by passing the source bits through a RS encoder, and encoding data one RS code block at a time. The RS encoder output is interleaved in certain modes. The data is then passed to a rate-compatible binary convolutional encoder, derived from a K=7, rate 1/2 mother code. To achieve convolutional code rates higher than 1/2, the parallel outputs are punctured using puncturing. In the SC mode, not all of the rate increases are achieved by puncturing. It is partially achieved by using systematic bits, which bypass the inner encoder, rather than go through it.

The Reed Solomon code used in the concatenation process is further specified in clause 8.3.3.1.5.2.1. The rate 1/2 convolutional code is further specified in clause 8.3.3.1.5.2.2.

8.3.3.1.5.2.1 Reed Solomon encoding

The Reed Solomon encoding shall be derived from a systematic RS (N=255, K=239, T=8) code. This code can be shortened and punctured to enable variable block sizes and variable error-correction capability, where:

- N overall bytes, after encoding
- K- data bytes before encoding
- T- data bytes that can be fixed

The following polynomials are used for the systematic code:

- Code Generator Polynomial: $g(x) = (x + \lambda^0)(x + \lambda^1)(x + \lambda^2) \dots (x + \lambda^{2T-1}), \lambda = 02_{HEX}$
- Field Generator Polynomial $p(x) = x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1$

8.3.3.1.5.2.2 Convolutional Encoding

To generate code rates of 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, and 7/8, the 1/2 'mother code' outputs may be punctured.

The binary Convolutional encoder shall have native rate of 1/2, a constraint length equal to K=7, and shall use the following generator polynomials codes to derive its two code bits:

$$\begin{aligned} G_1 &= 171_{OCT} & \text{FOR } X \\ G_2 &= 133_{OCT} & \text{FOR } Y \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

The generator is depicted in Figure 9.

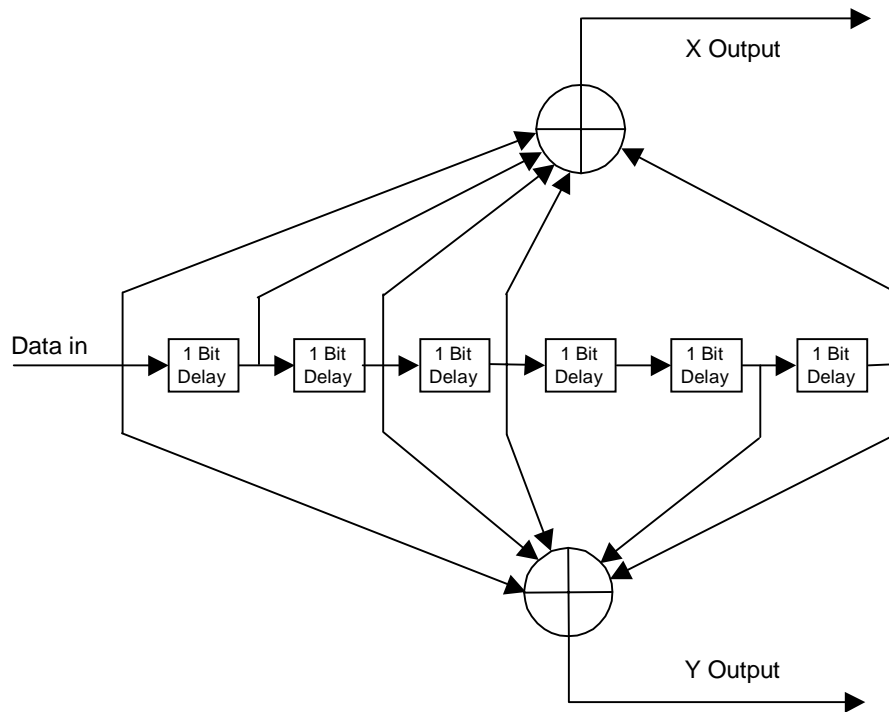


Figure 9—Convolutional encoder of rate 1/2

To generate code rates of 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, and 7/8, the 1/2 'mother code' outputs may be punctured. The binary outputs of the punctured encoder directly mapped to the constellation for QPSK and BPSK modulated data. They are also directly mapped (following interleaving) to 16-QAM and 64-QAM constellations for the OFDM modes. However, in the SC mode, the punctured encoder is augmented with systematic bits to implement Pragmatic TCM (trellis coded modulation) codes for 16-QAM and higher modulations.

Puncturing patterns and serialization order are described separately for the SC-PHY and the OFDM PHY. In addition to these two, the table lists a third set of puncturing patterns that shall be used only with the OFDM PHY in the license-exempt bands for the optional convolutional-only mode. In the table, "1" means transmitted bit while "0" denotes removed bit. For the SC PHY the IQ mapping is also given .

Puncturing patterns and serialization order which shall be used to realize the code rates are defined in Table 3. They are defined separately for the SC-mode, the OFDM modes, and the optional convolutional-only mode in the license-exempt bands (see 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.2). For the SC mode, the IQ mapping is also provided. In the notation used by Figure 9, (X, Y) indicates the bit pairs at the output of the Convolutional encoder, with X indicating the top 171 (octal) poly-

nominal output, and Y indicating the bottom 133 (octal) output; "1" in a puncture pattern means transmitted bit while "0" denotes non-transmitted bit.

Table 3—The inner Convolutional code with Puncturing Configuration

Mode		Code Rates				
	R	1/2	2/3	3/4	5/6	7/8
	d _{free}	10	6	5	4	3
SC	X	1	10	101	10101	1000101
	Y	1	11	110	11010	1111010
	I	X ₁	X ₁ Y ₂ Y ₃	X ₁ Y ₂	X ₁ Y ₂ Y ₄	X ₁ Y ₂ Y ₄ Y ₆
	Q	Y ₁	Y ₁ X ₃ Y ₄	Y ₁ X ₃	Y ₁ X ₃ X ₅	Y ₁ Y ₃ X ₅ X ₇
OFDM	X		11	110	11010	-
	Y		10	101	10101	-
	XY	-	X ₁ Y ₁ X ₂	X ₁ Y ₁ X ₂ Y ₃	X ₁ Y ₁ X ₂ Y ₃ X ₄ Y ₅	-
optional CC puncturing in license-exempt mode (see 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.2)	X	1	10	101	-	-
	Y	1	11	110	-	-
	XY	X ₁ Y ₁	X ₁ Y ₁ Y ₂	X ₁ Y ₁ Y ₂ X ₃	-	-

As it stands now, there are three different puncturing patterns and serialization rules. It would be nice to converge these into a single rule. The SC may not need to specify IQ modulation at this stage since it is described in the modulation clause.

8.3.3.1.5.3 Turbo Product Coding (optional)

Turbo Product Codes (TPCs) are based on the product of two or more simple component codes. These codes are also commonly called Block Turbo Codes (BTCs). The decoding is based on the concept of Soft-in/Soft-out (SISO) iterative decoding (i.e., "Turbo decoding"). The component codes shall be binary extended Hamming codes or Parity check codes. The main benefit of using the TPC mode is a significant coding gain advantage when compared to the Concatenated Reed-Solomon + Convolutional codes required in this specification.

The Turbo Product Code (TPC) is based on using the specified component codes in a two dimensional matrix form, which is depicted in Figure 10. The k_x information bits in the rows are encoded into n_x bits, by using the component block (n_x, k_x) code specified for the respective composite code.

After encoding the rows, the columns are encoded using a block code (n_y, k_y) , where the check bits of the first code are also encoded. The overall block size of such a product code is $n = n_x \times n_y$, the total number of information bits $k = k_x \times k_y$, and the code rate is $R = R_x \times R_y$, where $R_i = k_i/n_i$, $i=x, y$. The Hamming distance of the product code is $d = d_x \times d_y$.

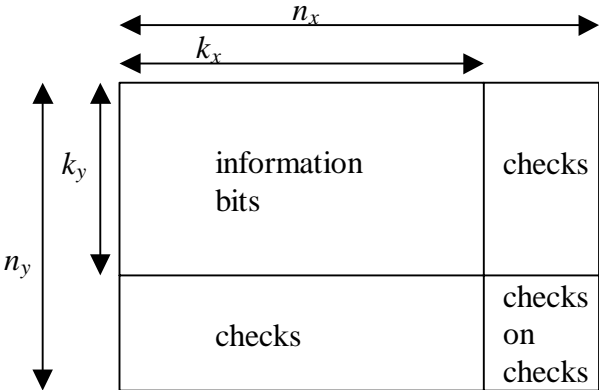


Figure 10—Two-dimensional TPC Matrix

8.3.3.1.5.3.1 Encoding of a Turbo Product Code

The encoder for a TPC has near zero latency, and is constructed from linear feedback shift registers (LFSRs), storage elements, and control logic. The constituent codes of TPCs are extended Hamming or parity only codes. Table 4 specifies the generator polynomials for the Hamming Codes. _

Table 4—Hamming Code Generator Polynomials

n'	k'	General Polynomial
7	4	X^3+X^1+1
15	11	X^4+X^1+1
31	26	X^5+X^2+1
63	57	X^6+X+1

For extended Hamming codes, an overall even parity check bit is added at the end of each code word. Table 5 summarizes the component codes available for use in this specification:

Table 5—TPC Component Codes

Component Code (n,k)	Code Type
(64,57)	Extended Hamming Code
(32,26)	Extended Hamming Code
(16,11)	Extended Hamming Code
(8,4)	Extended Hamming Code
(64,63)	Extended Hamming Code
(32,31)	Parity Check Code
(16,15)	Parity Check Code
(8,7)	Parity Check Code
(4,3)	Parity Check Code

Data bit ordering for the composite TPC matrix is the first bit in the first row is the least significant bit (lsb) and the last data bit in the last data row is the most significant bit (msb).

Figure 11 illustrates an example of a TPC encoded with $(8, 4) \times (8, 4)$ extended Hamming component codes.

D ₁₁	D ₂₁	D ₃₁	D ₄₁	E ₅₁	E ₆₁	E ₇₁	E ₈₁
D ₁₂	D ₂₂	D ₃₂	D ₄₂	E ₅₂	E ₆₂	E ₇₂	E ₈₂
D ₁₃	D ₂₃	D ₃₃	D ₄₃	E ₅₃	E ₆₃	E ₇₃	E ₈₃
D ₁₄	D ₂₄	D ₃₄	D ₄₄	E ₅₄	E ₆₄	E ₇₄	E ₈₄
E ₁₅	E ₂₅	E ₃₅	E ₄₅	E ₅₅	E ₆₅	E ₇₅	E ₈₅
E ₁₆	E ₂₆	E ₃₆	E ₄₆	E ₅₆	E ₆₆	E ₇₆	E ₈₆
E ₁₇	E ₂₇	E ₃₇	E ₄₇	E ₅₇	E ₆₇	E ₇₇	E ₈₇
E ₁₈	E ₂₈	E ₃₈	E ₄₈	E ₅₈	E ₆₈	E ₇₈	E ₈₈

Figure 11—Example of an encoded TPC block

Transmission of the block over the channel shall occur in a linear fashion, with all bits of the first row transmitted left to right followed by the second row, etc. This allows for the construction of a near zero latency encoder, since the data bits can be sent immediately over the channel, with the ECC bits inserted as necessary. For the $(8, 4) \times (8, 4)$ example, the output order for the 64 encoded bits would be: $D_{11}, D_{21}, D_{31}, D_{41}, E_{51}, E_{61}, E_{71}, E_{81}, D_{12}, D_{22}, \dots, E_{88}$.

Alternatively, a block-based interleaver as specified in mode specific clauses of this document may be used to modify the baseline transmission order.

8.3.3.1.5.3.2 Shortened TPCs

To match packet sizes, TPCs are shortened by removing symbols from the array. In the two-dimensional case rows, columns or parts thereof can be removed until the appropriate size is reached. Unlike one-dimensional codes (such as Reed-Solomon codes), parity bits are removed as part of shortening process.

There are two steps in the process of shortening of product codes. The first is to remove entire rows and/or columns from the 2-dimensional code. This is equivalent to shortening the constituent codes that make up the product code. This method enables a coarse granularity on shortening, and at the same time maintaining the highest code rate possible by removing both data and parity symbols. Further shortening is obtained by removing individual bits from the first row of the 2-dimensional code starting with the lsb.

In the case where the product code specified has a non-integral number of data bytes, the left over msb bits are zero filled by the encoder. After decoding at the receive end, the decoder shall strip off these unused bits and only the specified data payload is passed to the next higher level in the physical layer. The same general method is used for shortening the last code word in a message where the available data bytes do not fill the available data bytes in a code block.

8.3.3.1.5.3.3 Soft Decision Decoding of Turbo Product Codes

While not specified, it is generally assumed that soft decision decoding will be performed to maximize the decoder performance. Soft decision decoding will provide 2 dB or more performance advantage compared to hard decision decoding.

The soft decision-decoding (Soft Input - Soft Output or SISO decoder) algorithm is likewise not specified. Many different SISO decoders are available and described in detail in published academic papers.

8.3.3.1.5.3.4 Iterative Decoding

A decoder iteration is defined here as one complete decoding of all the rows and columns of the TPC. The number of decoder iterations is left to the system provider, keeping in mind the trade off of better performance versus the complexity of the decoder. In any case, the decoder must perform its decoding within the latency constraints of the system design.

8.3.3.1.5.4 Constellation mapping

Bits derived from the Convolutional coder shall be mapped to a signal constellation as shown in Figure 12 and Figure 13.

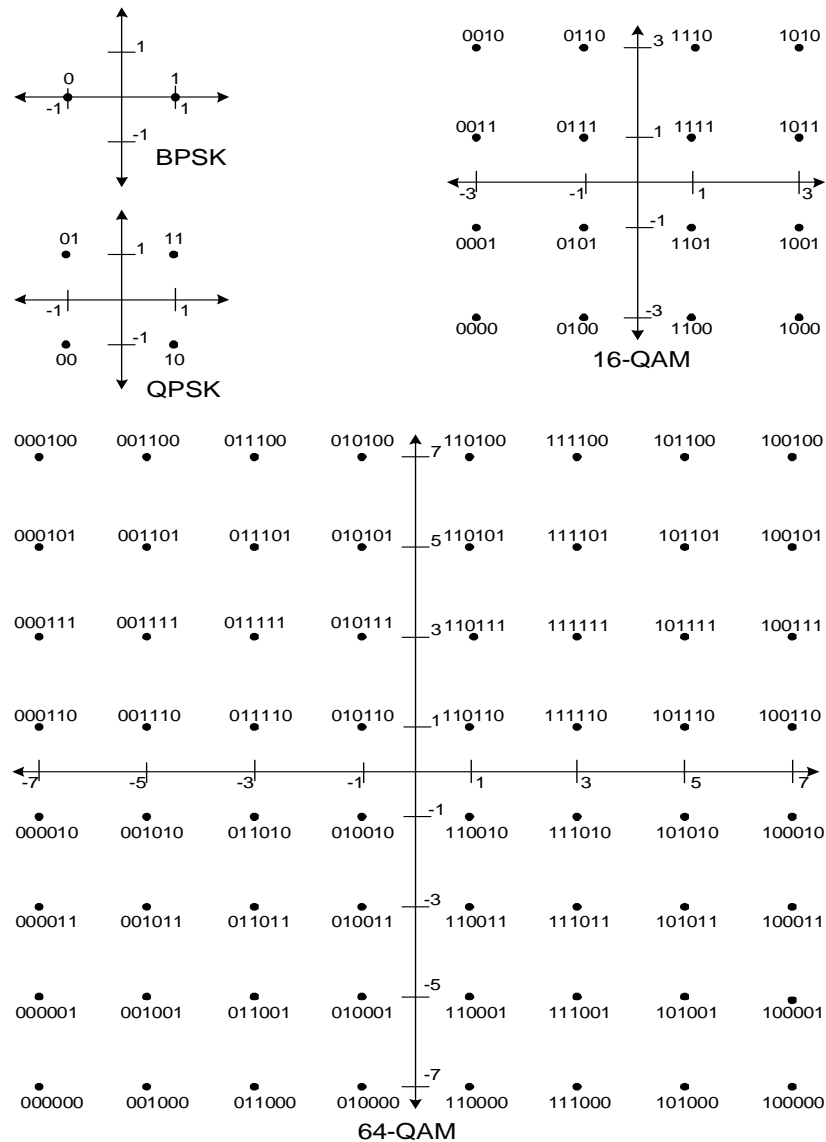


Figure 12—BPSK, QPSK, 16 QAM and 64 QAM constellations



Adaptive Modulation & Coding shall be supported in the downlink. The uplink shall support different modulation schemes for each user based on the MAC burst configuration messages coming from the Base Station. Complete description of the MAC / PHY support of adaptive modulation and coding is provided in clause 8.3.4.

8.3.3.2.1 Downlink multiplexing

This is an unapproved document being circulated by the 802.16a/b editorial team for comment. 30

8.3.3.2.2 Downlink Modulation Schemes

The applicable modulation schemes for the downlink are shown in Table 6.

Table 6— Downlink Modulation Schemes (M= Mandatory, O=Optional)

	BPSK	QPSK	16QAM	64QAM	256QAM
Licensed - SC	O	M	M	M	O
Licensed - OFDM	N/A	M	M	O	N/A
License-exempt - OFDM	M	M	M	O	N/A

8.3.3.3 Uplink

TDMA is required in all PHY modes.

8.3.3.3.1 Uplink Modulation Schemes

The applicable modulation schemes for the uplink are shown in Table 7.

Table 7—Downlink Modulation Schemes (M= Mandatory, O=Optional)

	BPSK	QPSK	16QAM	64QAM
Licensed - SC	O	M	M	M
Licensed - OFDM	N/A	M	M	O
License-exempt - OFDM	M	M	M	O

8.3.4 MAC and PHY Interface

8.3.4.1 Overview

Two modes of operation have been defined for the point-to-multi-point downlink channel:

- Mode A: supports a continuous transmission stream format, and
- Mode B: support a burst transmission stream format.

Having this separation allows each format to be optimized according to its respective design constraints, while resulting in a standard that supports various system requirements and deployment scenarios.

In contrast, only one mode of operation is defined for the upstream channel:

- one targeted to support a burst transmission stream format

This single mode of operation is sufficient for the upstream, since the upstream transmissions are point-to-point burst transmissions between each transmitting subscriber station (SS) and each receiving base station (BS).

8.3.4.2 Downlink and Uplink Operation

Two different downlink modes of operation are defined: Mode A and Mode B. Mode A supports a continuous transmission format, while Mode B supports a burst transmission format. The continuous transmission format of Mode A is intended for use in an FDD-only configuration. The burst transmission format of Mode B supports burst-FDD as well as TDD configurations. Devices operating in license-exempt bands shall employ only TDD.

The A and B options give service providers choice, so that they may tailor an installation to best meet a specific set of system requirements. Standards-compliant subscriber stations are required to support at least one (A or B) of the defined downlink modes of operation.

A single uplink mode of operation is also defined. This mode supports TDMA-based burst uplink transmissions. Standards-compliant subscriber stations are required to support this uplink mode of operation.

8.3.4.2.1 Mode A - Continuous Downlink

Mode A is a downlink format intended for continuous transmission. The Mode A downlink physical layer first encapsulates MAC packets into a convergence layer frame as defined by the transmission convergence sublayer. Modulation and coding which is adaptive to the needs of various SS receivers is also supported within this framework.

In Mode A, the downstream channel is continuously received by many SSs. Due to differing conditions at the various SS sites (e.g., variable distances from the BS, presence of obstructions), SS receivers may observe significantly different SNRs. For this reason, some SSs may be capable of reliably detecting data only when it is derived from certain lower-order modulation alphabets, such as QPSK. Similarly, more powerful and redundant FEC schemes may also be required by such SNR-disadvantaged SSs. On the other hand, SNR-advantaged stations may be capable of receiving very high order modulations (e.g., 64-QAM) with high code rates. Collectively, let us define the adaptation of modulation type and FEC to a particular SS (or group of SSs) as 'adaptive modulation', and the choice of a particular modulation and FEC as an 'adaptive modulation type.' Mode A supports adaptive modulation and the use of adaptive modulation types.

A MAC Frame Control header is periodically transmitted over the continuous Mode A downstream, using the most robust supported adaptive modulation type. So that the start of this MAC header may be easily recognized during initial channel acquisition or re-acquisition, the PHY inserts an uncoded, known (but TBD) QPSK code word, of length TBD symbols, at a location immediately before the beginning of the MAC header, and immediately after a Unique

Word. (See PHY framing clause for more details on the Unique Word). Note that this implies the interval between Frame Control headers should be an integer multiple of F (the interval between Unique Words).

Within MAC Frame Control header, a PHY control map (DL_MAP) is used to indicate the beginning location of adaptive modulation type groups which follow. Following this header, adaptive modulation groups are sequenced in increasing order of robustness. However, the DL_MAP does not describe the beginning locations of the payload groups that immediately follow; it describes the payload distributions some MAC-prescribed time in the future. This delay is necessary so that FEC decoding of MAC information (which could be iterative, in the case of turbo codes) may be completed, the adaptive data interpreted, and the demodulator scheduling set up for the proper sequencing.

Note that adaptive modulation groups or group memberships can change with time, in order to adjust to changing channel conditions.

In order that disadvantaged SNR users are not adversely affected by transmissions intended for other advantaged SNR users, FEC blocks end when a particular adaptive modulation type ends. Among other things, this implies that the FEC interleaver depth is adapted to accommodate the span of a particular adaptive modulation type.

8.3.4.2.2 Mode B - Burst Downlink

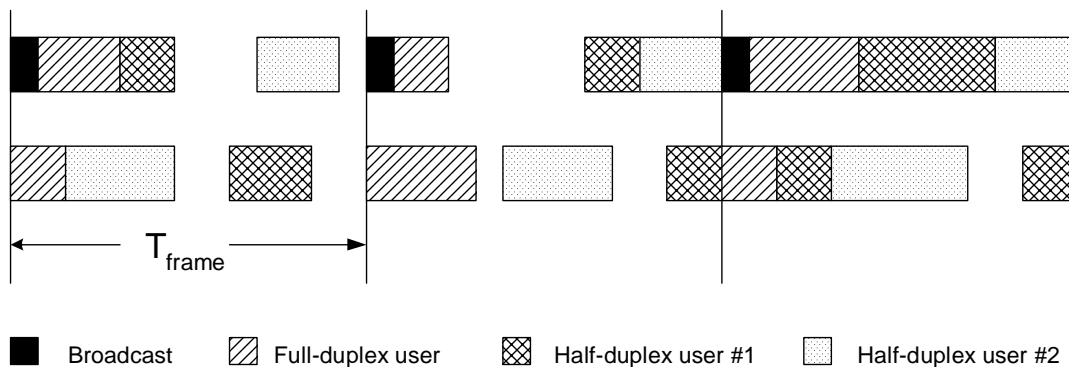


Figure 14—Example of burst FDD Bandwidth Allocation

Mode B is a downlink format intended for burst transmissions, with features that simplify the support for both TDD systems and half-duplex terminals. A Mode B compliant frame can be configured to support either TDM or TDMA transmission formats; i.e., a Mode B burst may consist a single user's data, or a concatenation of several users' data. What's more, Mode B supports adaptive modulation and multiple adaptive modulation types within these TDMA and TDM formats.

A unique (acquisition) preamble is used to indicate the beginning of a frame, and assist burst demodulation. This preamble is followed by PHY/MAC control data. In the TDM mode, a PHY control map (DL_MAP) is used to indicate the beginning location of different adaptive modulation types. These adaptive modulation types are sequenced within the frame in increasing order of robustness (e.g., QPSK, 16-QAM, 64-QAM), and can change with time in order to adjust to the changing channel conditions.

In the TDMA mode, the DL_MAP is used to describe the adaptive modulation type in individual bursts. Since a TDMA burst would contain a payload of only one adaptive modulation type, no adaptive modulation type sequencing

is required. All TDMA format payload data is FEC block encoded, with an allowance made for shortening the last codeword (e.g., Reed Solomon codeword) within a burst.

The Mode B downlink physical layer goes through a transmission convergence sublayer that inserts a pointer byte at the beginning of the payload information bytes to help the receiver identify the beginning of a MAC packet.

8.3.4.2.2.1 Uplink

The uplink mode supports TDMA burst transmissions from an individual SSs to a BS. This is functionally similar (at the PHY level) to Mode B downlink TDMA operation. As such, for a brief description of the Physical Layer protocol used for this mode, please read the previous clause on Mode B TDMA operation.

Of note, however, is that many of the specific uplink channel parameters can be programmed by MAC layer messaging coming from the base station in downstream messages. Also, several parameters can be left unspecified and configured by the base station during the registration process in order to optimize performance for a particular deployment scenario. In the upstream mode of operation, each burst may carry MAC messages of variable lengths.

8.3.4.3 Multiplexing and Multiple Access Technique

The uplink physical layer is based on the combined use of time division multiple access (TDMA) and demand assigned multiple access (DAMA). In particular, the uplink channel is divided into a number of 'time slots.' The number of slots assigned for various uses (registration, contention, guard, or user traffic) is controlled by the MAC layer in the base station and can vary over time for optimal performance.

As previously indicated, the downlink channel can be in either a continuous (Mode A) or burst (Mode B) format. Within Mode A, user data is transported via time division multiplexing (TDM), i.e., the information for each subscriber station is multiplexed onto the same stream of data and is received by all subscriber stations located within the same sector. Within Mode B, the user data is bursty and may be transported via TDM or TDMA, depending on the number of users which are to be borne within in burst.

8.3.4.3.1 Duplexing Technique

Several duplexing techniques are supported, in order to provide greater flexibility in spectrum usage. The continuous transmission downlink mode (Mode A) supports frequency division duplexing (FDD) with adaptive modulation; the burst mode of operation (Mode B) supports FDD with adaptive modulation or time division duplexing (TDD) with adaptive modulation. Systems in the licensed-exempt bands shall use TDD only. Furthermore, Mode B in the FDD case can handle (half duplex) subscribers incapable of transmitting and receiving at the same instant, due to their specific transceiver implementation.

8.3.4.3.1.1 Mode A: Continuous Downstream for FDD Systems

In a system employing FDD, the uplink and downlink channels are located on separate frequencies and all subscriber stations can transmit and receive simultaneously. The frequency separation between carriers is set either according to the target spectrum regulations or to some value sufficient for complying with radio channel transmit/receive isolation and de-sensitization requirements. In this type of system, the downlink channel is (almost) "always on" and all subscriber stations are always listening to it. Therefore, traffic is sent in a broadcast manner using time division multiplexing (TDM) in the downlink channel, while the uplink channel is shared using time division multiple access (TDMA), where the allocation of uplink bandwidth is controlled by a centralized scheduler. The BS periodically transmits downlink and uplink MAP messages, which are used to synchronize the uplink burst transmissions with the downlink. The usage of the mini-slots is defined by the UL-MAP message, and can change according to the needs of the system. Mode A is capable of adaptive modulation.

8.3.4.3.1.2 Mode B: Burst Downstream for Burst FDD Systems

A burst FDD system refers to a system in which the uplink and downlink channels are located on separate frequencies but the downlink data is transmitted in bursts. This enables the system to simultaneously support full duplex subscriber stations (ones which can transmit and receive simultaneously) and, optionally, half duplex subscriber stations (ones which cannot transmit and receive simultaneously). If half duplex subscriber stations are supported, this mode of operation imposes a restriction on the bandwidth controller: it cannot allocate uplink bandwidth for a half duplex subscriber station at the same time that the subscriber station is expected to receive data on the downlink channel.

Frequency separation is as defined in 3.2.1.1.1. Figure 15 describes the basics of the burst FDD mode of operation. In order to simplify the bandwidth allocation algorithms, the uplink and downlink channels are divided into fixed sized frames. A full duplex subscriber station must always attempt to listen to the downlink channel. A half duplex subscriber station must always attempt to listen to the downlink channel when it is not transmitting on the uplink channel.

8.3.4.3.1.3 Mode B: Burst Downstream for TDD Systems

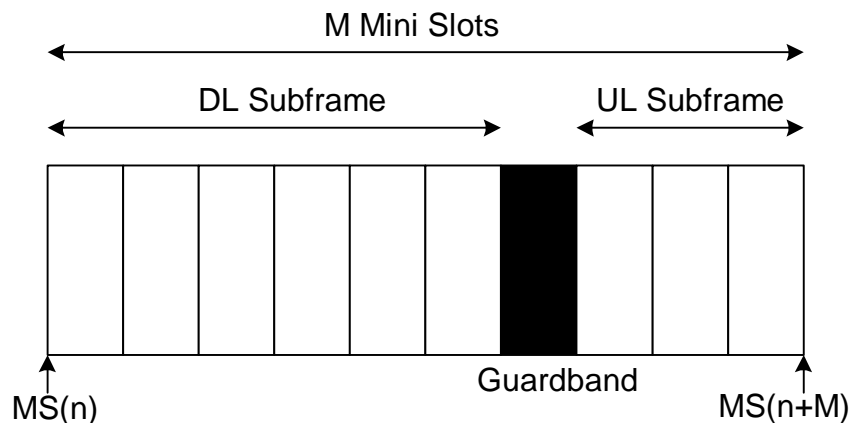


Figure 15—TDD Frame

In the case of TDD, the uplink and downlink transmissions share the same frequency, but are separated in time (Figure 140). A TDD frame also has a fixed duration and contains one downlink and one uplink subframe. The frame is divided into an integer number of 'mini slots' (MS), which facilitate the partitioning of bandwidth. These mini slots are in turn made up of a finer unit of time called 'ticks', which are of duration 1 μ s each. TDD framing is adaptive in that the percentage of the bandwidth allocated to the downlink versus the uplink can vary. The split between uplink and downlink is a system parameter, and is controlled at higher layers within the system.

8.3.4.3.1.3.1 Tx / Rx Transition Gap (TTG)

The TTG is a gap between the Downlink burst and the Uplink burst. This gap allows time for the BS to switch from transmit mode to receive mode and SSs to switch from receive mode to transmit mode. During this gap, the BS and SS are not transmitting modulated data, but it simply allows the BS transmitter carrier to ramp down, the Tx / Rx antenna switch to actuate, and the BS receiver clause to activate. After the TTG, the BS receiver will look for the first symbols of uplink burst. The TTG has a variable duration, which is an integer number of mini slots. The TTG starts on a mini slot boundary.

8.3.4.3.1.3.2 Rx / Tx Transition Gap (RTG)

The RTG is a gap between the Uplink burst and the Downlink burst. This gap allows time for the BS to switch from receive mode to transmit mode and SSs to switch from transmit mode to receive mode. During this gap, BS and SS are not transmitting modulated data but simply allowing the BS transmitter carrier to ramp up, the Tx / Rx antenna switch to actuate, and the SS receiver clauses to activate. After the RTG, the SS receivers will look for the first symbols of QPSK modulated data in the downlink burst. The RTG is an integer number of mini slots. The RTG starts on a mini slot boundary.

8.3.4.3.1.3.3 Mode B: Downlink Data

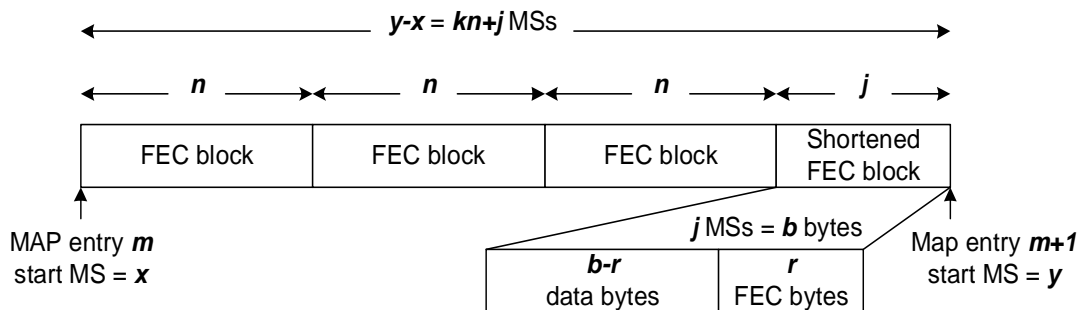


Figure 16—Downlink MAP usage and shortened FEC blocks

The downlink data clauses are used for transmitting data and control messages to specific SSs. This data is always FEC coded and is transmitted at the current operating modulation of the individual SS. In the burst mode cases, data is transmitted in robustness order in the TDM portion. In a burst TDMA application, the data is grouped into separately delineated bursts, which do not need to be in modulation order. The DL-MAP message contains a map stating at which mini slot the burst profile change occurs. If the downlink data does not fill the entire downlink sub-frame and Mode B is in use, the transmitter is shut down. The DL-MAP provides implicit indication of shortened FEC (and/or FFT) blocks in the downlink. Shortening the last FEC block of a burst is optional (see 11.1.2.2????). The downlink map indicates the number of MS, p allocated to a particular burst and also indicates the burst type (modulation and FEC). Let n denote the number of MS required for one FEC block of the given burst profile. Then, $p = kn + j$, where k is the number of integral FEC blocks that fit in the burst and j is the number of MS remaining after integral FEC blocks are allocated. Either k or j , but not both, may be zero. j denotes some number of bytes b . Assuming j is not 0, it must be large enough such that b is larger than the number of FEC bytes r , added by the FEC scheme for the burst. The number of bytes available to user data in the shortened FEC block is $b - r$. These points are illustrated in Figure 16. Note that a codeword may not possess less than 6 information bytes.

In the TDM mode of operation, SSs listen to all portions of the downlink burst to which they are capable of listening. For full-duplex SSs, this implies that a SS shall listen to all portions that have a adaptive modulation type (as defined by the DIUC) which is at least as robust as that which the SS negotiates with the BS. For half-duplex SSs, the aforementioned is also true, but under an additional condition: an SS shall not attempt to listen to portions of the downlink burst that are coincident---adjusted by the SS's Tx time advance---with the SS's allocated uplink transmission, if any.

In the burst TDMA mode of operation, bursts are individually identified in the DL_MAP. Hence, a SS is required to turn on its receiver only in time to receive those bursts addressed to it. Unlike the TDM mode, there is no requirement that the bursts be ordered in order of increasing robustness.

8.3.4.3.2 Uplink Burst Subframe Structure

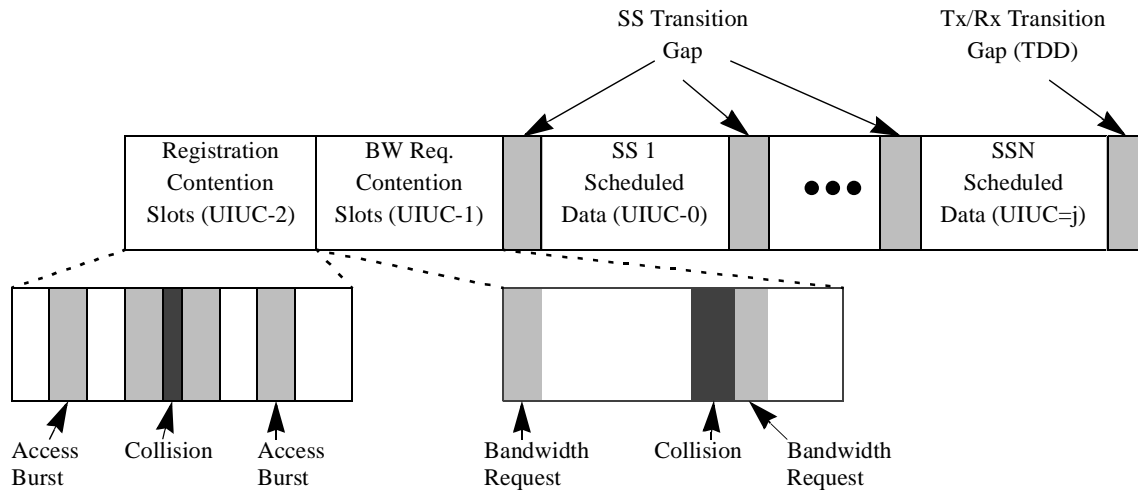


Figure 17—Uplink Subframe Structure

The structure of the uplink subframe used by the SSs to transmit to the BS is shown in Figure 17. There are three main classes of bursts transmitted by the SSs during the uplink subframe:

- Those that are transmitted in contention slots reserved for station registration.
- Those that are transmitted in contention slots reserved for response to multicast and broadcast polls for bandwidth needs.
- Those that are transmitted in bandwidth specifically allocated to individual SSs.

8.3.4.3.2.1 Mode A and Mode B: Uplink Burst Profile Modes

The uplink uses adaptive burst profiles, in which different SSs are assigned different modulation types by the base station. In the adaptive case, the bandwidth allocated for registration and bandwidth request contention slots is grouped together and is always used with the parameters specified for Request Intervals (UIUC=1) (Remark: It is recommended that UIUC=1 will provide the most robust burst profile due to the extreme link budget and interference conditions of this case). The remaining transmission slots are grouped by SS. During its scheduled bandwidth, an SS transmits with the burst profile specified by the base station, as determined by the effects of distance, interference and environmental factors on transmission to and from that SS. SS Transition Gaps (STG) separate the transmissions of the various SSs during the uplink subframe. The STGs contain a gap to allow for ramping down of the previous burst, followed by a preamble allowing the BS to synchronize to the new SS. The preamble and gap lengths are broadcast periodically in the UCD message. Shortening of FEC blocks in the uplink is identical to the handling in the downlink as described in 3.2.2.1.4????.

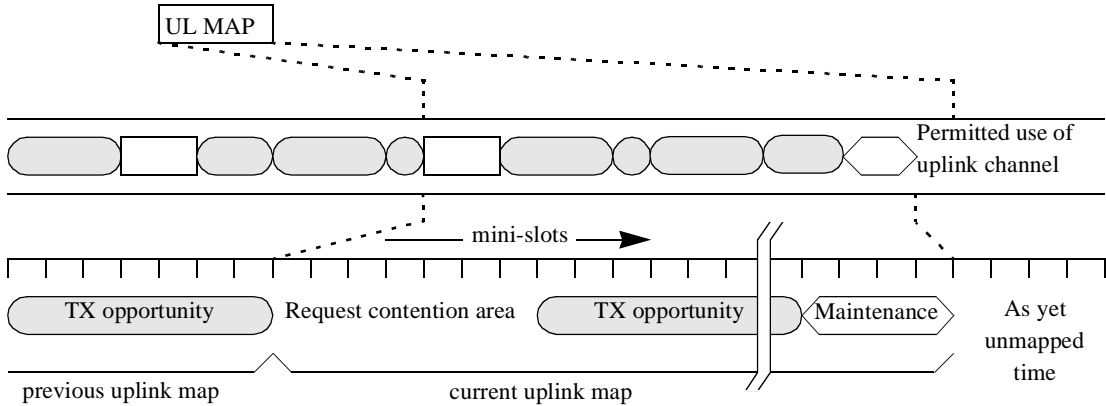


Figure 18—Uplink Mapping in the Continuous Downstream FDD Case

8.3.4.3.3 PHY SAP Parameter Definitions

TBD

8.3.4.3.4 Downlink Physical Layer

This clause describes the two different downlink modes of operation that have been adopted for use in this proposal. Mode A has been designed for continuous transmission, while a Mode B has been designed to support a burst transmission format. Subscriber stations must support at least one of these modes.

8.3.4.3.4.1 Physical layer type (PHY type) encodings

The value of the PHY type parameter (X.X.X) as defined must be reported as shown in the Table 8.

Table 8—PHY Type Parameter encoding

Mode	value	Comment
A(FDD)	2	Continuous downlink
B(FDD)	0	Burst downlink in FDD mode
B(TDD)	1	Burst downlink in TDD mode

8.3.4.3.4.2 Mode A: Continuous Downlink Transmission

This mode of operation has been designed for a continuous transmission stream, using a single modulation/coding combination on each carrier, in an FDD system. The physical media dependent sublayer has no explicit frame structure. Where spectrum resources allow, multiple carriers may be deployed, each using different modulation/coding methods defined here.

8.3.4.3.4.3 Downlink Mode A: Message field definitions

8.3.4.3.4.3.1 Downlink Mode A: Required channel descriptor parameters

The following parameters shall be included in the UCD message:

TBD

8.3.4.3.4.3.2 Mode A: Required DCD parameters

The following parameters shall be included in the DCD message:

TBD

8.3.4.3.4.3.2.1 Downlink Mode A: DCD, Required burst descriptor parameters

TBD.

8.3.4.3.4.3.3 Mode A: DL-MAP

For PHY Type = 2, no additional information follows the Base Station ID field.

8.3.4.3.4.3.3.1 Mode A: DL-MAP PHY Synchronization Field definition

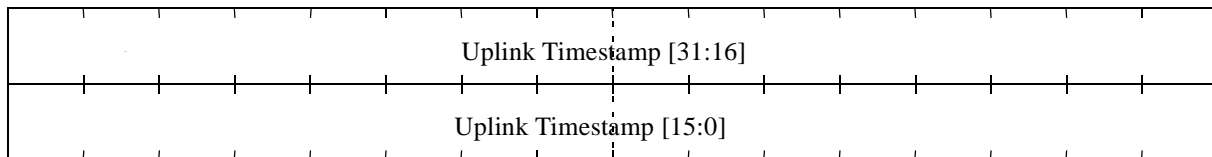


Figure 19—PHY Synchronization Field (PHY Type = 2)

The format of the PHY Synchronization field is given in Figure 19. The Uplink Timestamp jitter must be less than 500 ns peak-to-peak at the output of the Downlink Transmission Convergence Sublayer. This jitter is relative to an ideal Downlink Transmission Convergence Sublayer that transfers the TC packet data to the Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sublayer with a perfectly continuous and smooth clock at symbol rate. Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sublayer processing shall not be considered in timestamp generation and transfer to the Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sub-layer. Thus, any two timestamps N_1 and N_2 ($N_2 > N_1$) which were transferred to the Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sublayer at times T_1 and T_2 respectively must satisfy the following relationship: $(N_2 - N_1)/(4 \times \text{Symbol Rate}) - (T_2 - T_1) < 500 \text{ ns}$.

The jitter includes inaccuracy in timestamp value and the jitter in all clocks. The 500ns allocated for jitter at the Downlink Transmission Convergence Sublayer output must be reduced by any jitter that is introduced by the Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sublayer.

8.3.4.3.4.3.4 Mode A: UL-MAP Allocation Start Time definition

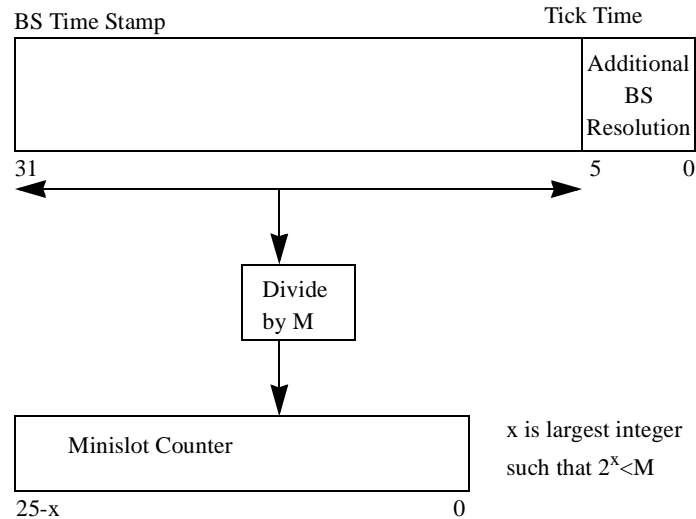


Figure 20—UL-MAP Alloc Start Time

The Alloc Start Time is the effective start time of the uplink allocation defined by the UL-MAP or DL_MAP in units of mini-slots. The start time is relative to the time of BS initialization (PHY Type = 5). The UL-MAP/DL_MAP Allocation Start Time is given as an offset to the Time Stamp defined in 8.3.4.3.4.3.3.1. Figure 20 illustrates the relation of the Time Stamp maintained in the BS to the BS Mini-slot Counter. The base time unit is called a tick and is of duration 1 μ s, independent of the symbol rate, and is counted using a 26 bit counter. The additional BS resolution is of duration $(1 \text{ tick} / 64) = 15.625 \text{ ns}$. The Mini-Slot count is derived from the tick count by means of a divide by M operation. Note that the divisor M is not necessarily a power of 2.

For arbitrary symbol rates, the main constraint in the definition of a mini slot, is that the number of symbols per mini slot be an integer. For example given a symbol rate of R Symbols/tick, and M ticks/mini-slot, the number of symbols per mini-slot N, is given by $N = MR$. In this situation, M should be chosen such that N is an integer. In order to accommodate a wide range of symbol rates, it is important not to constrain M to be a power of 2. Since the additional BS resolution is independent of the symbol rate, the system can use an uniform time reference for distance ranging.

In order to show that the time base is applicable to single carrier and OFDM symbol rates, consider the following examples: (a) Single Carrier System - Given a symbol rate of 4.8 Msymbols/s (on a 6MHz channel), if the mini-slot duration is chosen to be 10 ticks (i.e., $M = 10$), then there are 48 symbols/mini-slot. Given 16QAM modulation this corresponds to a granularity of 24 bytes/mini-slot (b) OFDM System - Given an OFDM symbol time of 50 μ s, the mini-slot duration is also chosen to be 50 ticks (i.e., $M = 50$). In this case there is only a single symbol per mini-slot.

8.3.4.3.4.3.5 UL-MAP Ack Time definition

The Ack Time is the latest time processed in uplink in units of mini-slots. This time is used by the SS for collision detection purposes. The Ack Time is given relative to the BS initialization time.

8.3.4.3.4.4 Mode B: Burst Downlink Transmission

This mode of operation has been designed to support burst transmission in the downlink channel. In particular, this mode is applicable for systems using adaptive modulation in an FDD system or for systems using TDD, both of which require a burst capability in the downlink channel. In order to simplify phase recovery and channel tracking, a fixed frame time is used. At the beginning of every frame, a preamble is transmitted in order to allow for phase recovery and equalization training. A description of the framing mechanism and the structure of the frame is further described in 3.2.4.5.1????.

8.3.4.3.4.4.1 Mode B: Downlink Framing

In the burst mode, the uplink and downlink can be multiplexed in a TDD fashion as described in 3.2.2.1.3???, or in an FDD fashion as described in 3.2.2.1.2???. Each method uses a frame with a duration as specified in 3.2.5.1???. Within this frame are a downlink subframe and an uplink subframe. In the TDD case, the downlink subframe comes first, followed by the uplink subframe. In the burst FDD case, uplink transmissions occur during the downlink frame. In both cases, the downlink subframe is prefixed with information necessary for frame synchronization.

The available bandwidth in both directions is defined with a granularity of one mini slot (MS). The number of mini slots within each frame is independent of the symbol rate. The frame size is selected in order to obtain an integral number of MS within each frame. For example, with a 10 us MS duration, there are 500 MS within a 5-ms frame, independent of the symbol rate.

The structure of the downlink subframe used by the BS to transmit to the SSs, using Mode B, is shown in Figure 21. This burst structure defines the downlink physical channel. It starts with a Frame Control Header, that is always transmitted using the most robust set of PHY parameters. This frame header contains a preamble used by the PHY for synchronization and equalization. It also contains control clauses for both the PHY and the MAC (DL_MAP and UL_MAP control messages) that is encoded with a fixed FEC scheme defined in this standard in order to ensure interoperability. The Frame Control Header also may periodically contain PHY Parameters as defined in the DCD and UCD.

There are two ways in which the downstream data may be organized for Mode B systems:

- Transmissions may be organized into different modulation and FEC groups, where the modulation type and FEC parameters are defined through MAC layer messaging. The PHY Control portion of the Frame Control Header contains a downlink map stating the MSs at which the different modulation/FEC groups begin. Data should be transmitted in robustness order. For modulations this means QPSK followed by 16-QAM, followed by 64-QAM. If more than 1 FEC is defined (via DCD messages) for a given modulation, the more robust FEC/modulation combination appears first. Each SS receives and decodes the control information of the downstream and looks for MAC headers indicating data for that SS.
- Alternatively, transmissions need not be ordered by robustness. The PHY control portion contains a downlink map stating the MS (and modulation/ FEC) of each of the TDMA sub-bursts. This allows an individual SS to decode a specific portion of the downlink without the need to decode the whole DS burst. In this particular case, each transmission associated with different burst types is required to start with a short preamble for phase re-synchronization.

There is a Tx/Rx Transition Gap (TTG) separating the downlink subframe from the uplink subframe in the case of TDD

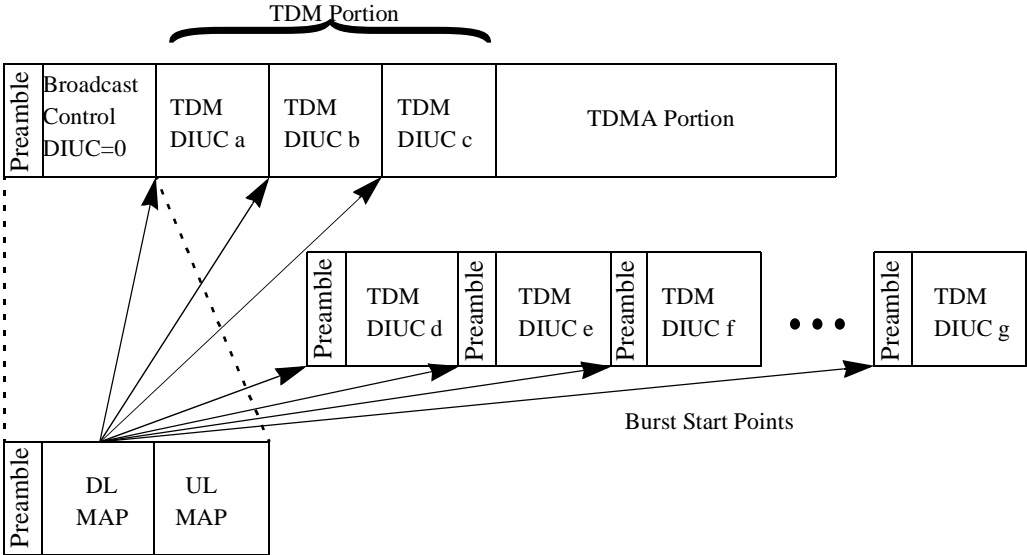


Figure 21—Mode B Downlink Subframe Structure

8.3.4.3.4.4.2 Frame Control

The first portion of the downlink frame is used for control information destined for all SS. This control information must not be encrypted. The information transmitted in this section is always transmitted using the well known DL Burst Type with UIUC=0. This control section must contain a DL-MAP message for the channel followed by one UL-MAP message for each associated uplink channel. In addition it may contain DCD and UCD messages following the last UL-MAP message. No other messages may be sent in the PHY/MAC Control portion of the frame.

8.3.4.3.4.4.3 Downlink Mode B: Required DCD parameters

The following parameters shall be included in the DCD message:

TBD

8.3.4.3.4.4.3.1 Downlink Mode B: DCD, Required burst descriptor parameters

Each Burst Descriptor in the DCD message shall include the following parameters:

TBD

8.3.4.3.4.4.4 Downlink Mode B: Required UCD parameters

The following parameters shall be included in the UCD message:

TBD

8.3.4.3.4.4.5 Downlink Mode B: DL-MAP elements

For PHY Type = {0, 1}, a number of information elements as defined as in Figure ??? follows the Base Station ID field. The MAP information elements must be in time order. Note that this is not necessarily IUC order or connection ID order.

8.3.4.3.4.4.6 Allowable frame times

Table 9 indicates the various frame times that are allowed for the current downlink Mode B physical layer. The actual frame time used by the downlink channel can be determined by the periodicity of the frame start preambles

Table 9—Allowable Frame Times

Frame Length Code	Frame time (T_F) (ms)
0x01	0.5
0x02	1.0
0x03	1.5
0x04	2.0
0x05	2.5
0x06	3.0
0x07	3.5
0x08	4.0
0x09	4.5
0x0A	5.0

8.3.4.3.4.4.7 Mode B: DL-MAP PHY Synchronization Field definition

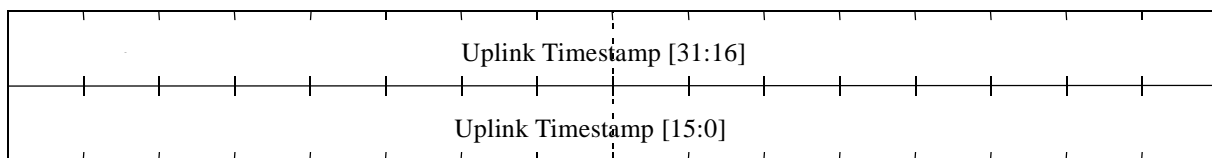


Figure 22—PHY Synchronization Field (PHY Type = {0,1})

The format of the PHY Synchronization field is given in Figure 22. The Uplink Timestamp jitter must be less than 500 ns peak-to-peak at the output of the Downlink Transmission Convergence Sublayer. This jitter is relative to an ideal Downlink Transmission Convergence Sublayer that transfers the TC packet data to the Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sublayer with a perfectly continuous and smooth clock at symbol rate. Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sublayer processing shall not be considered in timestamp generation and transfer to the Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sub-layer. Thus, any two timestamps N_1 and N_2 ($N_2 > N_1$) which were transferred to the Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sublayer at times T_1 and T_2 respectively must satisfy the following relationship: $(N_2 - N_1)/(4 \times \text{Symbol Rate}) - (T_2 - T_1) < 500 \text{ ns}$

The jitter includes inaccuracy in timestamp value and the jitter in all clocks. The 500ns allocated for jitter at the Downlink Transmission Convergence Sublayer output must be reduced by any jitter that is introduced by the Downlink Physical Media Dependent Sublayer.

8.3.4.3.4.4.8 UL-MAP Allocation Start Time definition

The Alloc Start Time is the effective start time of the uplink allocation defined by the UL-MAP or DL_MAP in units of mini-slots. The start time is relative to the time of BS initialization (PHY Type = 5). The UL-MAP/DL_MAP Allocation Start Time is given as an offset to the Time Stamp defined in 8.3.4.3.4.3.3. Figure 145???? illustrates the relation of the Time Stamp maintained in the BS to the BS Mini-slot Counter. The base time unit is called a tick and is of duration 1 us, independent of the symbol rate, and is counted using a 26 bit counter. The additional BS resolution is of duration $(1 \text{ tick} / 64) = 15.625 \text{ ns}$. The Mini-Slot count is derived from the tick count by means of a divide by M operation. Note that the divisor M is not necessarily a power of 2.

For arbitrary symbol rates, the main constraint in the definition of a mini-slot, is that the number of symbols per mini-slot be an integer. For example given a symbol rate of R Symbols/tick, and M ticks/mini-slot, the number of symbols per mini-slot N, is given by $N = MR$. In this situation, M should be chosen such that N is an integer. In order to accommodate a wide range of symbol rates, it is important not to constrain M to be a power of 2. Since the additional BS resolution is independent of the symbol rate, the system can use an uniform time reference for distance ranging.

In order to show that the time base is applicable to single carrier and OFDM symbol rates, consider the following examples: (a) Single Carrier System - Given a symbol rate of 4.8 Msymbols/s (on a 6MHz channel), if the mini-slot duration is chosen to be 10 ticks (i.e., $M = 10$), then there are 48 symbols/mini-slot. Given 16QAM modulation this corresponds to a granularity of 24 bytes/mini-slot (b) OFDM System - Given an OFDM symbol time of 50 us, the mini-slot duration is also chosen to be 50 ticks (i.e., $M = 50$). In this case there is only a single symbol per mini-slot.

8.3.4.3.4.4.9 UL-MAP Ack Time definition

The Ack Time is the latest time processed in uplink in units of mini-slots. This time is used by the SS for collision detection purposes. The Ack Time is given relative to the BS initialization time

8.3.4.4 OFDM PHY Burst Definition and MAP Messages

8.3.4.5 OFDMA PHY Burst Definition and MAP Messages

8.3.4.5.1 Introduction

This clause describes the MAC-PHY considerations and MAC-PHY information exchange needed for support OFDMA/OFDM based PHY layer.

The OFDMA access scheme defines an access scheme of a two dimensional grid that combines time and frequency division access technique.

<<< The 802.16.1 MAC layer needs to be enhanced/updated to support OFDMA\OFDM access scheme while saving the main working principles of the MAC layer. >>>

In a MAC protocol that supports OFDMA PHY layer, sub-channelization should be supported, mini-slot duration should last for the time duration of a full OFDM symbol and should be used as a time symbol reference. In addition, for each time symbol reference, a sub-channel reference should be provided for an OFDMA access resolution.

Each of the Uplink and Downlink symbols are built from subcarriers, which are divided statically into sub-channels that are groups of 53 (48 useful) sub-carriers. A sub-channel does not necessarily contain consequent subcarriers.

The OFDMA defines a slot as a pair {N,m} that represents a combination of an OFDM time symbol (N) and number of a sub-channel (m).

In each cell a single FFT size is used

The basic suggested (partial) profiles for the uplink transmission can be summarized in Table 10:

Table 10—UL profiles

Profile	0	1	2	3	4	5
C/N (dB)	3-6	6-9	9-12	12-17	17-20	>20
Modulation	QPSK	QPSK	QAM16	QAM16	QAM64	QAM64
Code rate	1/2	3/4	1/2	3/4	2/3	3/4

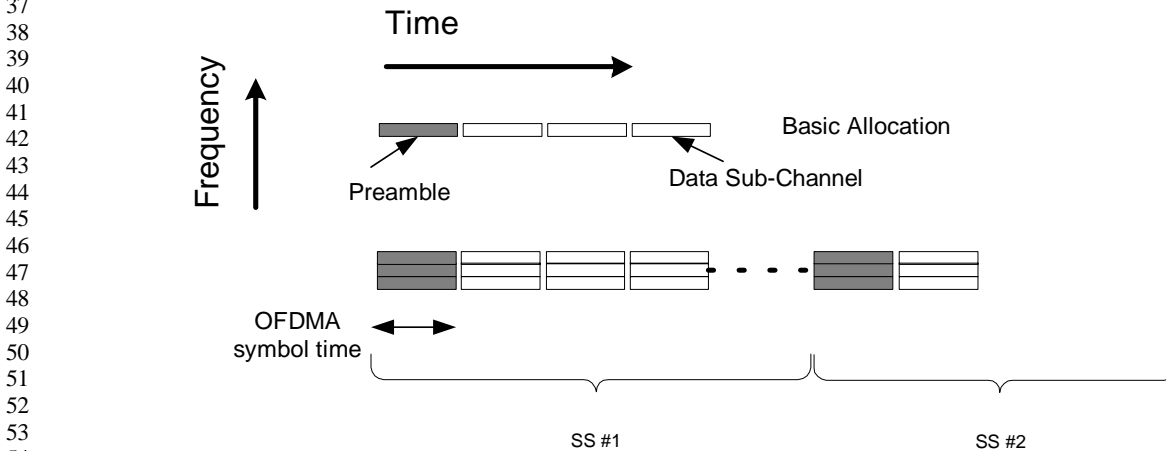
21 The defined values are used for a reference, bad CIR can cause the BS to chose lower profile or allocation of fewer
 22 Sub-Channels enables the BS to choose higher profile.

[illegible]

27 The UL MAP IEs shall have the UIUC that represent the relevant profile that determined by the BS.
28

30 Figure 24 describes the logical structure of UL PHY Burst.

32 <<< Note: for the next figures, the size (number of symbols) of the preamble is still under discussion of the PHY
33 group. >>>



55 **Figure 24—UL PHY Burst example**

59 Figure 25 describes two different subscribers with different PHY Burst structures and profiles.

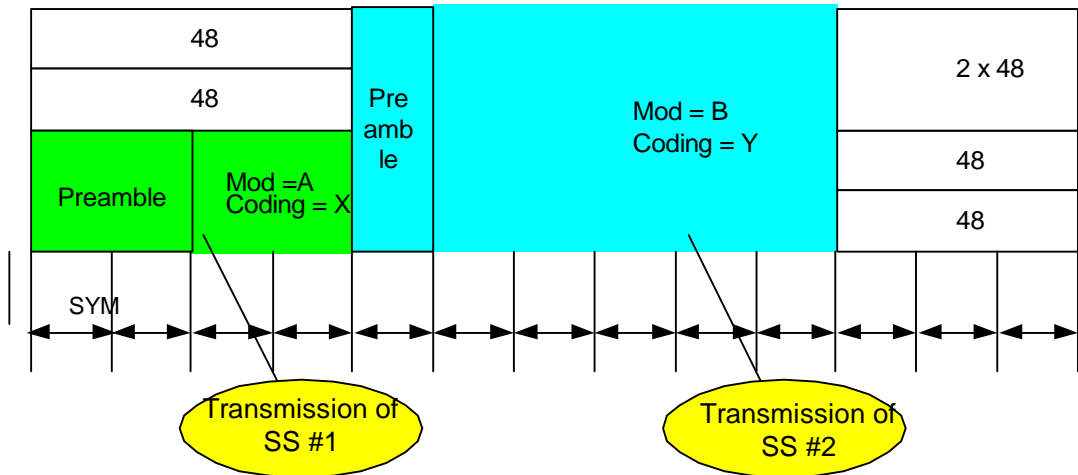


Figure 25—UL Burst definition Example #1

Figure 26 describes two different subscribers with similar PHY Burst structure and with different profiles

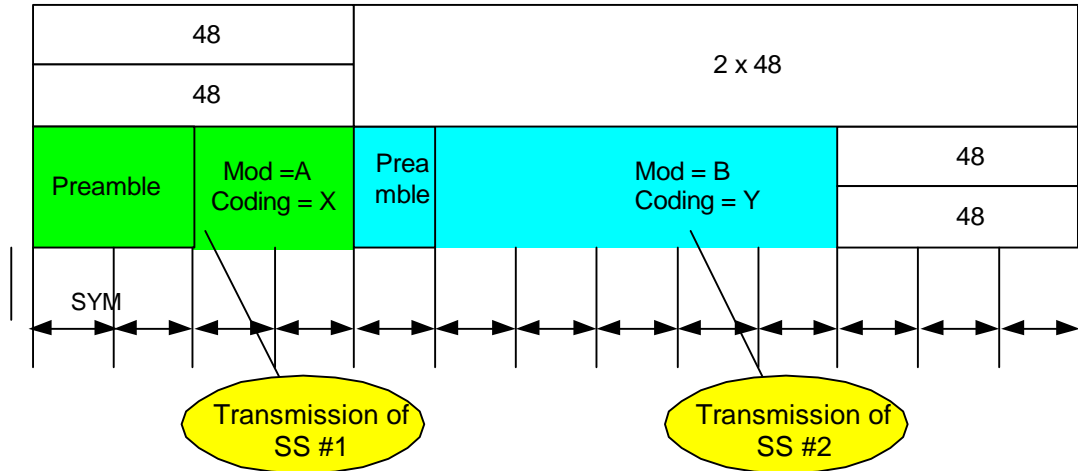


Figure 26—UL Burst Definition Example #2

8.3.4.5.2.3 DL Transmissions

The DL PHY Burst properties will be figured:

- In the MAC-PHY interface primitives
- In DCD message within Burst Profile TLV encodings
- In DL-MAP message, implicitly identified by DIUC.
- In the RNG-RSP or DBTC-RSP messages, implicitly identified by the Downlink Burst Type.

The set of DL PHY Burst parameters is specified in <Reference to OFDM PHY relevant clause> and includes at least:

- Modulation type
- FEC type
- Tx Power

The forward adaptive profiles are relevant in the Bursty working modes (FDD-B and TDD).

The SS requests from the BS a specific DL PHY Burst type (using the DBTC-REQ or RNG-REQ messages), the BS will acknowledge the user with a downstream working mode (using the DBTC-RSP or RNG-RSP messages).

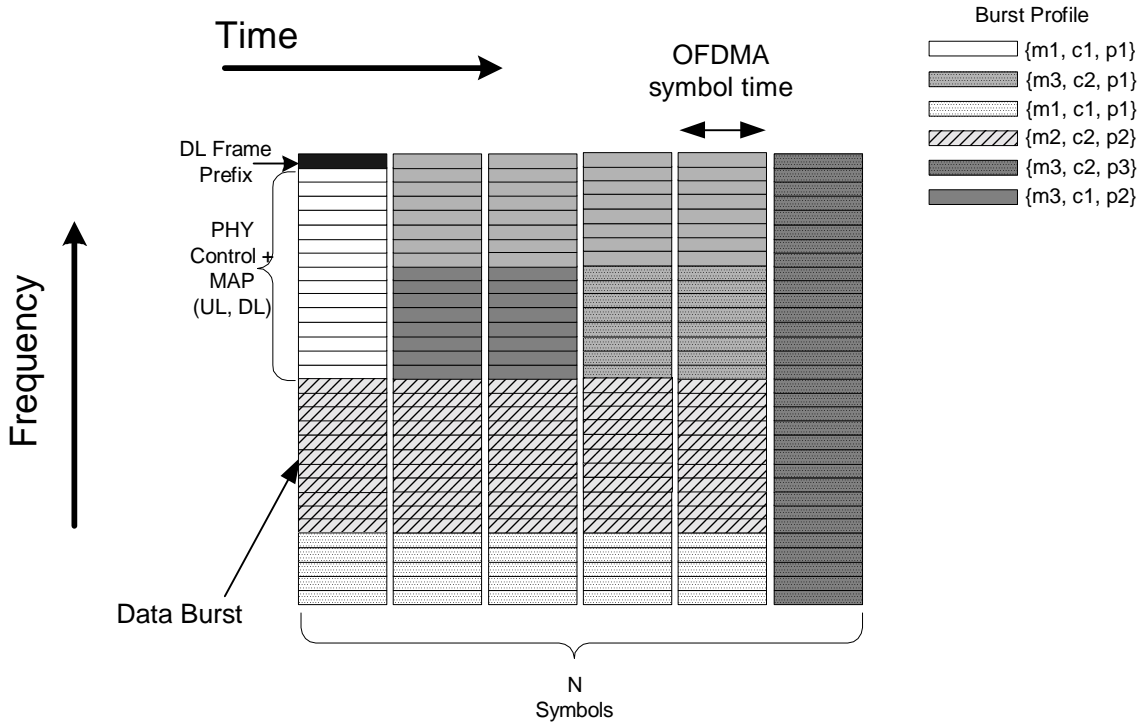


Figure 27—DL Period example #1

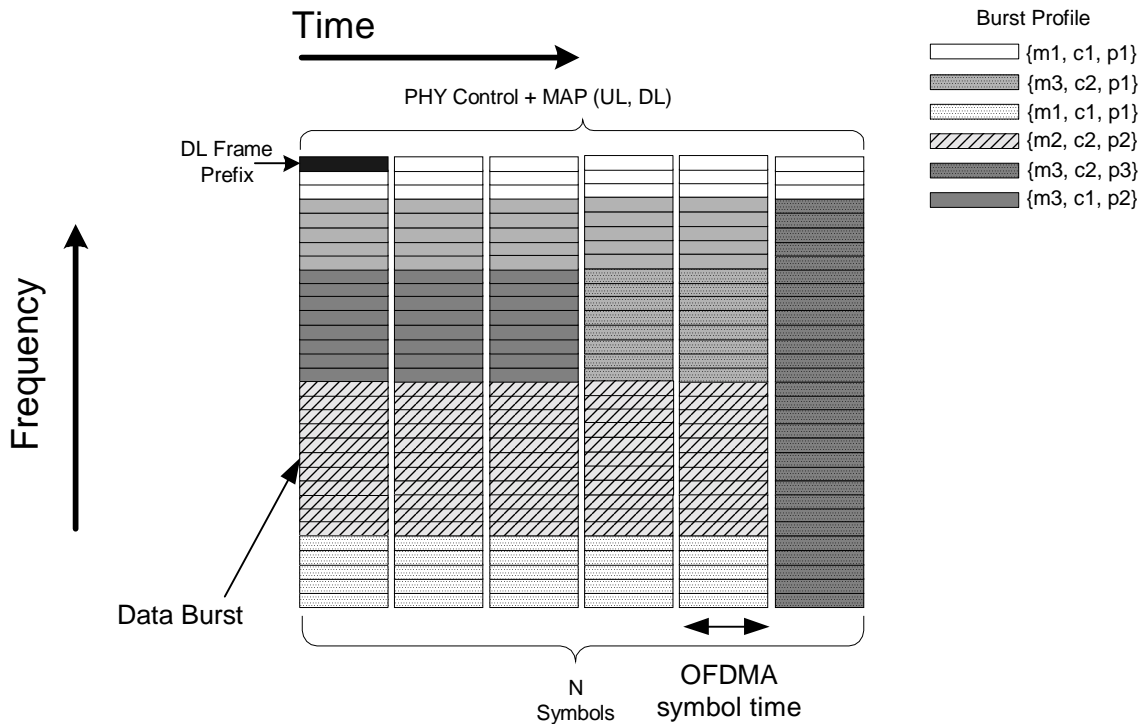


Figure 28—DL Period example #2

Figure 27 and Figure 28 describe two scenarios of DL OFDMA allocation with two options of sending DL MAP.

In the OFDM working modes (small FFT sizes), TDM/TDMA working model is used. This means that the unit of allocation is a full OFDM symbol. In those modes, the frame control information (DL/UL MAP) shall be sent on the first Symbol(s).

In the high FFT sizes modes, OFDMA working model is used. This means that the unit of allocation is a Burst (which is a combination of a sub-channels and time symbols). In those modes, there are two possibilities to transmit the DL\UL MAP:

- To take advantage of the option of forward power control, and robust transmission of frame control information, the transmission of the DL\UL MAP can be done by using 1-2 sub-channels for the duration of the whole frame while power boosting the used carriers.
- To use the basic method of the OFDM case, but with size optimization. This means that the DL\UL MAP shall be transmitted at the beginning of the frame, using all or part of the sub-channels.

The frame control information should be transmitted in a deterministic pre-defined (and robust) configuration, therefore indication about the frame control information should be defined. To be able to support a generic formation of frame control message in the downlink in the context of OFDMA\OFDM PHY modes, we propose the notion of DL Frame prefix.

DL Frame Prefix: One symbol long; it is transmitted at the well-known modulation/coding and occupies the well-known set of sub-carriers, e.g. the first $N \times 48$ (for the FFT-64 always $N = 1$, for FFT-256 OFDM always $N = 4$ or For FFT-2048 OFDMA always $N=1$ etc.). It contains the information on the modulation/coding and formation of the DL frame control information (DL\UL MAP messages) relevant to the next frame or to the same frame. Figure 297 describes the structure of DL Frame Prefix:

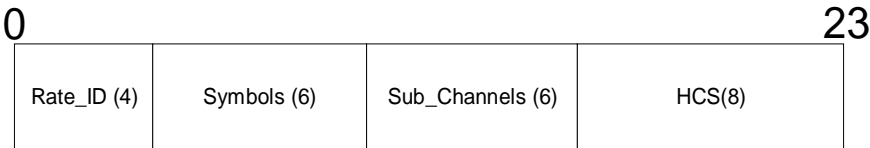


Figure 29—DL Frame Prefix Structure

- Rate_ID:** Enumerated field that describes the transmission parameters of the DL\UL MAP messages.
- Symbols:** Number of time symbols dedicated to the DL\UL MAP message.
- Sub_Channels:** Number of sub-channels dedicated to the DL\UL MAP message.
- HCS:** An 8-bit Header Check Sequence used to detect errors in the DL Frame Prefix. The generator polynomial is $g(D)=D^8 + D^2 + D + 1$
- DL Frame Prefix can contain also MAP message(s) (for FFT-512 for example, the full first symbol will contain the DL Frame Prefix and beginning of the DL\UL MAP messages) and the "MAP" PHY burst may contain also the data. For the lowest modulation it is exactly 3 bytes.
- The Combination of the fields Symbols and Sub_Channels defines the structure of the MAP message and position (relative to the top left entry of the DL frame). In the small FFT cases (OFDM modes) Sub_Channels field will always indicate full OFDM symbol.

8.3.5 Single Carrier PHY Layer

8.3.5.1 General

The document describes the Single Carrier (SC) PHY system, which adopts TDM/ TDMA or TDMA/TDMA bandwidth sharing scheme(s). The clause will address the Single Carrier (SC) - with Frequency Domain Equalizer (FDE) and will highlight all the added features of the modulation including the OFDM compatibility features.

The signal is transmitted downlink from the Base Station to all assigned Subscriber Stations using a carrier frequency in broadcast Time Division Multiplex (TDM) mode. The uplink signal is burst from the Subscriber Station sharing the same RF carrier with other assigned Subscriber Stations to the Base Station in Time Division Multiple Access (TDMA) mode. This access scheme can be either FDD or TDD. Both duplexing schemes have intrinsic advantages and disadvantages, so for a given application the optimum duplexing scheme to be applied depends on deployment-specific characteristics, i.e., bandwidth availability, Tx-to-Rx spacing, traffic models, and cost objectives.

Operating frequency band will be from 2 to 11 GHz and the Base Station can use multiple sectors and will be capable of supporting smart antenna in the future.

The PHY layer uses a Single Carrier (SC) modulation with a Frequency Domain Equalizer (FDE) (or SC-FDE). We have shown that SC-FDE modulation can offer as good or better performance than Orthogonal Frequency Division Modulation (OFDM) technology in solving the Non-Line of Sight (NLOS) problem that may arise in the 2 to 11 GHz frequency bands [14], [15].

In addition, this document discusses the compatibility between of the SC-FDE and OFDM modulation schemes for Sub 11 GHz BWA applications. Furthermore, the presented frame structure in this draft document has all the capabilities for adaptive modulation and coding. The main objective of the frame structure has been making the PHY almost independent from the MAC. The PHY here is based upon utilizing the structure of the 802.16 MAC.

8.3.5.2 Single Carrier PHY Features

The Single Carrier PHY is a Broadband Wireless Access (BWA) Point-to-Multipoint communication system that can provide digital, two-way voice, data, Internet and video services. This PHY shall offer an effective alternative to traditional wire line (cable or DSL) services.

Employing the functions of the 802.16 MAC such as QoS, the BWA system using the PHY here will support services; such as packet data and Constant Bit Rate (CBR) as well as T1-E1, POTS, wide band audio and video services.

To maximize the utilization of limited spectrum resources in the low frequency bands (2 to 11 GHz), the air-interface supports uplink statistical multiplexing over the air-interface using Time Division Multiple Access (TDMA) technology.

The key features of the PHY are the following:

- Full compatibility with the 802.16 MAC.
- Uplink multiple access is based on TDMA scheme.
- Downlink multiple access is based on broadcast TDM scheme.
- Duplexing is based on either TDD or FDD scheme.
- PHY uses a block adaptive modulation and FEC coding in both Uplink and Downlink paths.
- High capacity single carrier modulation with frequency Domain Equalization (SC-FDE) in addition to Decision Feedback Equalization in the time domain.
- The use of single carrier modulation techniques can result in low cost Subscriber Stations (SS) and Base Stations (BS).
- The modulation scheme is robust in multi-path and other channel impairments
- The PHY is flexible in terms of geographic coverage, in the use of frequency band, and capacity allocation.

- Base Station can use multiple sector antennas. Support for future use of smart antennas is feasible and is implicit in the PHY design.
- The PHY can easily accommodate multi-beam and antenna diversity options; such as Multiple-In Multiple-Out (MIMO) and Delay diversity.
- The SC -FDE PHY has an added feature of re-configurability to support OFDM modulation.
- For severe multipath, Single Carrier QAM with simplified frequency-domain equalization performs at least as well as OFDM (better for uncoded systems).
- Frequency domain linear equalization has essentially the same complexity as uncoded OFDM, with better performance in frequency selective fading, and without OFDM's inherent backoff power penalty.
- A "Compatible" frequency domain receiver structure can be programmed to handle either OFDM or Single Carrier.
- Downlink OFDM / uplink single carrier may yield potential complexity reduction and uplink power efficiency gains relative to downlink OFDM / uplink OFDM.

8.3.5.3 SC-FDE Wireless Access System Model

Figure 30 is an illustration for Single carrier system and Figure 31 is the OFDM Compatible system.

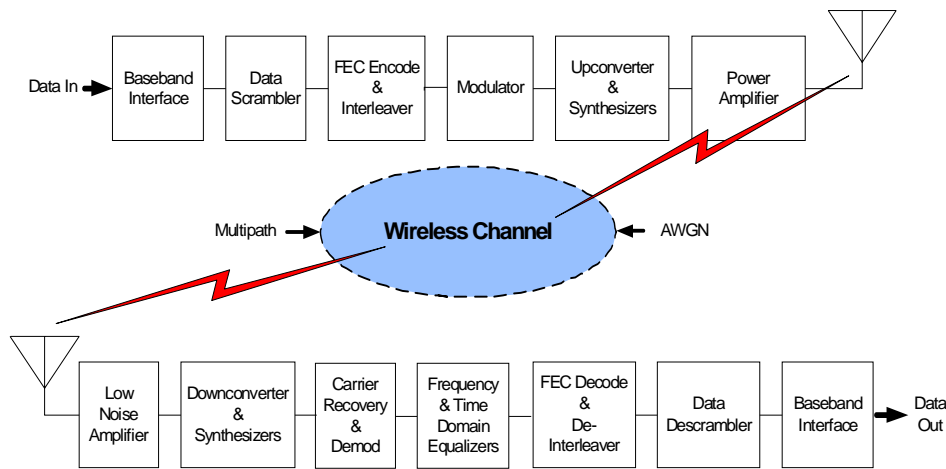


Figure 30—SC block diagram

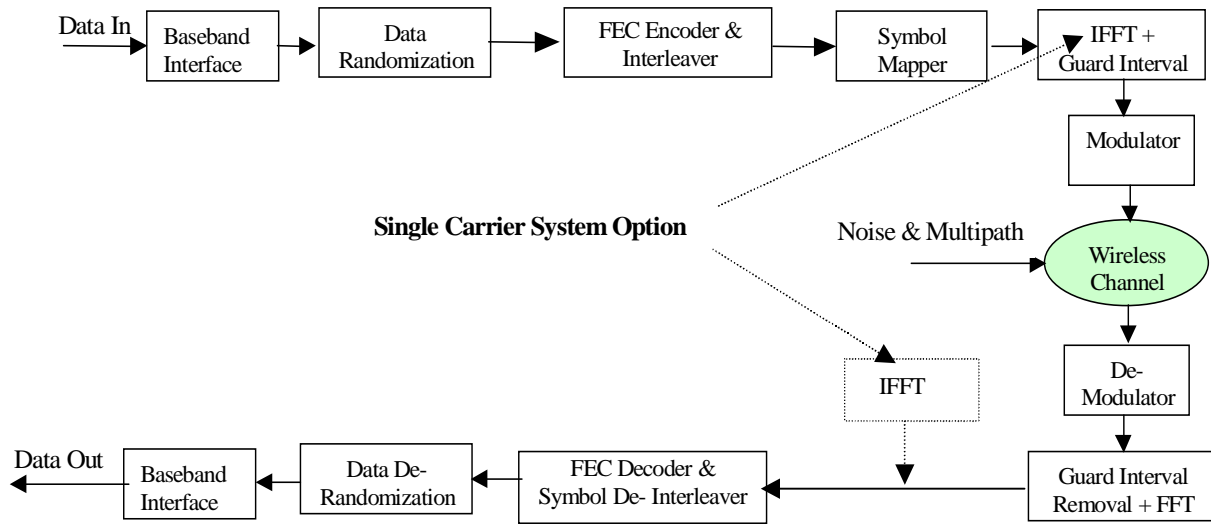


Figure 31—OFDM Compatible SC PHY Block Diagram

8.3.5.4 Single-Carrier with Frequency Domain Equalization (SC-FDE) Scheme

The 2-11 GHz systems may operate on NLOS conditions, in which severe multi-path is encountered. Multi-path delay spread is a major transmission problem, which affects the design of modulation and equalization. Delay spread varies with environment and characteristics of transmit and receive antennas. In typical MMDS operating conditions, average delay spread ~ 0.5 (s, but 2% of measured delay spreads $>$ approx. 8-10 ([4], [5], [15])). Figure 32 illustrates Single Carrier with Frequency Domain Equalization (SC-FDE) with Linear Equalization at the receiver end.

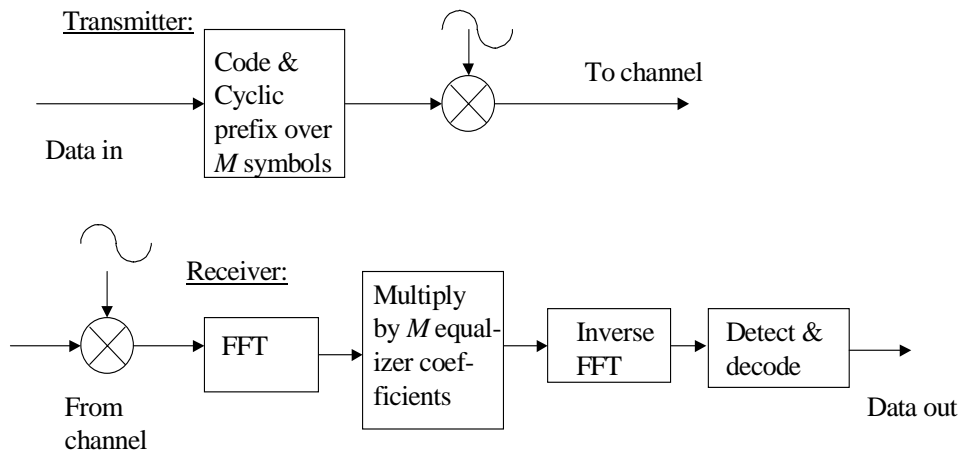


Figure 32—SC-FDE with Linear Equalization

What is shown above is essentially conventional linear equalization, using a transversal filter with M tap coefficients, but with filtering done in the frequency domain. The typical block length M , suitable for MMDS systems, would be in the range of 128 to 1024, for both OFDM and Single-Carrier FDE systems.

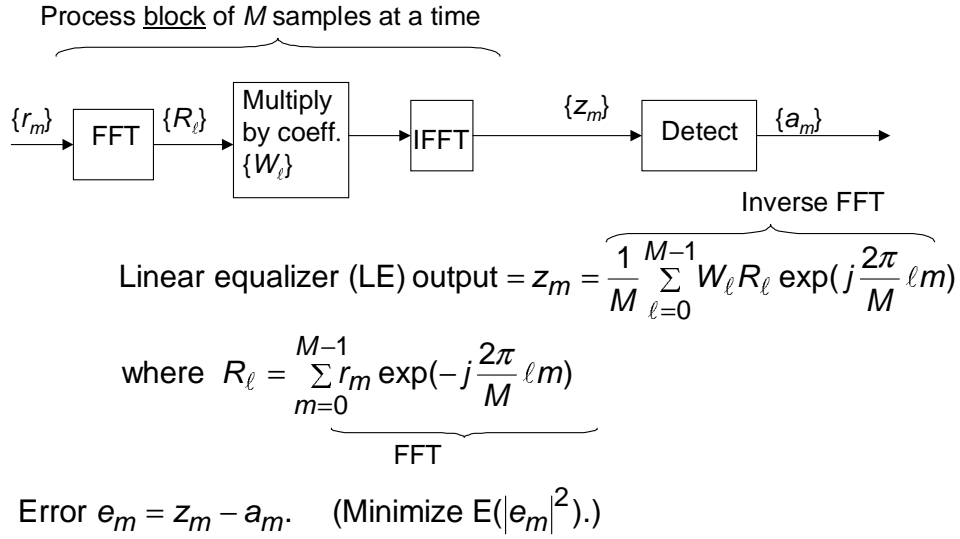
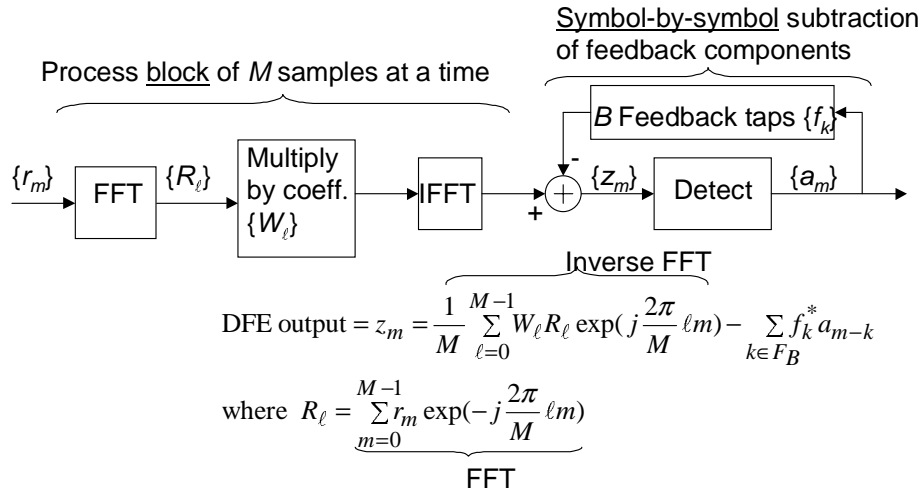


Figure 33—SC-FDE with Linear Equalization - Details

As shown in Figure 33, there are approximately $\log_2 M$ multiplies per symbol for a SC - FDE with Linear Equalizer, as in OFDM. That is, the block length M and cyclic prefix are similar to those for OFDM. Single carrier modulation, with receiver linear equalization (LE) or decision feedback equalization (DFE) in frequency domain - approximately equal complexity to OFDM, without the power back-off penalty [5], [6], [7] and [10]. Again, Figure 34 illustrates summarizes the implementation and complexity of a SC - FDE with decision feedback equalizer (DFE).



F_B is a set of B feedback tap delays corresponding to the B largest channel Impulse response postcursors.

Error $e_m = z_m - a_m$. (Minimize MSE = $E(|e_m|^2)$.)

Figure 34—SC-FDE with Decision Feedback Equalizer (FD-DFE)

Note that with an adaptive receiver based on Frequency Domain processing can handle both OFDM and Single Carrier modulation.

Further note that, Hikmet Sari in References [4], [10], [11], [12] and [13] has significantly contributed to the development of Single Carrier modulation with Frequency Domain Equalization (SC-FDE). He also introduced the concept of Cyclic prefix to simplify the processing. However, there were few others (in the 70's and 80's) in the field who have introduced the concept of Frequency Domain Equalizer with overlap-add methods which can eliminate the need for a cyclic prefix but introduces added complexity in processing and adaptation. We should also mention that Sari [4] was the first to compare SC-FDE explicitly with OFDM.

8.3.5.4.1 Single Carrier-Frequency Domain Equalization (SC-FDE)

OFDM transmits multiple modulated subcarriers in parallel. Each occupies only a very narrow bandwidth. Since only the amplitude and phase of each subcarrier is affected by the channel, compensation of frequency selective fading is done by compensating for each subchannel's amplitude and phase. OFDM signal processing is carried out relatively simple by using two fast Fourier transforms (FFT's), at the transmitter and the receiver, respectively.

The single carrier (SC) system transmits a single carrier, modulated at a high symbol rate. Frequency domain equalization in a SC system is simply the frequency domain analog of what is done by a conventional linear time domain equalizer. For channels with severe delay spread it is simpler than corresponding time domain equalization for the same reason that OFDM is simpler: because of the FFT operations and the simple channel inversion operation.

The main hardware difference between OFDM and SC-FDE is that the transmitter's inverse FFT block is moved to the receiver. The complexities are the same. A dual-mode system could be designed to handle either OFDM or SC-FDE by simply interchanging the IFFT block between the transmitter and receiver at each end (see Figure 35)

Both systems can be enhanced by coding (which is in fact required for OFDM systems), adaptive modulation and space diversity. In addition, OFDM can incorporate peak-to-average reduction signal processing to partially (but not completely) alleviate its high sensitivity to power amplifier nonlinearities. SC-FDE can be enhanced by adding decision feedback equalization or maximum likelihood sequence estimation.

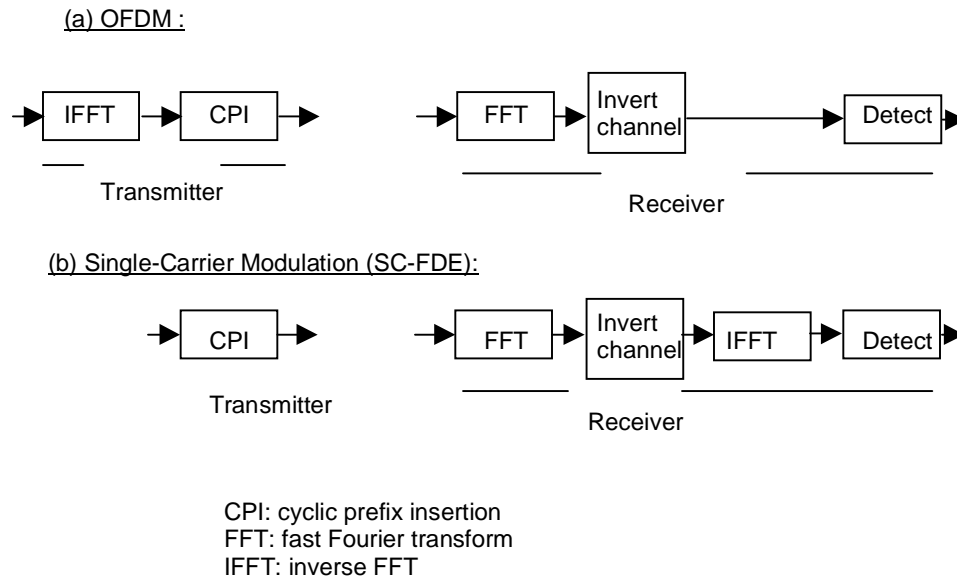


Figure 35—OFDM and SC-FDE relation

8.3.5.4.2 Compatibility of Single Carrier (SC-FDE) and OFDM

Comparable SC-FDE and OFDM systems would have the same block length and cyclic prefix lengths. Since their main hardware difference is the location of the inverse FFT, a modem could be converted as required to handle both OFDM and single carrier signals by switching the location of the inverse FFT block between the transmitter and receiver. Therefore, the coexistence of OFDM and SC-FDE as a "convertible" modem can be feasible (see Figure 36).

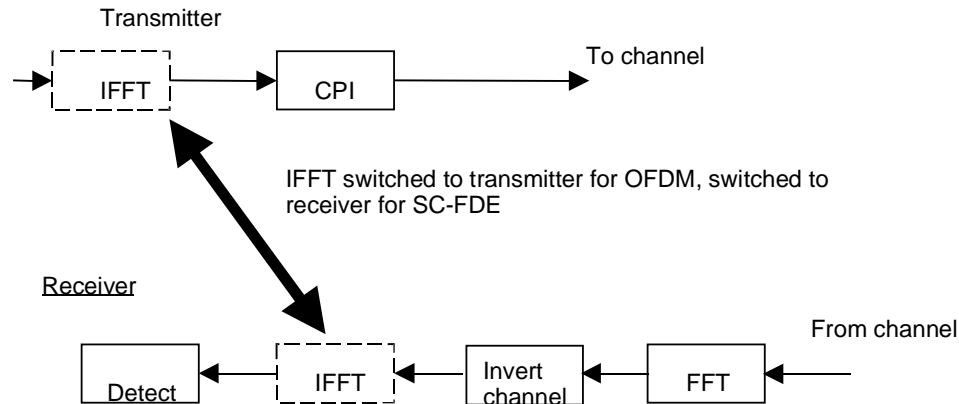


Figure 36—OFDM and SC-FDE 'convertible' Modem

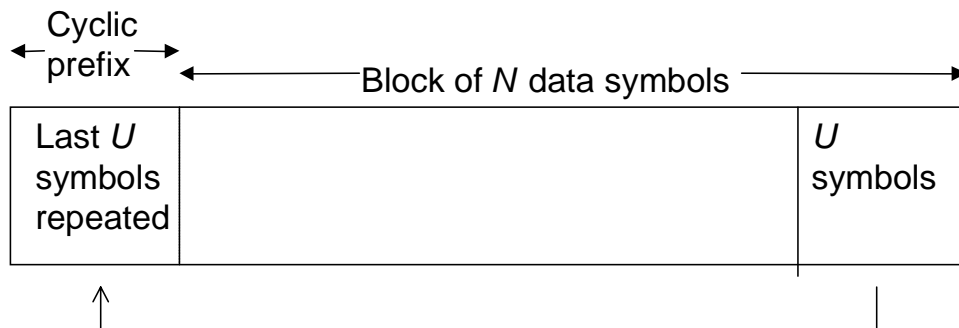


Figure 37—Block Processing in FDE

As shown in Figure 37, that the cyclic prefix used in both SC-FDE and OFDM systems at the beginning of each block has two main functions:

- It prevents contamination of a block by intersymbol interference from the previous block.
- It makes the received block appear to be periodic with period M , which is essential to the proper functioning of the fast Fourier transform operation.

If the first U and last U symbols are identical unique word sequences of training symbols, the overhead fraction is $2U / (N+U)$. For either OFDM or SC-FDE MMDS systems, typical values of N could be 512 or 1024, and typical values of U could be 64 or 128.

8.3.5.5 DL: Randomization, FEC, Interleaving, Symbol Mapping, Baseband Shaping

The downlink channel supports various modulation formats and FEC coding on the user data portion of the frame. Different modulation formats and FEC groups can be defined on a subscriber level basis. In this way the downlink channel supports adaptive modulation and coding. Note that each frame contains control portion with fixed modulation (QPSK) and FEC scheme. The details are described in Framing Section.

8.3.5.5.1 Randomization for Spectrum Shaping

Prior to FEC encoding, the downlink channel will be randomized to ensure sufficient bit transitions to support clock recovery and to minimize occurrence of unmodulated carrier frequency. This process is done by modulo-2 addition (XORing) the data with the output of Linear-Feedback Shift Register (LFSR) with characteristic polynomial $1 + X^{14} + X^{15}$. The LFSR is cleared and preset at the beginning of each burst to a known value-100101010000000.

The preambles are not randomized and only information bits are randomized. The LFSR sequence generator pauses while parity bits are being transmitted.

8.3.5.5.2 Downlink Channel FEC definitions

Forward error correction coding schemes which support both Concatenated Reed-Solomon+Convolutional and Turbo Product Codes (optional) coding will be employed. In addition, the provision of suppressing all FEC and operating using the ARQ mechanism in the 802.16 MAC for error control will be included.

8.3.5.5.2.1 Concatenated Reed-Solomon+Convolutional code

This code is based concatenation of an outer Reed Solomon RS(255,239, t=8) code and an inner rate 1/2 (171octal, 133octal), Convolutional code with constraint length K=7. The RS code may be shortened and punctured to accommodate a smaller block sized. The Convolutional code is able to be configured to code rates 2/3, 3/4, 5/6 and 7/8 using puncturing. Byte-based block Interleaving is optional, and may be performed between the inner and outer codes. interleaving. The interleaver depth TBD.

8.3.5.5.2.1.1 Inner Code

8.3.5.5.2.1.1.1 Inner Code Rates

The code rates per modulation for the inner code are shown in .

Table 11—Inner Code rates per modulation

Modulation	Inner Code Rates	bits/symbol
BPSK (optional)	1/2, 3/4	1/2, 3/4
QPSK	1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 7/8	1, 4/3, 3/2, 5/3, 7/4
16 QAM	1/2, 3/4	2, 3
64 QAM	2/3, 5/6	4, 5
256 QAM (optional)	3/4, 7/8	6, 7

8.3.5.5.2.1.1.2 Inner Code Termination

Inner code blocks are to be terminated in transitions between modulation types, between allocations, at the beginning and ends of bursts, or as instructed by the 802.16 MAC. Two termination options are supported:

- Zero-state termination
- Tail biting

When using zero state termination, the basic rate $\frac{1}{2}$ convolutional encoder is initialized with its registers in the all-zeros state. Inner encoding begins from this state, by accepting data inputs. To zero state terminate at the end of the code block, a sufficient number of zero inputs are fed the baseline rate $\frac{1}{2}$ binary convolutional encoder so that its register memory is flushed, i.e., its state memory is driven to zero. This requires a minimum of 6 zero-valued inputs into the $K=7$ binary convolutional encoder, regardless of whether puncturing is performed or not. Once the first bit is used to begin flushing the binary convolutional encoder memory, all input bits, including the systematic input bits that are parallel to the binary convolutional encoder inputs in the pragmatic TCM encoder, should be set to zero. However, the systematic input bits set that are set to zero do not count toward the minimum 6 bit total of binary convolutional encoder bits requisite to flush the encoder memory. Note that the input bits associated with zero state termination should be accounted when computing the code rate-induced granularities for a pragmatic TC encoder.

When using tail biting, no extra termination bits are required. The initial state of the rate $\frac{1}{2}$ convolutional encoder is established so that it is the same as the final state of the encoder, at the end of a block. Since the baseline rate $\frac{1}{2}$ binary convolutional encoder is a shift register, this initial shift registers are loaded with the last 6 binary inputs in the block that would have been fed to the rate $\frac{1}{2}$ convolutional encoder. Note that these bits are not necessarily consecutive input bits, if the pragmatic TCM encoder incorporates systematic bit inputs, as well.

8.3.5.5.2.2 Turbo Product Code

Optionally, Turbo Product Codes as generically specified in clause 8.3.3.1.5.4 may be used. The codes and related parameters in Table 12 are recommended, however any code meeting the requirements of this clause may be utilized.

Table 12— Recommended TPC Codes

Data Block Size (Bytes)	Code Rate	Constituent Codes	Code Parameters
15	$\sim 1/2$	(16,11)(16,11)	$I_x=0, I_y=0, B=1$
20	$\sim 1/2$	(32,26)(32,26)	$I_x=13, I_y=13, B=9$
57	$\sim 3/5$	(32,26)(32,26)	$I_x=2, I_y=7, B=0$
54	$\sim 3/5$	(32,26)(32,26)	$I_x=2, I_y=8, B=0$
128	$\sim 2/3$	(64,57)(64,57)	$I_x=25, I_y=25, B=0$
188	$\sim 5/7$	(64,57)(64,57)	$I_x=25, I_y=10, B=0$
188	$\sim 5/7$	(64,57)(64,57)	$I_x=17, I_y=17, B=0$
392	$\sim 4/5$	(64,57)(64,57)	$I_x=1, I_y=1, B=0$

8.3.5.5.2.2.1 Bit Interleaving

Three bit interleavers are recommended for consideration. In all cases, encoding is done in the standard manner specified in 8.3.3.1.5.4 and read out of the encoded array for transmission as follows:

- Type 1 (no interleaver): In this mode bits are written row-by-row and read row-by-row. No additional latency is imposed in this mode.
- Type 2 (block interleaver): Encoded bits are read from the encoder only after all first k_2 rows are written into the encoder memory. The bits are read column-by-column from top position in the first column. This interleaver imposes one block of additional latency.
- Type 3 (permutation interleaver): Reserved. Possibilities include helical interleaving, which improves burst error performance or other methods that when combined with M-QAM signaling provides better performance. This interleaver would impose one block of additional latency.

8.3.5.5.2.2.2 Constellation Mapping

The downstream channel supports both continuous and burst mode operation and the FEC incorporates Turbo Product Codes, for each of these applications. In order to provide the desired flexibility and the required QoS, TPCs are used in conjunction with adaptive modulation scheme where different modulation formats and TPC's are specified on a frame-by-frame basis. Mapping of the encoded bits into the desired modulation is arranged in Gray code format, as shown in Figure 38.

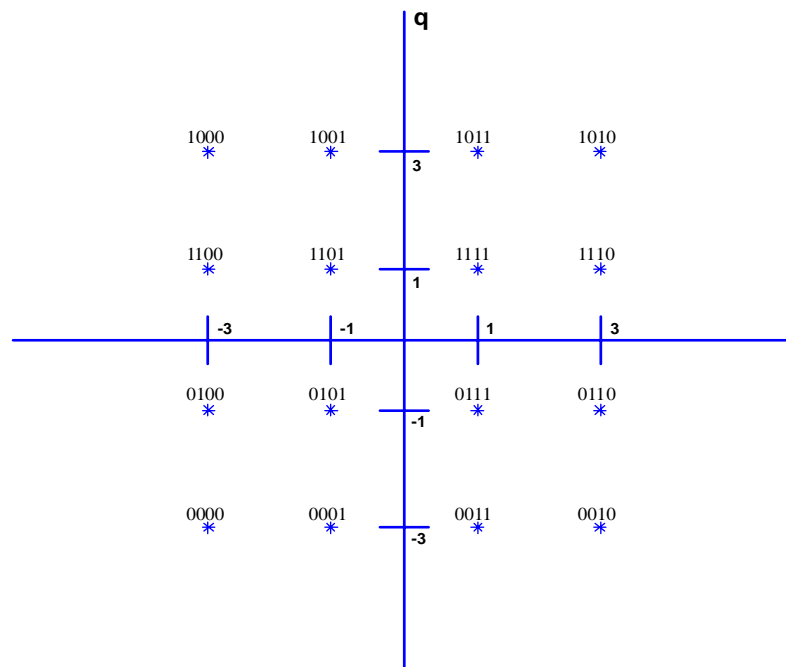


Figure 38—16 QAM Signal Mapping

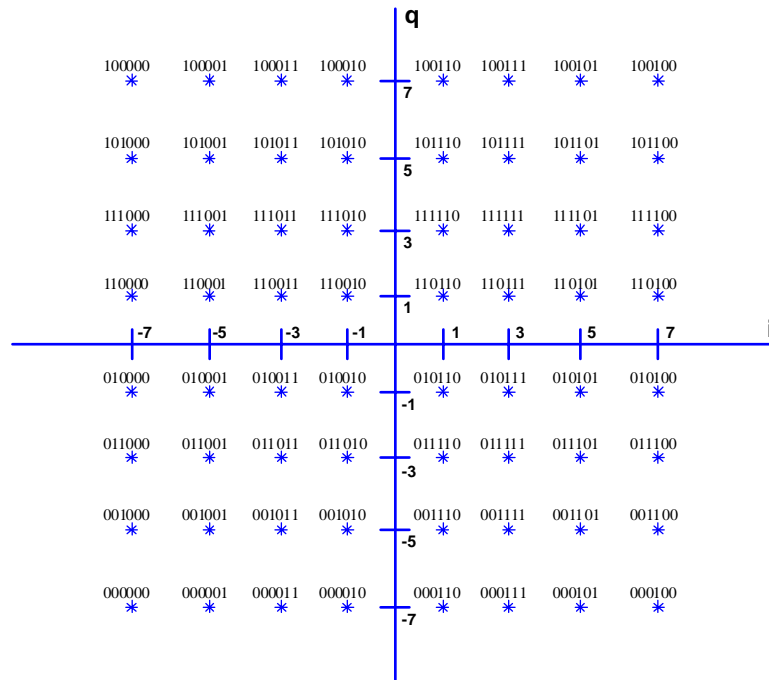


Figure 39—64 QAM Signal Mapping

An additional, optional mode of mapping, known as pragmatic turbo coded modulation may be implemented [3] at the subscriber station. This mode does not require any new turbo coding schemes, however, by modifying the implementation of the mapping table, an additional coding gain between 0.5dB to 0.75 dB for a range of coding rates and modulation techniques can be achieved. The following example illustrates the procedure.

Consider first that we have a $(63,56)_2$ TPC code described in Table 12. This has rate 0.79 and when combined with 16QAM in Gray code mapping fashion provides 0.79 ($\log 216 = 3.16$ bits/symbol/Hz) of channel efficiency.

Now consider the $(39,32)_2$ 2-dimensional TPC from Table 12. This code has shorter block length, its performance is not as good as the performance of the larger code, however it can be implemented with less complexity and reduced absolute latency (Note: that the latency of TPC codes is similar to the conventional RS codes). When combined with 16QAM in a Gray code manner it provides 2.69 bits/symb/Hz. Figure 40 describes the basic scheme for the TPC in a TCM scheme.

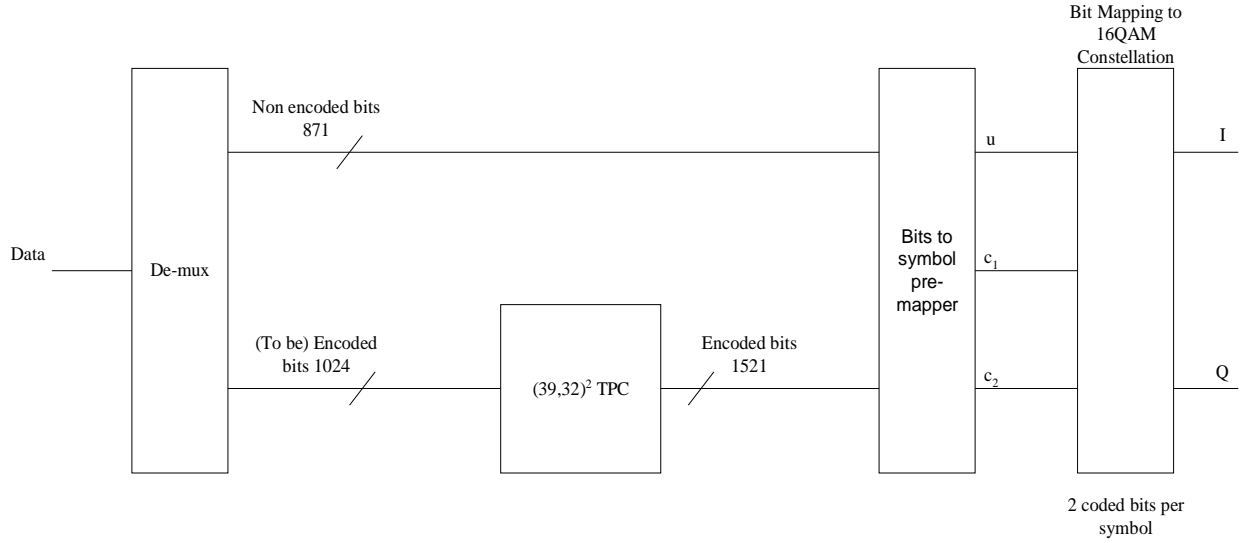


Figure 40—(39,32)2 TPC TCM Encoder

Looking at the throughput of this system we have $1024+871=1895$ bits entering the system and $(1521+871)/\log_2 16=598$ symbols emanating from the modulator. Thus the channel efficiency of this system will be $1895/598=3.17$ bits/symb/Hz (similar to the channel efficiency of the coding scheme with larger block length), while both the encoder and decoder latency remains as for shorter (39,32)2 codes. It is apparent that this scheme is applicable to all TPC codes described in the Section and the variation of number of uncoded bits will allow additional flexibility in system development and deployments.

8.3.5.5.3 Symbol Mapping

The mapping of bits into I and Q axes will be Gray-coded and for Reed-Solomon codes is pragmatic that are described in Figure 12 for all constellations.

8.3.5.5.4 Baseband Pulse Shaping

Prior to modulation, I and Q signals shall be filtered by square-root raised cosine. The roll-off factor α shall be either 0.15 or 0.25. The ideal square-root cosine is defined by the following transfer function $H(f)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
 H(f) &= 1 & \text{for } |f| < f_N(1-\alpha) \\
 H(f) &= \left\{ \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \sin \frac{\pi}{2f_N} \left[\frac{f_N - |f|}{\alpha} \right] \right\}^{1/2} & \text{for } f_N(1-\alpha) \leq |f| \leq f_N(1+\alpha) \\
 H(f) &= 0 & \text{for } |f| \geq f_N(1+\alpha)
 \end{aligned}$$

Where:

$$f_N = \frac{1}{2T_s} = \frac{R_s}{2}$$

f_N is the Nyquist frequency, and T_s is modulation symbol duration.

8.3.5.6 UL Channel

8.3.5.6.1 UL Multiple Access

The uplink multiple access method shall be TDMA.

The uplink channel bandwidth for MMDS channel allocation would be 6 MHz. In TDD mode this 6 MHz bandwidth can be dynamically allocated. This TDD flexibility permits efficient allocation of the available bandwidth and hence is capable of efficiently allocating the available traffic transport capacity for applications whose uplink to downlink traffic transport demand ratio can vary with time.

FDD can be used by applications that require fixed asymmetric allocation between their uplink and downlink traffic transport demand. In FDD mode uplink traffic would typically be allocated 3MHz. This is half of the 6MHz bandwidth assuming symmetrical traffic requirements.

8.3.5.6.2 UL Modulation Format

The uplink modulation types can be the same as those available for downlink transmission; e.g., QPSK, 16QAM, or 64QAM. Optional modulations are BPSK and 256 QAM. Modulation type, error correction, interleaving, etc, can be assigned to the uplink traffic for a particular Subscriber Station (SS) such that these parameters can be the same as in the downlink burst received by the SS. The SS accesses the 'quality' of the received signal from the downlink header, and the SS MAC decides on the best modulation and error correction to use for the channel conditions. This information is passed back up to the Access Point (AP) in the corresponding uplink burst, and the AP MAC uses this information to assign the modulation type and error correction to the next burst of data to be transmitted.

8.3.5.7 UL: Randomization, FEC, Interleaving, Symbol Mapping Baseband Shaping

The uplink channel has processing units similar to those described for the downlink. However, greater flexibility in packet transmission is allowed. The subscriber stations are transmitting only after receiving some configuration information from the base station through MAC messages. Several different configurations can be adjusted on the uplink channel on a burst-to-burst basis. The uplink payload is segmented into blocks of data designed to fit into the proper codeword size (including Transmission Convergence sublayer, TC, header). Note that payload length may vary from burst to burst.

8.3.5.7.1 Randomization for Spectrum Shaping

The uplink modulator uses a randomizer using LFSR with connection polynomial

$X^{15} + X^{14} + 1$, with a 15-bits programmable seed. At the beginning of each burst, the register is cleared and the seed value is loaded. The seed value is used to calculate the scrambler output bit, obtained as the XOR of the seed with first bit of DATA of each burst (which is the MSB of the first symbol following the last symbol of the preamble).

8.3.5.7.2 FEC schemes for the uplink channel

Forward error correction coding schemes which support both Concatenated Reed-Solomon+Convolutional and Turbo Product Codes (optional) coding will be employed. In addition, the provision of suppressing all FEC and operating using the ARQ mechanism in the 802.16 MAC for error control will be included.

Except for the fact that no interleaving is used in the uplink, the FEC is the same as the downlink FEC described in 8.3.5.5.2.

8.3.5.7.3 Interleaving for the uplink channel

Interleaving is applied for the uplink channel only with TPC FEC scheme.

8.3.5.7.4 Baseband Pulse Shaping

Prior to modulation, the I and Q signals shall be filtered by square-root raised cosine. The roll-off factor α shall be either 0.15 or 0.25. The ideal square-root cosine is defined by the following transfer function $H(f)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
 H(f) &= 1 && \text{for } |f| < f_N(1-\alpha) \\
 H(f) &= \left\{ \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \sin \frac{\pi}{2f_N} \left[\frac{f_N - |f|}{\alpha} \right] \right\}^{1/2} && \text{for } f_N(1-\alpha) \leq |f| \leq f_N(1+\alpha) \\
 H(f) &= 0 && \text{for } |f| \geq f_N(1+\alpha)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$f_N = \frac{1}{2T_s} = \frac{R_s}{2}$$

f_N is the Nyquist frequency, and T_s is modulation symbol duration.

8.3.5.8 Multiple Access Formats and Framing

In this Section, we describe multiple access formats and the PHY framing structures necessary to accommodate both Sc-FDE and OFDM systems.

8.3.5.9 Overview of Frame Formats and Their Application

Starting with a simple fundamental frame component and two formats, we construct PHY structures that may be applied to several multiple access techniques. Two fundamental PHY block format options are available: one used for continuous transmissions, and another used for burst transmissions.

As we shall eventually demonstrate, the continuous transmission format might be used on the downlink of one type of a FDD system.

The burst format might be seen on

- the uplink of a FDD system; or
- the uplink and downlink of a TDD system; or
- the downlink of a burst-FDD system.

The burst format may be further categorized into two subformats:

- TDMA burst, and
- TDM burst.

A TDMA burst contains information intended for one audience. This audience could be a single user, or a group of users receiving a broadcast message. In contrast a TDM burst generally contains multiplexed, concatenated information addressed to multiple audiences. A TDMA burst may, in fact, be interpreted as a type of TDM burst; however, because of differences related to usage of adaptive modulation, MAC messaging and multiple access, we shall in some clauses choose to discuss these two burst types separately.

8.3.5.10 Continuous Transmission Format

As its name suggests, the continuous transmission format is utilized for a continuous channel, which may be monitored, for example, by all of the Subscriber Stations (SSs) within a Base Station (BS) cell sector. In particular, one might see this format applied in the operation of a (continuous) FDD downlink channel.

8.3.5.10.1 Unique Word: Interval Requirements and Usage

One characteristic of the continuous transmission format is illustrated in Figure 41: the continuous format has a fundamental pattern that repeats. This pattern consists of N-symbol payloads separated by U-symbol 'Unique Words'.

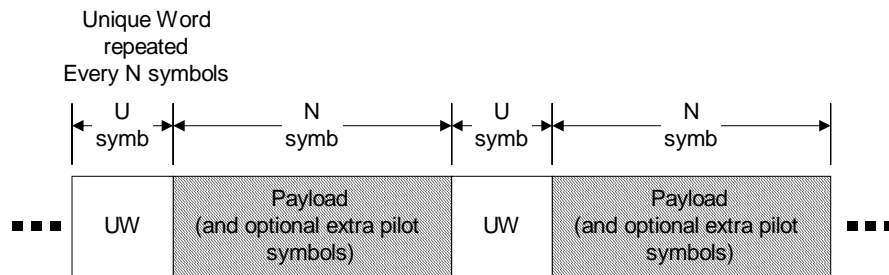


Figure 41—Unique Word Intervals for Continuous Format

8.3.5.10.1.1 Unique Word Interval Requirements

A Unique Word is a contiguous, length-U sequence of known symbols, which are not FEC-encoded. A Unique Word is repeated at a regular interval, N. The interval between the Unique Words is typically chosen to accommodate receivers using frequency domain equalization, with $F = N + U$ symbols equaling the block length over which an FFT would be computed by a frequency domain equalizer. However, this is not a necessary requirements if an overlap save algorithm is used for equalization.

To reduce computational requirements of FFTs, the length $F = N + U$ can preferably be 2 raised to an integer power. Additional details on the composition of the symbols within Unique Words, and their preferred lengths, U. Also, since the FFT processing via the overlap save method is possible, F may be infinite. Additional details on accepted lengths for F may be found in Chapter 8.3.5.12.2.

Once the parameters for U and N (via F) are set, they should not be changed for a continuous downstream. In the event that these parameters must be changed, receiver resynchronization may be necessary.

8.3.5.10.1.2 Unique Word Usage

The Unique Word may be used as a cyclic prefix by a frequency domain equalizer, and/or as pilot symbols. When used as a cyclic prefix, a Unique Words should be at least be as long as the maximum delay spread of a channel. As pilot symbols, the Unique Words may assist in the estimation of demodulation parameters-such as estimating equalizer channel coefficients, carrier phase and frequency offsets, symbol timing, and optimal FFT window timing (in a frequency domain equalizer). The Unique Words may also assist in the acquisition of a channel.

8.3.5.10.2 Frame Header Indication Sequence: Requirements and Usage

In addition to Unique Word intervals, continuous format data is further framed into MAC-based frames, and these MAC frame boundaries are delineated by a Frame Header Indication Sequence.

8.3.5.10.2.1 Frame Header Indication Sequence Requirements

As illustrated in Figure 42: Frame Header Indication Sequences of length H are periodically repeated, with repetition interval I . The repetition interval, I , for a Frame Header Indication Sequence must be an integer number of $F = N + U$ Unique Word intervals. Furthermore, as Figure 43 illustrates, a Frame Header Indication Sequence must directly follow a Unique Word sequence.

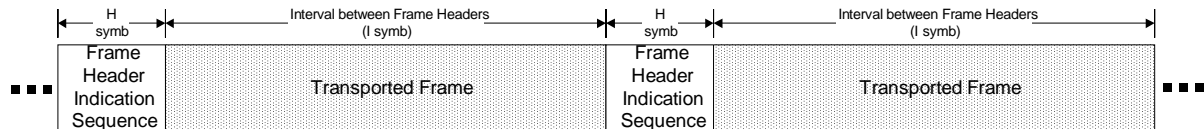


Figure 42—Frame Header Intervals for Continuous Format

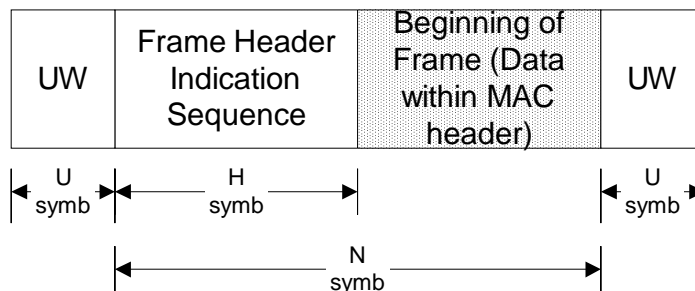
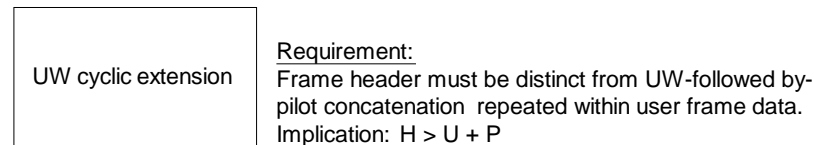


Figure 43—Frame Header Indication Sequence Position within a Unique Word Interval

The Frame Header Indication Sequence is a contiguous sequence of known symbols, which are not FEC-encoded. As Figure 43 further indicates, the Frame Header Indication Sequence is a cyclic extension of the Unique Word—which implies that it is either a repetition of the Unique Word, or a partial replication of the first H symbols of the Unique Word, or a combination of a repetition and partial replication of the Unique Word. Moreover, the Frame Header Indication Sequence must be longer than a sequence of additional pilot symbols which may be contiguous to ensuing Unique Words within the data payload (see Figure 45 for details on the addition of extra pilot symbols).

Once the parameters for H and I are set, they should not be changed. In the event that these parameters are changed, receiver resynchronization may be necessary.

8.3.5.10.2.2 Frame Header Indication Sequence Usage

As indicated 8.3.5.10.2, MAC frame boundaries are delineated by the Frame Header Indication Sequence. Identification of the location of the MAC header is important during acquisition, because the MAC header contains much of the system and frame control information, including MAPs of user data, their lengths, modulation formats, and the FEC used to encode them. Therefore, once the MAC header is located and decoded, all ensuing user data that has the

CINR to be decodable can be decoded. This begs that the Frame Header Indication Sequence be distinct, so that the location of the frame header may be easily identified, and distinguished from pilot symbols.

What's more, the Frame Header Indication Sequence has a role following initial acquisition. The structure (usage of Unique Word elements) and placement of the Frame Header Indication Sequence also enables re-acquisition and channel estimation before the outset of a subsequent MAC frame. This is important when per-user adaptive modulation is used, because, as indicated in 8.3.5.10.3.3, user data is sequenced in terms of modulation robustness. Therefore, receivers experiencing low CINRs may not be able to track completely through a MAC frame. The Frame Header Acquisition Sequence aids such a receiver in reacquiring, or getting a better, more solid channel estimate, before the appearance of data that it has the CINR to successfully decode.

8.3.5.10.3 Adaptive Modulation

8.3.5.10.3.1 Concept of Adaptive Modulation

Many SSs are intended to receive the continuous downlink channel. Due to differing conditions at the various SS sites (e.g., variable distances from the BS, presence of obstructions, local interference), SS receivers may observe significantly different CINRs. For this reason, some SSs may be capable of reliably detecting (non-pilot) payload data only when it is derived from certain lower-order modulation alphabets, such as QPSK. Similarly, CINR-disadvantaged SSs may require more powerful and redundant FEC schemes. On the other hand, CINR-advantaged stations may be capable of receiving very high order modulations (e.g., 64-QAM), with high code rates. Obviously, to maximize the overall capacity of the system, the modulation and coding format should be adapted to each class of SS, based on what the SS can receive reliably. Define the adaptation of modulation type and FEC to a particular SS (or group of SSs) as 'adaptive modulation', and the choice of a particular modulation and FEC as an 'adaptive modulation type.' The continuous transmission mode (as does the burst transmission mode) supports adaptive modulation and the use of adaptive modulation types.

8.3.5.10.3.2 Frame Control Header Information and Adaptive Modulation

As Figure 45 illustrates, Frame Control MAC messages are periodically transmitted over the continuous channel, using the most robust adaptive modulation type supported. Among other information, these Frame headers provide adaptive modulation type formatting instructions.

As 8.3.5.10.2 describes, in order that Frame headers may be easily recognized during initial channel acquisition or re-acquisition, the transmitter PHY inserts an uncoded Frame Header Indication Sequence immediately before the Frame header, and immediately after a Unique Word. Figure 45 illustrates this point, as well.

8.3.5.10.3.3 Adaptive Modulation Sequencing

Within the MAC Frame header, a PHY control map (DL_MAP) is used to indicate the beginning location of each of adaptive modulation type payload that follows. However, the DL_MAP does not describe the beginning locations of the payload groups that immediately follow; it describes the payload distributions at some MAC-prescribed time in the future. This delay is necessary so that FEC decoding of MAC information (which could be iterative, in the case of turbo codes) may be completed, the adaptive data interpreted, and the demodulator scheduling set up for the proper sequencing.

As Figure 44 illustrates, following the MAC Frame header, payload groups are sequenced in increasing order of robustness (e.g., first QPSK, then 16-QAM, then 64-QAM). This robustness sequencing improves receiver performance, because it enables receivers experiencing lower CINRs to track only through the modulation types that they can reliably receive. This sequencing also facilitates changes of modulation type at locations that are not contiguous to Unique Word boundaries.

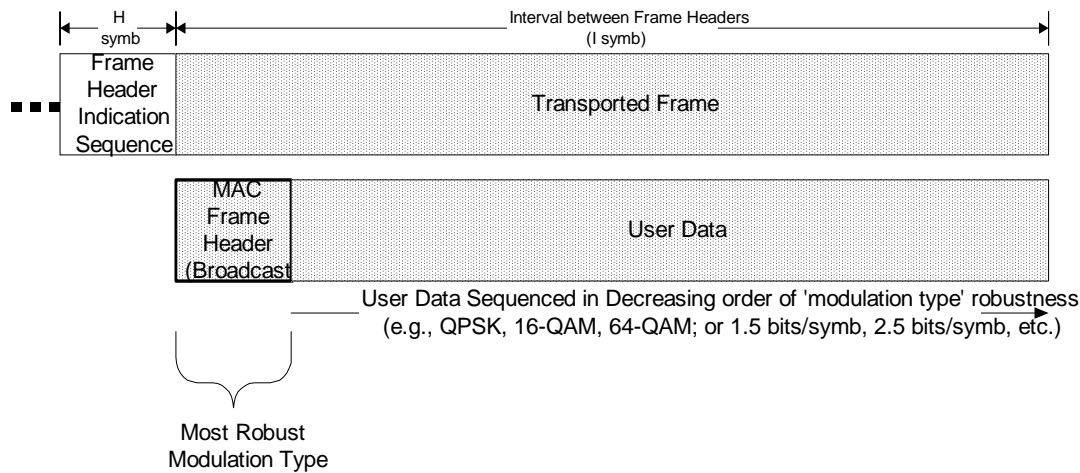


Figure 44—Adaptive Modulation Sequencing within a Continuous Mode Frame

8.3.5.10.3.4 UW Boundary-free Transitions Between Modulation Types

Note also that adaptive modulation type-to-other-modulation type changes are not restricted to occur only at Unique Word boundaries. They may change anywhere that the DL_MAP message indicates that they should change.

8.3.5.10.3.5 Per-Adaptive-Modulation-Type FEC Encapsulation

So that disadvantaged-SNR SSs are not adversely affected by transmissions intended for other advantaged-CINR users, FEC blocks end when a particular adaptive modulation type ends. Among other things, this implies that the FEC interleaver depth and code blocks are adapted to accommodate the span of a particular adaptive modulation type. Note, however, that data from several users could be concatenated by the MAC (and interleaved together by the PHY) within the span of a given adaptive modulation type.

8.3.5.10.3.6 MAC Header FEC Encapsulation

So that the MAC header data may be decoded by a receiver that has just acquired (and does not yet know the modulation lengths and distributions of user data), the MAC header data should be a fixed, a priori-known block size and separately FEC-encoded (and interleaved) from all other user-specifically-addressed data.

8.3.5.10.4 Empty payloads

When data is not available for transmission, part of a payload may be stuffed with dummy data, or left empty, at the system operator's discretion. However, the transmitter cannot shut completely down. The unique words are always transmitted, so that all listening SSs may track the channel, and maintain synchronization.

8.3.5.10.5 Additional Pilot Symbols

When multipath delay spread spans almost the entire Unique Word interval, very little data remains that is not uncorrupted by delay spread from the arbitrary, a priori unknown payload symbols. In such an environment, non-decision aided channel (delay profile) estimation could become exceedingly difficult. One recourse is the increased utilization of decision-aided channel estimation.

To add an extra measure of robustness, many system operators may prefer, instead, to opt for the addition of P additional pilot symbols. For this reason, the addition of an extra P pilot symbols per Unique Word interval is an option,

as contiguous cyclic extensions of the Unique Word. A contiguous cyclic extension of P symbols implies that the pilots are either a repetition of the Unique Word, or a partial replication of the first P symbols of the Unique Word, or a combination of a repetition and partial replication of the Unique Word.

Figure 45 illustrates three cases where pilot symbols have been added: one for a case when only a few symbols have been added, another where the number of added pilot symbols and Unique Word symbols are the same (i.e., the Unique Word has been replicated), and one for a case where the number of pilot symbols is much greater than the number of Unique Word symbols (i.e., where the UW is replicated at least once, then cyclically extended.) Note that it is also possible to add zero extra pilot symbols. The range of limits for P are $0 \leq P \leq N$.

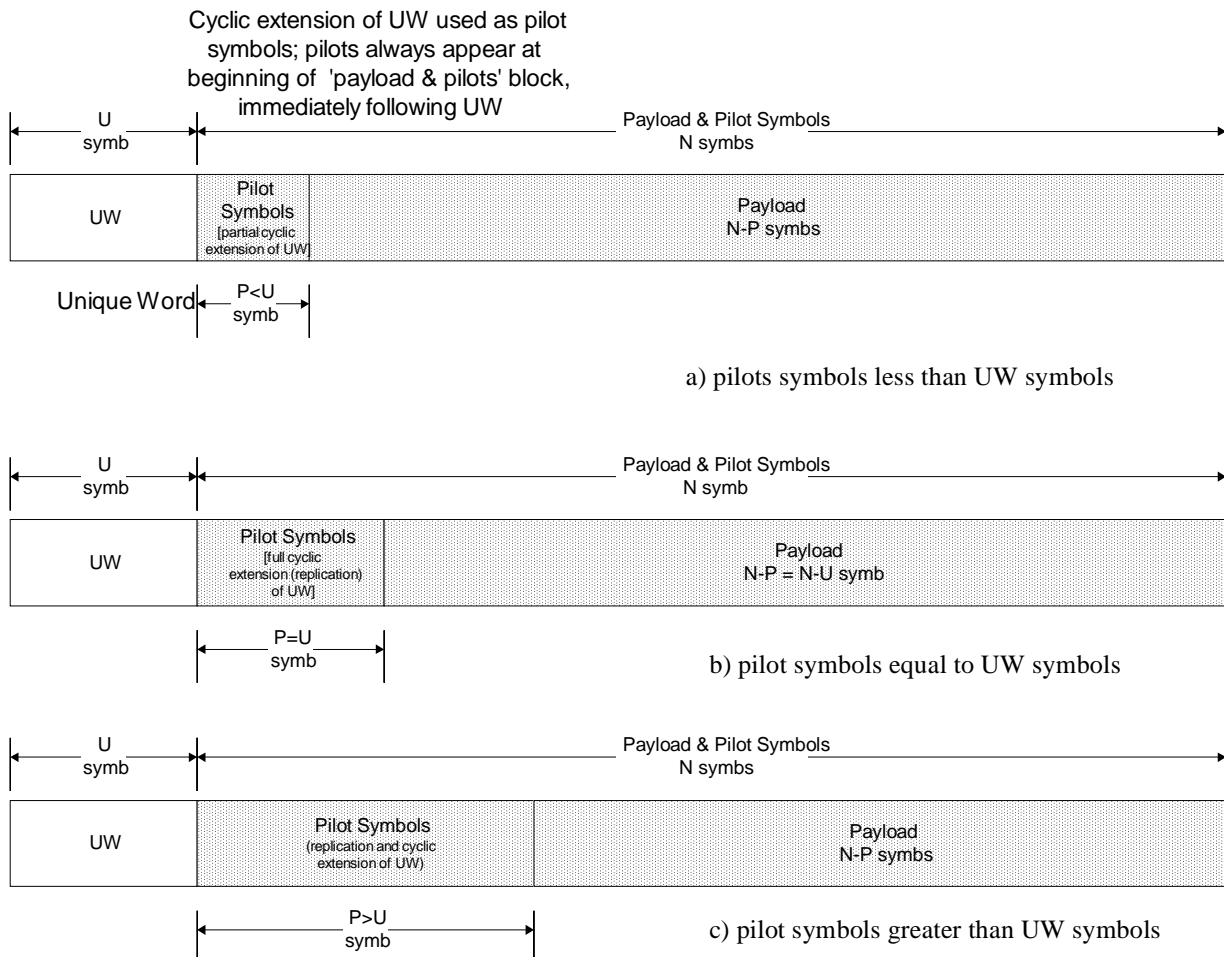


Figure 45—Extra pilot symbols addition examples, using Unique Word cyclic extension

Note that the number of additional pilot symbols, P, used per N-symbol interval (in the continuous mode) may not change. In the event that these parameters must be changed, receiver resynchronization may be necessary.

Additional details on the composition of the symbols within Unique Words, and their accepted lengths, U, may be found in 8.3.5.12.2. Additional details related to accepted lengths for $F = N + U$ (where N is the interval between Unique Word repetitions) may be found in Section ??????.

8.3.5.11 Burst Transmission Format

In addition to the continuous transmission format, a second transmission format exists: the burst transmission format. As its name implies, the burst transmission format is utilized for burst transmissions, all of which may or may not be monitored by all SSs within a BS cell sector. In the broadband wireless application, one might see bursts on the (multiple-access) uplink, a TDD uplink and downlink, or a burst-FDD downlink. As described in the MAC/PHY Interface Layer Description in Section 3.2.2???, half duplex burst FDD operation is also possible using this format.

Both TDMA and TDM burst options are supported. As Figure 46 demonstrates, a TDMA burst contains information intended for one audience. This audience could be a single user, or a group of users receiving a broadcast message. In contrast, as Figure 53 also demonstrates, a TDM burst generally contains multiplexed, concatenated information that is generally addressed to multiple audiences. A TDMA burst may, in fact, be interpreted as a type of TDM burst; however, due to their differences in areas such as adaptive modulation, multiple access, and MAC messaging, we shall treat these two burst types separately.

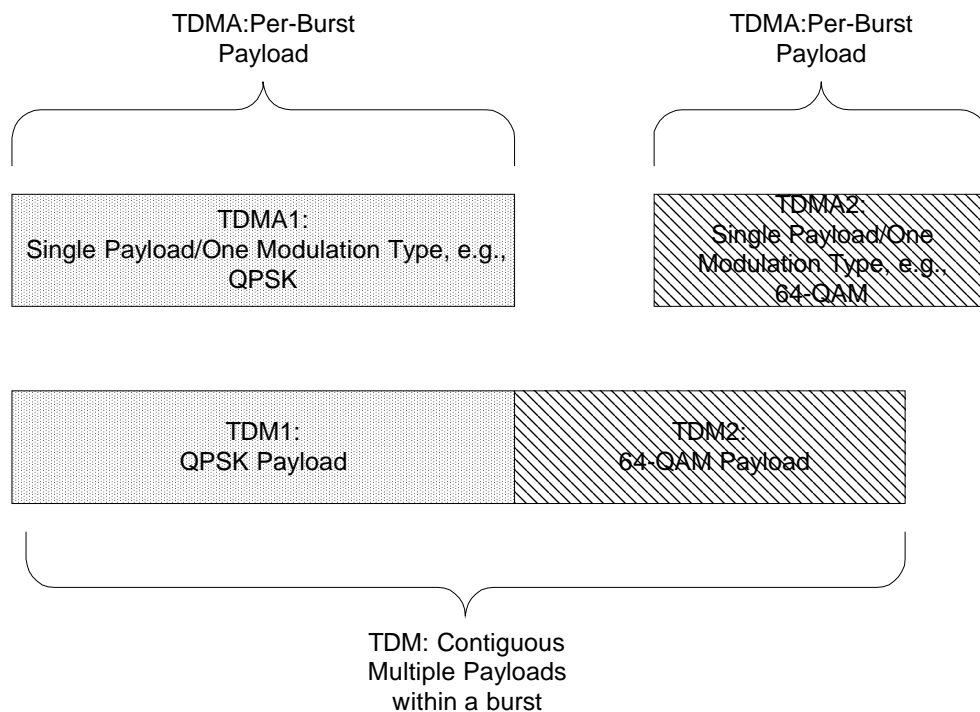


Figure 46—Example Comparison of TDMA and TDM bursts

8.3.5.11.1 Burst Ramping: Ramp-Up and Ramp-Down

Bursts begin with a ramp-up sequence, and end with a ramp-down sequence, each of length R symbols. The selection for R is left to the system operator. The selection for R may be based on several factors, such as regulatory requirements related to adjacent channel energy spillage, power amplifier considerations, antenna diversity sensing and switching delays, and the length of the startup transient of the transmit filter.

In creating the ramp-up sequence, the transmit filter is initially filled with zero-valued (null) symbols, and then desired transmit data symbols are pushed into the system to naturally ramp the system power up to its full value. If a ramp-up sequence length shorter than one-half the length of the impulse response of the transmit filter is desired, the

transmit filter output samples related to first few symbols may be suppressed and a ramped power buildup achieved by windowing the ramp-up sequence, using a raised-cosine window of the desired length R , for example.

In creating the ramp-down sequence, zero-valued (null) symbols are pushed into the transmit filter data path following the last desired transmit symbol. If a ramp-down sequence length shorter than one-half the length of the impulse response of the transmit filter is desired, the transmit filter output samples in the ramp-down region may be windowed, using a raised-cosine window of the desired length R , for example.

8.3.5.11.2 Unique Word: Description and Usage within a burst

A Unique Word is a contiguous, length- U sequence of known symbols, which is not FEC-encoded, and has good autocorrelation properties which can be used to accurately estimate a channel delay spread response---in either the time or frequency domain. Typically, the length of this Unique Word should be at least the maximum delay spread of the channel.

Unique words are not required to be transmitted within the confines of a burst---other than as a component in the acquisition preamble of a burst, which assists in channel estimation. If they are transmitted within the middle of a burst, they may be used as a mechanism to progressively update channel estimates.

In the 'middle portions of a burst', a Unique Word may be repeated at a regular interval, N . The interval between the Unique Words can be chosen to accommodate receivers using frequency domain equalization, with $F = N + U$ symbols equaling the block length over which an FFT would be computed by a frequency domain equalizer. However, the FFT size used by such an equalizer need not be the same as the interval between such Unique Words, since overlap save methods for frequency equalization also may be utilized.

8.3.5.11.2.1 Unique Word: Interval Requirements

Like the continuous transmission format illustrated in Figure 44, the middle portions of a burst may or may not contain a fundamental pattern consisting of N -symbol 'Payloads' separated by U -symbol 'Unique Words'. In the case of a short burst, such a fundamental pattern may be no more than a single Unique Word-Payload combination. For longer bursts, this may be a Unique Word-Payload-Unique Word-Payload ... (Unique Word-Payload) ... Unique Word-Payload combination. Note that the patterned 'middle portion' of the block must always commence and conclude with a Unique Word. Or, for the longer burst, it may be just a Unique Word, followed by a long payload, that is spanned by several FFTs, and is processed by an equalizer using overlap save method. Note that the end of a block patterned is not required to conclude with a Unique Word, but must have a blanking interval, where nothing is transmitted, to allow the channel delay spread to clear the receiver.

All payload blocks within a burst except, potentially, the last payload block, must be of the same length, N . To reduce computational requirements of FFTs for frequency domain equalizers, when regular unique word intervals are chosen, the interval between them, $F = N + U$ should preferably be chosen as 2 raised to an integer power.

Unlike the continuous transmission format, however, the final payload block need not be the same length as the other payload blocks. It may be shortened to a length N_{end} . This accommodates finer overall block length granularities. More details on shortening may be found in clause ???? and its subclauses.

Unlike the continuous format, the parameters in use for U , F , and F_{end} used by the burst format can potentially be modified on a burst-by-burst basis---if the MAC messaging MAPs for burst profiles so allow.

Additional details on the composition of the symbols within Unique Words, and their accepted lengths, U , may be found in 8.3.5.12.2. Note that 0 is also an acceptable value for the length U . Additional details on accepted lengths for F and may be found in Section?????.

8.3.5.11.2.1.1 Variable Burst Sizes

A characteristic of the burst format is that, for efficient operation, it may be necessary to accommodate many different burst sizes. These burst sizes could be different from some integer multiple of the nominal FFT size, $F = N + U$, of a frequency domain equalizer.

8.3.5.11.2.1.2 Variable Burst Sizes and Frequency Domain Equalizers

Even for implementations using a frequency domain equalizer, the single carrier burst PHY using frequency domain has some flexibility in this regard. For messages intended for a receiver with a frequency domain equalizer, the final payload block can be shortened any length N_{end} , if the receiver has the feature that allows it to 'back up' and process part of the last block of a frame, using the overlap save method for FFTs. If the receiver does not have this option, the final block size (not including a blanking interval at the end to accommodate delay spread), is $2^n - U + 1$. $N_{\text{end}} + U = 2^n$.

8.3.5.11.2.1.3 Variable Burst Sizes and Time Domain Equalizers

For receivers using time domain equalizers (such as decision feedback equalizers), the shortened length of the last block, N_{end} , can be completely arbitrary, and is only limited by MAC packet length granularity restrictions.

8.3.5.11.2.1.4 Variable Length Negotiation

Exchange of information regarding receiver capabilities during initial registration is one method to ensure that message granularities always conform to a burst receiver's capabilities to process them.

8.3.5.11.2.1.5 Broadcast/Multicast Messages

Broadcast or multicast messages would always be sent assuming a frequency domain equalizer's granularity limitations, since those limitations are more restrictive.

8.3.5.11.2.2 Unique Word Usage

The Unique Word may be used as a cyclic prefix by a frequency domain equalizer, and/or as pilot symbols. When used as a cyclic prefix, a Unique Words should be at least be as long as the maximum delay spread of a channel. As pilot symbols, the Unique Words may assist in the estimation of demodulation parameters-such as estimating equalizer channel coefficients, carrier phase and frequency offsets, symbol timing, and optimal FFT window timing (in a frequency domain equalizer).

8.3.5.11.3 Additional Pilot Symbols

When multipath delay spread spans almost the entire Unique Word interval, very little data remains that is not uncorrupted by delay spread from the arbitrary, a priori unknown payload symbols. In such an environment, non-decision aided channel (delay profile) estimation could become exceedingly difficult. One recourse is the increased utilization of decision-aided channel estimation.

To add an extra measure of robustness, many system operators may prefer, instead, to opt for the addition of P additional pilot symbols. For this reason, the addition of an extra P pilot symbols per Unique Word interval is an option, as contiguous cyclic extensions of the Unique Word. A contiguous cyclic extension of P symbols implies that the pilots are either a repetition of the Unique Word, or a partial replication of the first P symbols of the Unique Word, or a combination of a repetition and partial replication of the Unique Word.

Figure 48 illustrates three cases where pilot symbols have been added: one for a case when only a few symbols have been added, another where the number of added pilot symbols and Unique Word symbols are the same (i.e., the Unique Word has been replicated), and one for a case where the number of pilot symbols is much greater than the

number of Unique Word symbols (i.e., where the UW is replicated at least once, then cyclically extended.) Note that it is also possible to add zero extra pilot symbols. The range for the addition of pilot symbols, P , is $0 \leq P \leq N$.

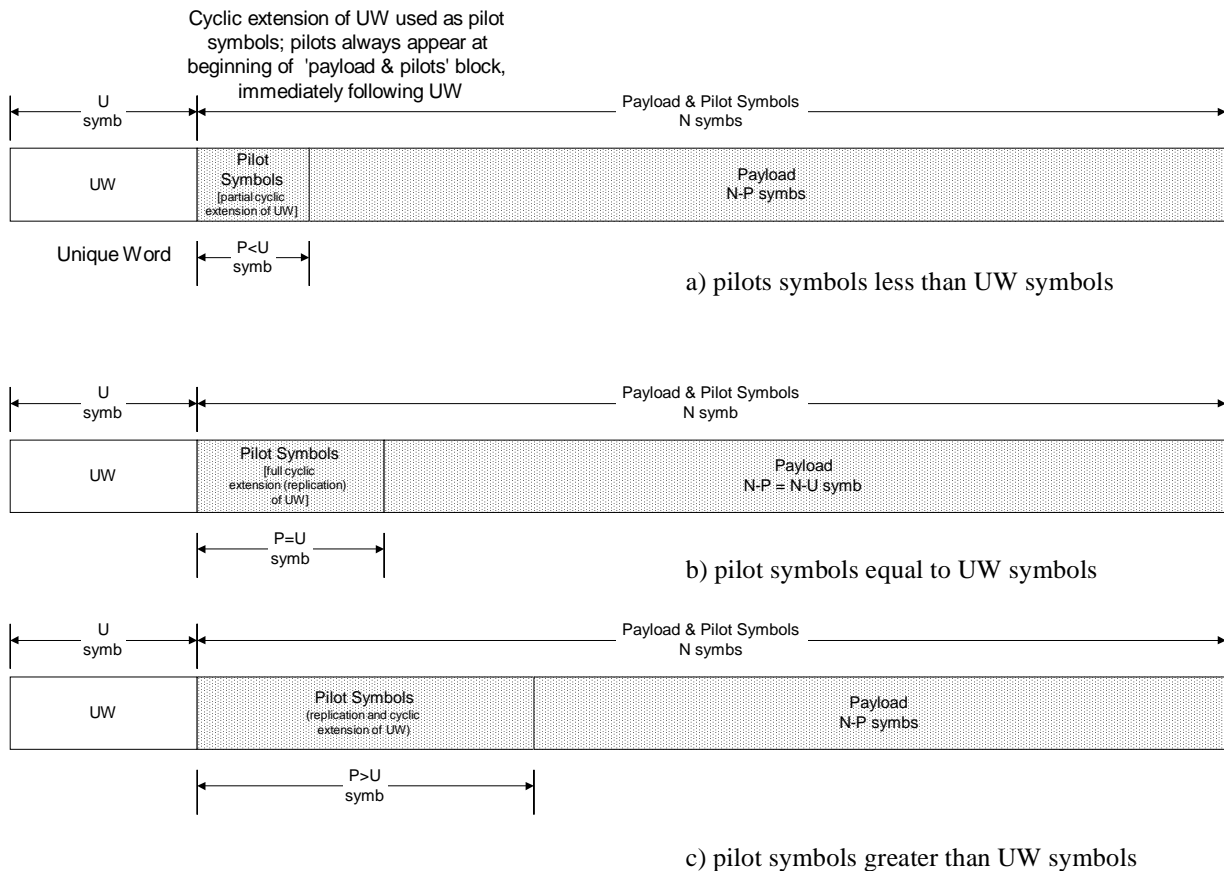


Figure 47—Extra pilot symbol addition examples using Unique Word cyclic extension

The number of additional pilot symbols, P , per N -symbol interval within a particular burst, shall be fixed for that burst. Moreover, many operators may fix P to be the same for all bursts. However, this does not have to be the case. P may change from burst to burst, at the discretion of, and by direction from, the MAC. This information would be contained in the MAC's MAP information, in the field that provides burst profiles.

Additional details on the composition of the symbols within Unique Words, and their accepted lengths, U , may be found in 8.3.5.11.2. Additional details related to accepted lengths for $F = N + U$ (where N is the interval between Unique Word repetitions) may be found in 3.2.1.5???

8.3.5.11.4 Burst Element Details Including the Acquisition Preamble

A burst conforming to the TDM or TDMA burst format is illustrated in Figure 46. Note that the burst may be long or short, and is not required to contain Unique Words---except in the Acquisition preamble. In other words, it may consist of multiple Unique Word Intervals of length $F = N + U$ (i.e., multiple FFTs for a frequency domain equalizer) plus one extra prefixing Unique Word, or a single Unique Word Interval of length $F = N + U$ (single FFT for a frequency domain equalizer). It may be of arbitrary length, and not contain Unique Words at all. The final payload section may also be shortened. Additional details on the use and intervals of Unique Words within burst formats may be found in 8.3.5.11.2.

As Figure 46 illustrates may possess an optional acquisition preamble, of length A symbols. This optional preamble must be composed of Unique Word symbols that are a contiguous cyclic extension of the Unique Word which follows the preamble. In other words, this contiguous cyclic extension of A symbols implies that if $A = U$, then the preamble is a repetition of the Unique Word; if $A < U$, then the preamble is a partial replication of the last A symbols of the Unique Word; otherwise, the preamble is a combination of a repetition and partial replication of the last symbols in the Unique Word.

Note that the ramp-up sequence as described in 8.3.5.11.1 may be derived in part from this acquisition preamble, if all zero symbol (null) inputs are suppressed from by the ramp-up windowing sequence.

Burst profile parameters delivered by the MAC dictate the length of the acquisition preamble. The nominal length of A , used in broadcast system messages containing MAC MAP information, is TBD.

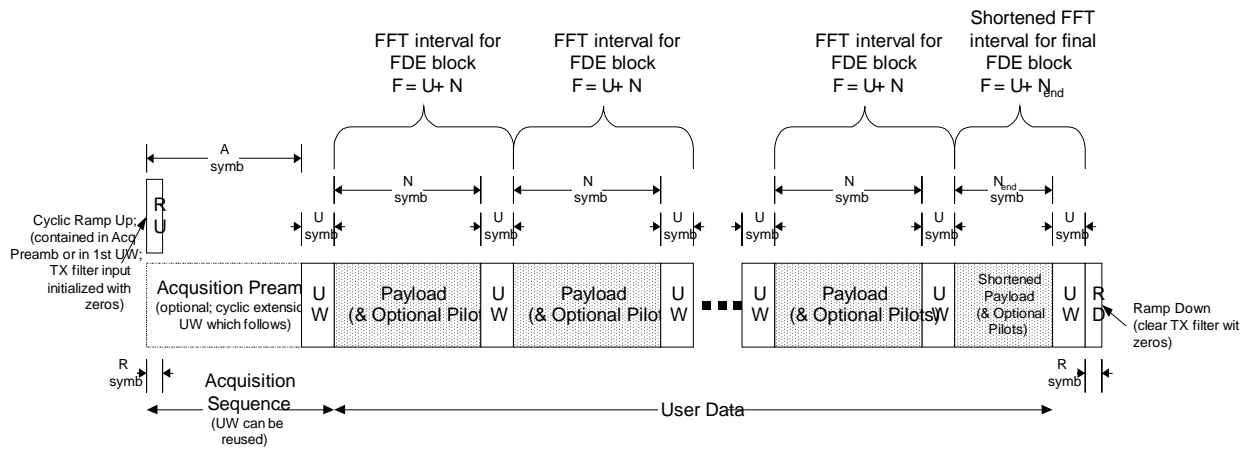


Figure 48—TDM/TDMA burst format: element locations and details

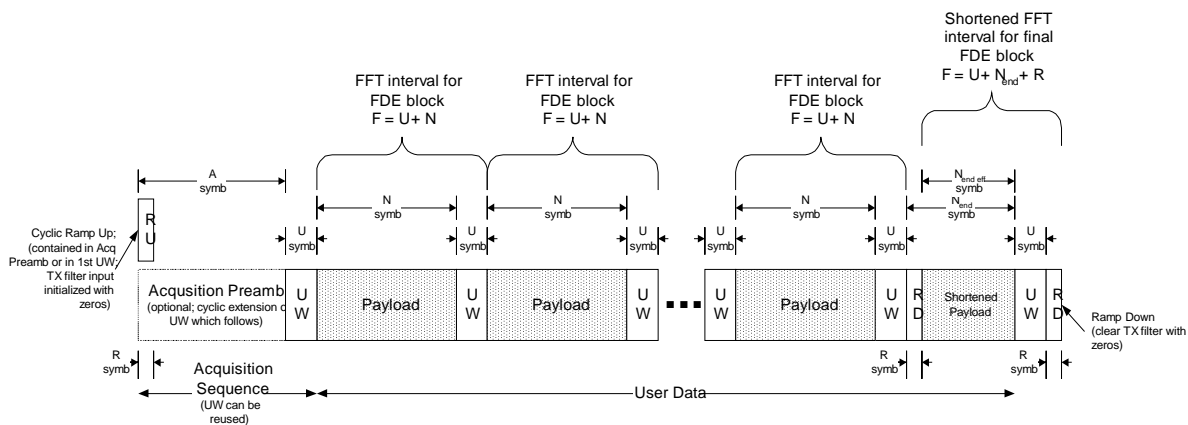


Figure 49—Example of optional TDM/TDMA burst format

8.3.5.11.5 Details Pertinent to TDMA Bursts

A TDMA burst will support only a single modulation type in its data payload, since all bursts are addressed to a single audience. However, subsequent bursts may be transmitted using a different modulation type. What's more, the

number of symbols in the acquisition preamble, if any, may be dependent on the burst profile assigned for either that modulation type, or the burst profile for the particular user being addressed by the TDMA burst. Such user profile data would be sent in control bursts, addressed either to a particular user, or to all users in the system, as a whole.

8.3.5.11.6 Details Pertinent to TDM Bursts

Some details, such as adaptive modulation, are only pertinent to the TDM burst format---since the TDMA format only supports a broadcast to one audience.

8.3.5.11.6.1 Adaptive Modulation Sequencing for TDM bursts

Within the MAC Frame header, a PHY control map (MAP) is used to indicate the beginning location of each of adaptive modulation type payload that follows. However, the MAP does not describe the beginning locations of the payload groups that immediately follow; it describes the payload distributions at some MAC-prescribed time in the future. This delay is necessary so that FEC decoding of MAC information (which could be iterative, in the case of turbo codes) may be completed, the adaptive data interpreted, and the demodulator scheduling set up for the proper sequencing. Note that this information containing the distribution of data within a particular burst may be contained in another burst.

Within a burst, payload groups are sequenced in increasing order of robustness (e.g., first QPSK, then 16-QAM, then 64-QAM). This robustness sequencing improves receiver performance, because it enables receivers experiencing lower CINRs to track only through the modulation types that they can reliably receive. This sequencing also facilitates changes of modulation type at locations that are not contiguous to Unique Word boundaries.

8.3.5.11.6.2 UW Boundary-free Transitions Between Modulation Types (TDM)

Note also that adaptive modulation type-to-other-modulation type changes are not restricted to occur only at Unique Word boundaries. They may change anywhere that a MAC MAP message indicates that they should change.

8.3.5.11.6.3 Per-Adaptive-Modulation-Type FEC Encapsulation (TDM)

So that disadvantaged-SNR SSs are not adversely affected by transmissions intended for other advantaged-CINR users, FEC blocks end when a particular adaptive modulation type ends. Among other things, this implies that the FEC interleaver depth and code blocks are adapted to accommodate the span of a particular adaptive modulation type. Note, however, that data from several users could be concatenated by the MAC (and interleaved together by the PHY) within the span of a given adaptive modulation type.

8.3.5.11.6.4 MAC Header FEC Encapsulation (TDM)

So that the MAC header data may be decoded by a receiver that has just acquired (and does not yet know the modulation lengths and distributions of user data), the MAC header data should be a fixed, a priori-known block size and separately FEC-encoded (and interleaved) from all other user-specifically-addressed data.

8.3.5.12 Unique Word Details

8.3.5.12.1 Unique Word Sequence Design Criteria

The choice of Unique Word is critical, because it is used as both a Cyclic prefix for frequency domain equalizers, and also for channel estimation. Its cyclic prefix role imposes one constraint: the Unique Word must be at least as long as the maximum delay spread to be experienced by an intended receiver. Its channel estimation role imposes another constraint: the Unique Word should have good correlation properties, and a broadband, un-notched frequency response. And lastly, since the Unique Word introduces overhead, it should be no longer than it need be; sectors/installations that experience less delay spread should not be burdened with the overhead of excessively long Unique Words. This implies that some flexibility in the choice (or construction) of Unique Words is required.

8.3.5.12.2 Unique Word Sequence Specification

One sequence class that seems to possess all of the desired properties is the 'modified PN' sequence, as described by Milewski in [9]. As its title suggests, this sequence class has 'optimal properties for channel estimation and fast start-up equalization.' What's more, constructions for various sequence lengths are simple, due to their derivation from PN sequences.

The 'modified PN sequence' is a complex-valued ($I + jQ$) sequence that might be described as 'quasi-BPSK.' It possesses the following structure:

- The 'I' channel component is derived from a PN-generator (linear feedback shift register), initialized with all registers equal 1, of period $U=2^n-1$ (where n is an integer), and
- The 'Q' channel component is a small, but non-zero constant sequence, with value $1/(\sqrt{2^n}-1)$.

In order to reference the constellation to the unit circle, the I and Q components described above each should be scaled by $\sqrt{(1-2^{-n})}$.

Table 13 lists the generator polynomials that must be used in generating the 'I' component of the Unique Word, over a useful and practical range of sequence lengths, U . Support for the lengths $U=63$, and 127 is mandatory. Support of all other U lengths is optional.

Table 13—UW lengths and Generator Polynomials for I Channel PN -Sequences

Length, U (symbols)	PN Generator Polynomial (Binary, with 100101 $\leftrightarrow x^5 + x^2 + 1$)	Status
0	-	Optional
7	1011	Optional
15	10011	Optional
31	100101	Optional
63	1000011	Mandatory
127	10000011	Mandatory
255	100011101	Optional
511	1000010001	Optional

8.3.5.13 FFT Interval (UW Interval) Specifications

In addition to the length, U , of the Unique Word sequence, another important framing parameter is the interval between Unique Words, N . However, rather than specifying N directly, we prefer to specify, $F = N + U$, where F would be the FFT length of a symbol-spaced frequency domain equalizers. The length $F = N + U$ should preferably be 2 raised to an integer power n ; in other words, $F = 2^n$.

A receiver and transmitter must support $n = 8$, i.e., a compliant receiver must be able to decode data with 256 symbol intervals between successive Unique Words. This implies that an FFT size of $F = 2^8 = 256$ symbols might be used within a frequency domain equalizer to support this mode of operation. Other desirable FFT sizes, for longer delay spread channels, or higher data rates, are $n = 9, 10, 11, 12, 13$, i.e., $F = 512, 1024, 2048, 4096, 8092$. Since Frequency domain equalization may also be performed using the overlap add algorithm, a value of $F = \text{infinity}$, i.e., the use of no

Unique Words (outside of an acquisition sequence [for burst mode] or frame header indications [for continuous mode]) should also be supported.

8.3.5.14 Framing Recommendations for Transmit Diversity

Diversity techniques are likely to find application in some broadband wireless installations. Non-invasive techniques such as receive diversity do not require that any special considerations on the part of the air interface, or framing. For 2-way delay transmit diversity, where two transmit antennas are used and the output of the second antenna is delayed with respect to the first, the considerations are minor. Both receiver equalization and framing must be adequate to accommodate the extra delay spread introduced in the system due to the delayed output of the second transmitter.

However, the framing requires some thought when the Alamouti transmit diversity scheme [14], which achieves 2-way maximal ratio transmit diversity combining, is used.

8.3.5.15 The Alamouti Algorithm:

Alamouti diversity combining may be applied to either the continuous or burst formats, if two consecutive Unique Word Intervals (which we will denote here as "blocks") are logically coupled, and are jointly processed at both the transmitter and receiver. Here we shall illustrate a technique which is particularly amenable to frequency domain equalization.

Figure 50 illustrates the aforesaid concept of block pairing, and also illustrates the necessity of separating the consecutively paired blocks with 'delay spread guard bands', so that no block leaks delayed information onto the other.

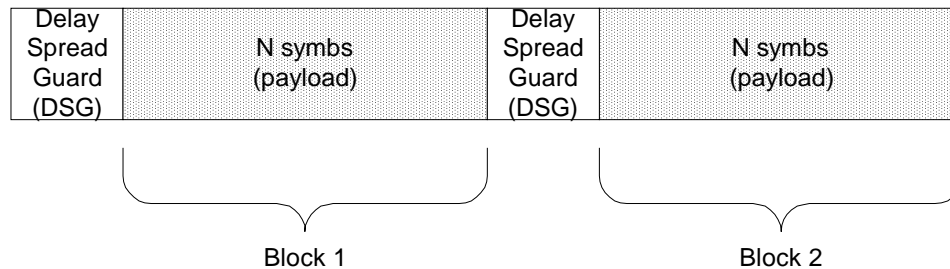


Figure 50—Two Blocks (Unique Word Intervals) for Alamouti transmit diversity combining

Table 14 indicates the block signaling structure that must be used at the transmitter.

Note that Transmit Antenna 0 would transmit data according to burst or continuous format specifications, with no modifications. However, Transmit Antenna 1 must not only reverse the block order, and conjugate the transmitted complex symbols, but must also reverse the time sequence of data within each block before sending data over the air.

Table 14—Multiplexing arrangement for block Alamouti-like processing

TX Antenna	Block 0	Block 1
0	$s_0(t)$	$s_1(t)$
1	$-s_1^*(-t)$	$s_0^*(-t)$

Let $S_0(e^{j\omega}), S_1(e^{j\omega}), H_0(e^{j\omega}), H_1(e^{j\omega}), N_0(e^{j\omega})$, and $N_1(e^{j\omega})$, be the Discrete-time Fourier transforms of symbol sequences $s_0(t)$ and $s_1(t)$, channel responses $h_0(t)$ and $h_1(t)$, and additive noise sequences $n_0(t)$ and $n_1(t)$.

The received signals associated with each block, interpreted in the frequency domain, are:

$$R_0(e^{j\omega}) = H_0(e^{j\omega})S_0(e^{j\omega}) - H_1(e^{j\omega})S_1(e^{j\omega}) + N_0(e^{j\omega}) \quad (2)$$

$$R_1(e^{j\omega}) = H_0(e^{j\omega})S_1^*(e^{j\omega}) - H_1(e^{j\omega})S_0^*(e^{j\omega}) + N_1(e^{j\omega}) \quad (3)$$

Assuming that the channel responses $H_0(e^{j\omega})$ and $H_1(e^{j\omega})$ are known, one can use the frequency domain combining scheme

$$C_0(e^{j\omega}) = H_0^*(e^{j\omega})R_0(e^{j\omega}) + H_1(e^{j\omega})R_1^*(e^{j\omega}) \quad (4)$$

$$C_1(e^{j\omega}) = -H_1(e^{j\omega})R_0^*(e^{j\omega}) + H_0^*(e^{j\omega})R_1^*(e^{j\omega}) \quad (5)$$

to obtain the combiner outputs

$$C_0(e^{j\omega}) = (|H_0(e^{j\omega})|^2 + |H_1(e^{j\omega})|^2)S_0(e^{j\omega}) + H_0^*(e^{j\omega})N_0(e^{j\omega}) + H_1(e^{j\omega})N_1^*(e^{j\omega}) \quad (6)$$

$$C_1(e^{j\omega}) = (|H_0(e^{j\omega})|^2 + |H_1(e^{j\omega})|^2)S_1(e^{j\omega}) - H_1(e^{j\omega})N_0^*(e^{j\omega}) + H_0^*(e^{j\omega})N_1(e^{j\omega}) \quad (7)$$

These combiner outputs can be equalized using a frequency domain equalizer (see [8], for example) to (eventually) obtain estimates for $s_0(t)$ and $s_1(t)$.

The channel responses can also be estimated using pilot symbols. Assume that corresponding pilot symbols are the same in the 0 and 1 blocks, i.e., $S_0(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) = S_1(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) = S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})$, and that $S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})$ is known.

Using the expression from Eq. 2 and Eq. 3, one can easily show that

$$S^*(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})R_0(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) + S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})R_1(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) = 2|S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})|^2 H_0(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) \quad (8)$$

$$S^*(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})R_0(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) + S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})R_1(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) = 2|S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})|^2 (H_1(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})) \quad (9)$$

This suggests that one can estimate the channels $H_0(e^{j\omega})$ and $H_1(e^{j\omega})$ at the pilot locations, and thus identify the channels themselves (if the pilot sampling locations are selected properly) using the expressions

$$\hat{H}_0(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) = \frac{S^*(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})R_0(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) + S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})R_1(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})}{2|S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})|^2} \quad (10)$$

$$\hat{H}_1(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) = \frac{-S^*(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})R_0(e^{j\omega_{pilot}}) + S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})R_1(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})}{2|S(e^{j\omega_{pilot}})|^2} \quad (11)$$

Figure 51 illustrates a frame structure, with pilot symbols (Unique Word repetitions) which enables implementation of the aforesaid techniques, including simultaneous estimation (or channel updates) of the two channels arising from the use of two transmit antennas. Note that although the spacing between basic Unique Words is the same as previously, the intervals over which FFTs (for a frequency domain equalizer) are computed are reduced.

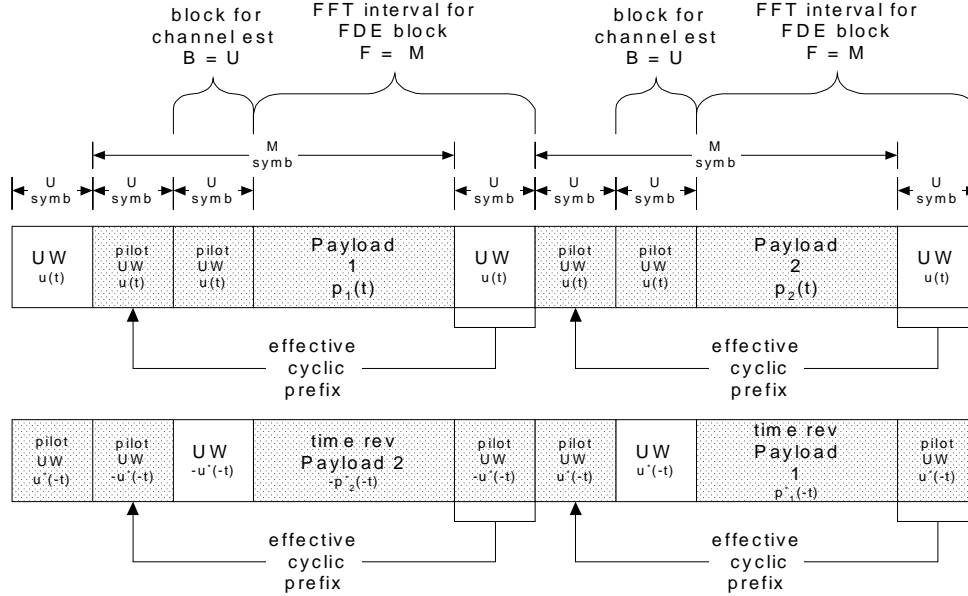


Figure 51—Frame structure for Alamouti TX diversity signaling with channel estimation

Figure 52 illustrates a similar case as Figure 51, but where channel estimates and/or channel updates are not needed. This case might occur with in burst format applications, where the channels might be estimated with sufficient accuracy using information in the acquisition preamble.

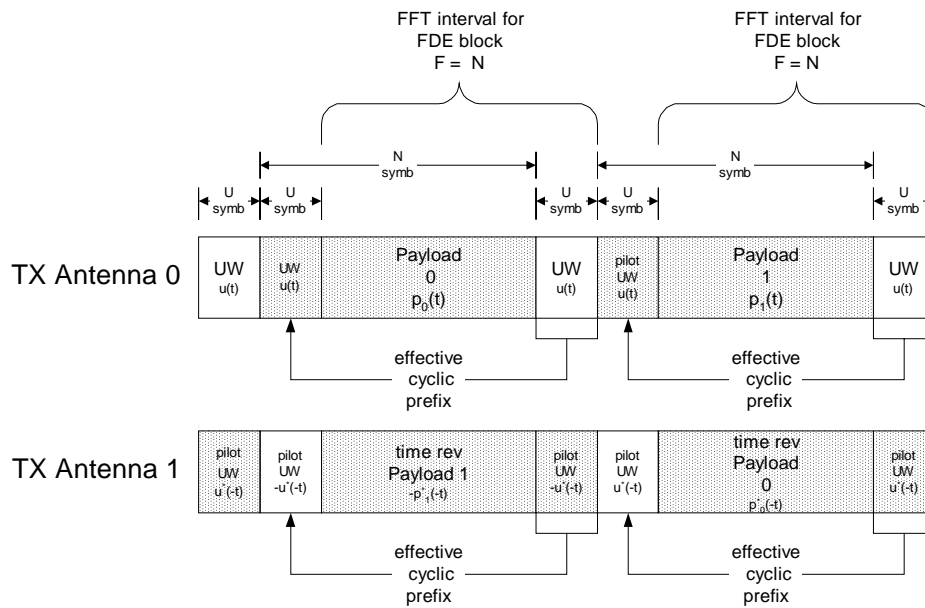


Figure 52—Frame structure for Alamouti TX diversity signaling without channel estimation

8.3.5.16 Standard Burst Configuration

The following analysis is based on a standard burst configuration of 64 symbol preamble "sounding sequence" and 192 symbols data packet which results in 256 T symbol based FFT.

We denote that the burst format as [64+192] as shown in the following diagram.

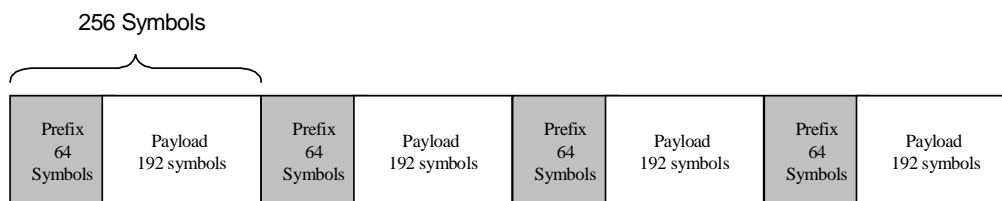
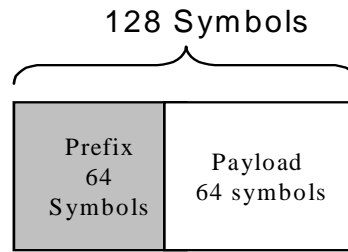


Figure 53—Standard Burst Configuration

A set of data that is fragmented by the MAC would be set as set of bursts, [64 +192] [64 +192] [64 +192] ...

The encoding of each Block of 192 symbols will be aligned with OFDMA coding as documented in 802.163c-01-59. We will use an outer RS block code and an inner K=7 Convolutional code (I = G1 = 171 oct, Q = G2 = 133 Oct). Reed Solomon will be based on Systematic (255,239,t=8) code where RS (N,K,T) are variable. Interleaving will not be used.

The TG1/TG3/TG4 MAC defines a Bandwidth Request Message that is used quite frequently (multiple times per frame). It consists of 6 Bytes. Given the frequency of use, The SC PHY provides a special QPSK burst that is 128 symbols long and provides an 8 byte payload to increase the efficiency of the Air Interface as shown in the following diagram. The actual payload is 60 symbols (4 symbols of 0 fill). The burst can be processed with 128 FFT or with 256 mandatory FFT using Zero fill.

**Figure 54—Smallest Burst Configuration**

Scrambling will be applied by and R15, generator 1 + X14 + X15 ,additive scrambler that is initialized (register [15:1] = 000000010101001) at the start of each block that follows the burst prefix.

Table 15 outlines the mandatory encoding of the physical layer burst transmissions. The combinations provide ~6dB of Eb/N0 difference between modulation/FEC levels. This ensures a reliable capture and operation range to avoid frequent modulation re-ranging with variation in the channel.

Table 15—Mandatory burst encoding

Modulation	Delivered Data Block Size (bytes)	Overall Code Rate	RS Coding	Conv. Coding Rate
QPSK (BW Request)	6	~2/5	(10,6,2)	2/3
QPSK	24	1/2	(32,24,4)	2/3
16 QAM	72	3/4	(80,72,4)	5/6
64 QAM	108	3/4	(120,108,6)	5/6
64 QAM	120	~5/6	(126,120,3)	7/8

SC system shall support shorter and longer prefix/ preamble words. In these cases, the changes in the payload length in symbols are performed by handing the RS block length N and the number of data bits K with T remaining fixed.

8.3.5.17 Antenna Systems

8.3.5.17.1 Application of Smart Antenna

The PHY layer shall support future application of smart antenna for primary feature of providing the ability to track the line of sight target within a predetermined angle of uncertainty. Typically, one would expect 3 or more degrees of tracking. This active tracking capability of smart antenna will potentially provide better coexistence and will optimize the antenna pattern (transmit where the subscriber is located)

8.3.5.17.2 Antenna Diversity

Multiple antennas can be used at the transmitter and/or receiver to provide added dimension to the model.

When multiple antenna diversity (so called Multiple-Input/Multiple-Output; MIMO) is compared with a Single-Input/ Single-Output (called SISO) technique, it is shown in performance that it can improve the capacity of the fading wireless channel regardless of the modulation techniques utilized. It is applicable to Single Carrier (SC) modula-

tion. Figure 55 illustrates the application of Smart antenna array for Single Carrier systems with three receive antennae.

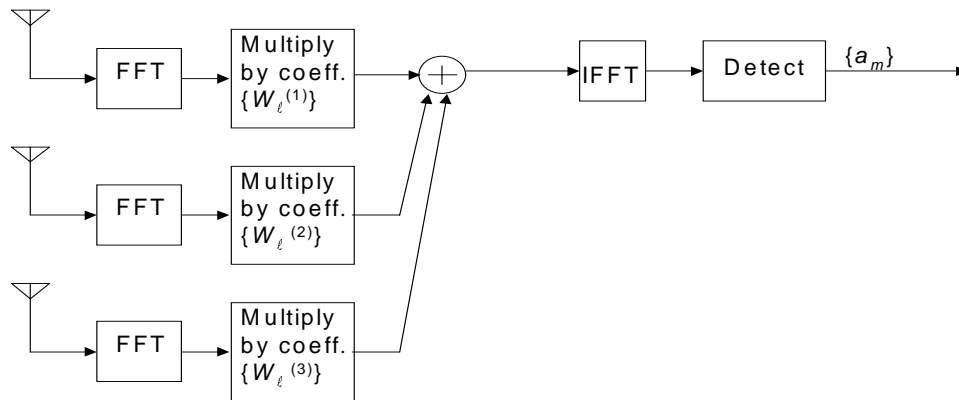


Figure 55—SC-FDE with Smart Antenna Array

The benefits, however, of using space diversity should be examined against its implementation complexity and economic factors.

8.3.5.18 SC-FDE System Capacity and Modulation Efficiency

8.3.5.18.0.1 System Capacity:

Table 16 shows the BWA PHY with Downlink and Uplink modulation schemes and the corresponding system capacity and Bits per sec./ Hz. The aggregate transmission bit rate is optimized based on several constraints. These are:

- The allocated channel bandwidth;
- The modulation level;
- The spectrum shaping filter bandwidth with roll factor of $\alpha = 0.15$ or 0.25 ;
- The FEC coding scheme (Reed-Solomon (n, k) over $GF(28)$);
- The requirement of uplink time tick for the Mini-slots burst duration; and
- Processing power limitation of available chips to be used.

Table 16 presents an example of achievable system capacity where all coding and FDE overhead budget is being included.

Table 16—System Capacity Objectives Example

Channel Spacing	Downlink TX Rate (Mbps)		Uplink TX Rate (Mbps)	
	16 QAM 3.38 bps/Hz	64 QAM 5.07 bps/Hz	QPSK 1.46 bps/Hz	16 QAM 2.92 bps/Hz
3.5 MHz	11.02	16.54	4.77	9.54
5 MHz	15.72	23.57	7.44	14.88
6 MHz	18.82	28.21	8.93	17.86
7 MHz	22.03	33.03	9.52	19.05

8.3.5.18.1 SC-FDE System Throughput

For single-carrier systems, system throughput will vary with the operating modes. With frame structure given in Subclause ????, the SC-FDE system throughput is given as:

$$T = R \frac{N-U}{N} r \frac{\log M}{\log 2} \quad (12)$$

If the design with $\frac{U}{2} = R \cdot d$, rounded up to the nearest power of 2, the throughput for SC-FDE system will then equal to:

$$R \frac{N - \lceil (R \cdot d) \rceil_2}{N} r \frac{\log M}{\log 2} \quad (13)$$

where $\lceil x \rceil_2$ denotes rounding x up to the nearest power of 2.

Table 17 presents typical channel throughput for SC-DFE system with a 1.75 MHz channel Bandwidth. Similar typical results for higher channel bandwidths will be proportionally larger.

Table 17—Throughput for various Models in 1.75 MHz Channel

System dependent parameters		Link-Dependent Parameters		Traffic Dependent Parameters			
Symbol [sample] Rate (MS/sec)	Design Max Delay Spread (μ s)	QAM States	Conv. Code Rate	FFT Sizes			
				256	512	1024	2048
1.5	4	4	1/2	1.453	1.477	1.488	1.494
			2/3	1.938	1.969	1.984	1.992
			3/4	2.180	2.215	2.232	2.241
			7/8	2.543	2.584	2.604	2.615
		16	1/2	2.906	2.953	2.977	2.988
			2/3	3.875	3.938	3.969	3.984
			3/4	4.359	4.430	4.465	4.482
			7/8	5.086	5.168	5.209	5.229
		64	1/2	4.359	4.430	4.465	4.482
			2/3	5.813	5.906	5.953	5.977
			3/4	6.539	6.645	6.697	6.724
			7/8	7.629	7.752	7.813	7.844
	10	4	1/2	1.395	1.447	1.474	1.487
			2/3	1.859	1.930	1.965	1.982
			3/4	2.092	2.171	2.210	2.230
			7/8	2.440	2.533	2.579	2.602
		16	1/2	2.789	2.895	2.947	2.974
			2/3	3.719	3.859	3.930	3.965
			3/4	4.184	4.342	4.421	4.460
			7/8	4.881	5.065	5.158	5.204
		64	1/2	4.184	4.342	4.421	4.460
			2/3	5.578	5.789	5.895	5.947
			3/4	6.275	6.513	6.631	6.691
			7/8	7.321	7.598	7.737	7.806
	20	4	1/2	1.313	1.406	1.453	1.477
			2/3	1.750	1.875	1.938	1.969
			3/4	1.969	2.109	2.180	2.215
			7/8	2.297	2.461	2.543	2.584
		16	1/2	2.625	2.813	2.906	2.953
			2/3	3.500	3.750	3.875	3.938
			3/4	3.938	4.219	4.359	4.430
			7/8	4.594	4.922	5.086	5.168
		64	1/2	3.938	4.219	4.359	4.430
			2/3	5.250	5.625	5.813	5.906
			3/4	5.906	6.328	6.539	6.645
			7/8	6.891	7.383	7.629	7.752

8.3.6 OFDM PHY Layers

8.3.6.1 Introduction

This clause is informative only.

The following physical layer (PHY) specifications are designed to meet the functional requirements that have been defined for Broadband Fixed Wireless Access (BFWA) systems. It incorporates many aspects of existing standards in order to leverage existing technology for reduced equipment cost and demonstrated robustness of implementation with modifications to ensure reliable operation in the targeted 2-11 GHz licensed frequency bands. The PHYs in clause 8.3.6.3 were designed with a high degree of flexibility in order to provide operators in different regulatory domains the ability to optimize system deployments with respect to cell planning, cost considerations, radio capabilities, offered services, and capacity requirements. The PHYs in clause 8.3.6.4 have been designed specifically for 5GHz license-exempt operation.

The PHY specified in this clause is based on OFDM (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex) modulation. Depending on the selected parameters in the time/frequency mapping for the different modes, it can support Time Division Multiple Access (TDMA) as well as Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access (OFDMA) [21], [22]. This flexibility ensures that the system can be optimized both for short burst type of applications, as well as more streaming type oriented applications and provides a seamless development migration path from various existing OFDM-based standards.

The carrier spacing in frequency is dictated by the multipath characteristics of the channels in which the FWA system is designated to operate. As the channel propagation characteristics depend on the topography of the area and on the cell radius, the amount of carriers into which the channels is subdivided depends on the overall channel width and the carrier spacing. This PHY specification contains the programmability to deal with this range of applications.

8.3.6.1.1 Generic OFDM Symbol description

The OFDM symbol duration, or the related carrier spacing in frequency, is a major design parameter of an OFDM system. The symbol duration is composed of the FFT interval and of the Cyclic Prefix (CP) (see clause 8.3.6.1.2).

The number of carriers utilized, N_{used} , is usually only about 83% of the FFT bins (see 8.3.6.1.3). For implementation reasons, this number is chosen to be about 83% of the nearest power of 2. This choice involves implementation aspects of anti-aliasing filters. Note that the choice of FFT size is an artificial implementation parameter. For example a modulation of less than 256 carriers can be implemented either with a FFT of size 256, or with a FFT of size 512 at double sampling rate. We will stick with the convention, in which OFDM modes are denoted by the "FFT size" which is the smallest power of two above the number of carriers.

The effective bandwidth of the transmitted signal is related to the carrier spacing and the number of carriers.

In order to calculate the sampling frequency for any bandwidth, we define the bandwidth efficiency:

$$BW_{Efficiency} = \frac{F_s}{BW} \cdot \frac{N_{used}}{N_{FFT}} = \frac{\Delta f \cdot N_{used}}{BW} \quad (14)$$

in which

BW	Channel bandwidth (Hz)
F_s	Sampling frequency (Hz)
Δf	Carrier spacing (Hz)

N_{used} Number of carriers used in the FFT (pilot, data and DC carriers)

N_{FFT} FFT size

The Bandwidth efficiency is designed to be in the range of 83-95%, mainly depending on the FFT size, in order to occupy the maximum usable bandwidth but still allow adequate RF filtering. From this notion we can extract the sampling frequency for each BW by:

$$F_s = BW_{Efficiency} \cdot BW \cdot \frac{N_{FFT}}{N_{used}} \quad (15)$$

The conversion from carrier modulation values to time domain waveform is typically implemented by a FFT algorithm on blocks of size 2^n . After the FFT, the time domain complex samples are transmitted at rate . The carrier spacing is, therefore,

$$\Delta f = \frac{F_s}{N_{FFT}} \quad (16)$$

The FFT interval duration is related to carrier spacing by

$$T_b = \frac{1}{\Delta f} = \frac{N_{FFT}}{F_s} \quad (17)$$

8.3.6.1.2 Time domain description.

Inverse-Fourier-transforming creates the OFDM waveform; this time duration is referred to as the useful symbol time T_b . A copy of the last samples is inserted before the useful symbol time, and is called the Cyclic Prefix (CP); its duration T_g is denoted as a fraction of the useful symbol time. The two together are referred to as the symbol time T_s . Figure 56 illustrates this structure:

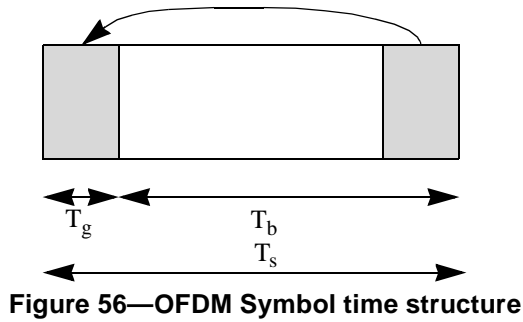


Figure 56—OFDM Symbol time structure

A cyclic extension of T_g is used to collect multipath, while maintaining the orthogonality of the tones. The transmitter energy increases with the length of the guard time while the receiver energy remains the same (the cyclic extension is discarded), so there is a $10\log(1 - T_g/(T_b + T_g))/\log(10)$ dB loss in SNR. Using a cyclic extension, the samples required for performing the FFT at the receiver can be taken anywhere over the length of the extended symbol. This provides multipath immunity as well as a tolerance for symbol time synchronization errors.

The CP overhead fraction can be reduced by using larger FFT intervals (i.e. a larger FFT size). Larger FFT intervals do however, among others, adversely affect the sensitivity of the system to phase noise of the oscillators. To facilitate a choice in this tradeoff, the designed PHY provides for various FFT sizes.

8.3.6.1.3 Frequency Domain Description

The frequency domain description includes the basic structure of an OFDM symbol.

An OFDM symbol is made up from carriers, the amount of carriers determines the FFT size used. There are several carrier types:

- Data carriers - for data transmission
- Pilot carriers - for different estimation purposes
- Null carriers - no transmission at all, for guard bands and DC carrier.

Figure 57 illustrates such a scheme:

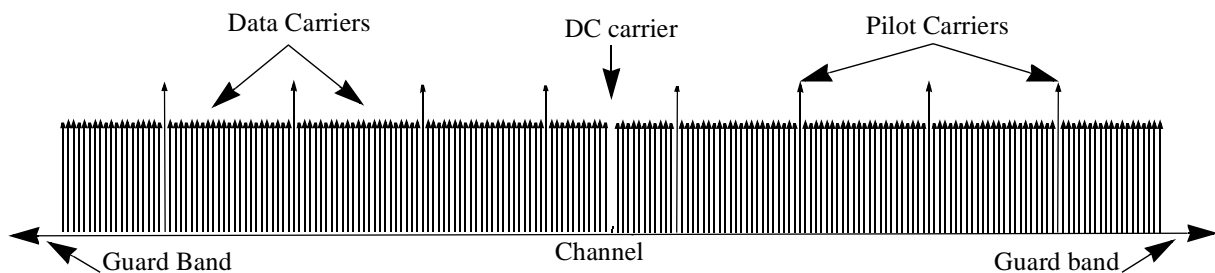


Figure 57—OFDM frequency description (256-FFT example)

The purpose of the guard bands is to enable the signal to naturally decay and create the FFT "brick Wall" shaping.

In the OFDMA mode, only part of all active carriers may be used by the transmitter, the different carriers of which may be intended for different (groups of) receivers. A set of carriers intended for one (group of) receiver(s) is termed a subchannel. The carriers forming one subchannel may, but need not be adjacent. The concept is shown in Figure 58.

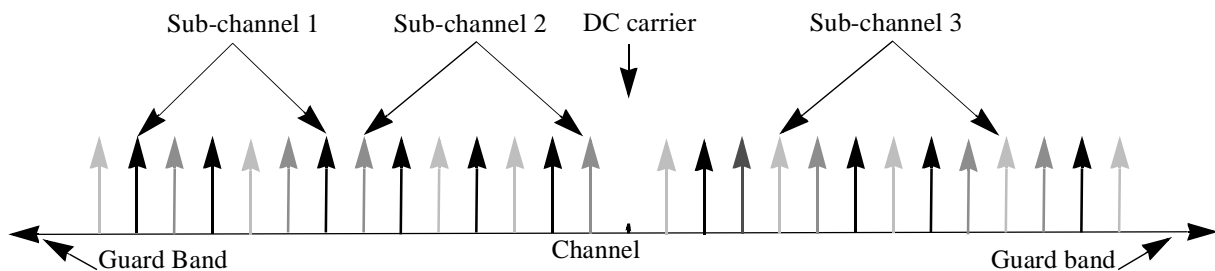


Figure 58—OFDMA frequency description (3 channel schematic example)

The symbol is divided into logical sub-channels to support scalability, multiple access, and advanced antenna array processing capabilities. The sub-channel structure will depend on the purpose for the sub-channelization. For wide-band processing, the mapping is based upon a special permutation code, which distributes consecutive symbols across the available bandwidth.

The number of carriers in the OFDMA mappings assigned to each subchannel is independent of the FFT size. For example doubling the FFT size hence results in twice the number of subchannels which creates a very modular approach.

The usage of OFDMA result in systems that have more implementation complexity, but can provide several advantages.

- Frequency diversity: Possible random spreading of subchannel carriers across the frequency band
- Power concentration: Same power distributed on fewer carriers (most usable on the SS), providing up to 15 dB gain
- Forward Power Control: Digital allocation of different power amplification to the Sub-Channels most usable on the Base-Station side), providing up to 6 dB concentration gain.

8.3.6.1.4 Overview of OFDM Symbol Parameters

The following tables give some calculations of the Carrier Spacing, Symbol Duration and Guard Interval duration for different masks. The sampling frequency is defined as (see clause 8.3.6.3.4.1 and 8.3.6.4.4) with the following exceptions. When using the 64 and 128 FFT sizes in ANSI bands (MMDS and WCS masks) and when using 64-FFT in the U-NII band the sampling rate is (see clause 8.3.6.3.3.1, 8.3.6.4.3.1). When using 256 or 512 FFT in a licensed band, (see clause 8.3.6.3.3.1)..

Table 18—MMDS Channelization Parameters

		OFDM				OFDMA			
	$F_s/(BW)$	1	1	7/6	7/6	8/7	8/7	8/7	8/7
BW	N_{FFT}	64	128	256	512	512	1024	2048	4096
1.5	$\Delta f(kHz)$	23 7/16	11 23/32	6 51/61	3 28/67	3 8/23	1 60/89	36/43	18/43
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.71%	80.47 %	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	42 2/3	85 1/3	146 2/7	292 4/7	298 2/3	597 1/3	1194 2/3	2389 1/3
	T_g/T_b	1/32	1 1/3	4 4/7	9 1/7	9 1/3	18 2/3	37 1/3	74 2/3
		1/16	2 2/3	9 1/7	18 2/7	18 2/3	37 1/3	74 2/3	149 1/3
		1/8	5 1/3	18 2/7	36 4/7	37 1/3	74 2/3	149 1/3	298 2/3
		1/4	10 2/3	36 4/7	73 1/7	74 2/3	149 1/3	298 2/3	597 1/3
	$\Delta f(kHz)$	46 7/8	23 7/16	13 43/64	6 51/61	6 39/65	3 8/23	1 60/89	36/43
3	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81%	80.47%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	21 1/3	42 2/3	73 1/7	146 2/7	149 1/3	298 2/3	597 1/3	1194 2/3
	T_g/T_b	1/32	2/3	2 2/7	4 4/7	4 2/3	9 1/3	18 2/3	37 1/3
		1/16	1 1/3	4 4/7	9 1/7	9 1/3	18 2/3	37 1/3	74 2/3
		1/8	2 2/3	9 1/7	18 2/7	18 2/3	37 1/3	74 2/3	149 1/3
		1/4	5 1/3	18 2/7	36 4/7	37 1/3	74 2/3	149 1/3	298 2/3
	$\Delta f(kHz)$	46 7/8	23 7/16	13 43/64	6 51/61	6 39/65	3 8/23	1 60/89	36/43
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81%	80.47%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%

Table 18—MMDS Channelization Parameters

		OFDM				OFDMA			
	$F_s/(BW)$	1	1	7/6	7/6	8/7	8/7	8/7	8/7
BW	N_{FFT}	64	128	256	512	512	1024	2048	4096
6	$\Delta f(kHz)$	93 3/4	46 7/8	27 11.32	13 43/64	13 11/28	6 39/56	3 8/23	1 60/89
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.71%	80.47%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	10 2/3	21 1/3	36 4/7	73 1/7	74 2/3	149 1/3	298 2/3	597 1/3
	T_g/T_b	1/32	1/3	2/3	1 1/7	2 2/7	2 1/3	4 2/3	9 1/3
		1/16	2/3	1 1/3	2 2/7	4 4/7	4 2/3	9 1/3	18 2/3
		1/8	1 1/3	2 2/3	4 4/7	9 1/7	9 1/3	18 2/3	37 1/3
		1/4	2 2/3	5 1/3	9 1/7	18 2/7	18 2/3	37 1/3	74 2/3
		1/4	2 2/3	5 1/3	9 1/7	18 2/7	18 2/3	37 1/3	74 2/3
12	$\Delta f(kHz)$	187 1/2	93 3/4	54 11/16	27 11/32	26 11/14	13 11/28	6 39/56	3 8/23
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.71%	80.47%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	5 1/3	10 2/3	18 2/7	36 4/7	37 1/3	74 2/3	149 1/3	298 2/3
	T_g/T_b	1/32	1/6	1/3	4/7	1 1/7	1 1/6	2 1/3	4 2/3
		1/16	1/3	2/3	1 1/7	2 2/7	2 1/3	4 2/3	9 1/3
		1/8	2/3	1 1/3	2 2/7	4 4/7	4 2/3	9 1/3	18 2/3
		1/4	1 1/3	2 2/3	4 4/7	9 1/7	9 1/3	18 2/3	37 1/3
		1/4	1 1/3	2 2/3	4 4/7	9 1/7	9 1/3	18 2/3	37 1/3
24	$\Delta f(kHz)$	375	187 1/2	109 3/8	54 11/16	53 4/7	26 11/14	13 11/28	6 39/56
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81	80.47%	91.60%	91.60%	94.64	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	2 2/3	5 1/3	9 1/7	18 2/7	18 2/3	37 1/3	74 2/3	149 1/3
	T_g/T_b	1/32	1/12	1/6	2/7	4/7	7/12	1 1/6	2 1/3
		1/16	1/6	1/3	4/7	1 1/7	1 1/6	2 1/3	4 2/3
		1/8	1/3	2/3	1 1/7	2 2/7	2 1/3	4 2/3	9 1/3
		1/4	2/3	1 1/3	2 2/7	4 4/7	4 2/3	9 1/3	18 2/3
		1/4	2/3	1 1/3	2 2/7	4 4/7	4 2/3	9 1/3	18 2/3

Table 19—ETSI Channelization Parameters

		OFDM				OFDMA			
	$F_s/(BW)$	8/7	8/7	7/6	7/6	8/7	8/7	8/7	8/7
BW	N_{FFT}	64	128	256	512	512	1024	2048	4096
1.75	$\Delta f(kHz)$	31 1/4	15 5/8	7 79/81	3 80/81	3 29/32	1 61/64	83/85	21/43
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	94.64%	91.96	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	32	64	125 19/49	250 38/49	256	512	1024	2048
	T_g/T_b	1/32	1	3 45/49	7 51/49	8	16	32	64
		1/16	2	7 41/49	15 33/49	16	32	64	128
		1/8	4	15 33/49	31 17/49	32	64	128	256
		1/4	8	31 17/49	62 34/49	64	128	256	512
3.5	$\Delta f(kHz)$	62 1/2	31 1/4	15 77/81	7 79/81	7 13/16	3 29/32	1 61/64	83/85
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	94.64%	91.96%	91.60	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	16	32	62 34/49	125 19/49	128	256	512	1024
	T_g/T_b	1/32	1/2	1 47/49	3 45/49	4	8	16	32
		1/16	1	3 45/49	7 41/49	8	16	32	64
		1/8	2	7 41/49	15 33/49	16	32	64	128
		1/4	4	15 33/49	31 17/49	32	64	128	256
7	$\Delta f(kHz)$	125	62 1/2	31 82/91	15 77/81	15 5/8	7 13/16	3 29/32	1 61/64
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	94.64%	91.96%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	8	16	31 17/49	62 34/49	64	128	256	512
	T_g/T_b	1/32	1/4	48/49	1 47/49	2	4	8	16
		1/16	1/2	1 47/49	3 45/49	4	8	16	32
		1/8	1	3 45/49	7 41/79	8	16	32	64
		1/4	2	7 41/49	15 33/49	16	32	64	128

Table 19—ETSI Channelization Parameters

		OFDM				OFDMA			
	$F_s/(BW$	8/7	8/7	7/6	7/6	8/7	8/7	8/7	8/7
BW	N_{FFT}	64	128	256	512	512	1024	2048	4096
14	$\Delta f(kHz)$	250	125	63 77/96	31 82/91	31 1/4	15 5/8	7 13/16	3 29/32
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	94.64%	91.96%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	4	8	15 33/49	31 17/49	32	64	128	256
	T_s/T_b	1/32	1/8	24/49	48/49	1	2	4	8
		1/16	1/4	48/49	1 47/49	2	4	8	16
		1/8	1/2	1 47/49	3 45/49	4	8	16	32
		1/4	1	3 45/49	7 41/49	8	16	32	64
	$\Delta f(kHz)$	500	250	127 29/48	63 77/96	62 1/2	31 1/4	15 5/8	7 13/16
28	$BW_{Efficiency}$	94.64%	91.96%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	2	4	7 41/49	15 33/49	16	32	64	128
	T_s/T_b	1/32	1/16	12/49	24/49	1/2	1	2	4
		1/16	1/8	24/49	48/49	1	2	4	8
		1/8	1/4	48/49	1 47/49	2	4	8	16
		1/4	1/2	1 47/49	3 45/49	4	8	16	32

Table 20—PCS/WCS Channelization Parameters

		OFDM				OFDMA			
	$F_s/(BW)$	1	1	7/6	7/6	8/7	8/7	8/7	8/7
BW	N_{FFT}	64	128	256	512	512	1024	2048	4096
2.5	$\Delta f(kHz)$	39 1/16	19 17/32	11 35/89	5 62/89	5 47/81	2 64/81	1 32/81	30/43
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81%	80.47%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	25 3/5	51 1/5	87 27/35	175 19/35	179 1/5	358 2/5	716 4/5	1433 3/5
	T_g/T_b	1/32	4/5	2 26/35	5 17/35	5 3/5	11 1/5	22 2/5	44 4/5
		1/16	1 3/5	5 17/35	10 34/35	11 1/5	22 2/5	44 4/5	89 3/5
		1/8	3 1/5	10 34/35	21 33/35	22 2/5	44 4/5	89 3/5	179 1/5
		1/4	6 2/5	21 33/35	43 31/35	44 4/5	89 3/5	179 1/5	358 2/5
5	$\Delta f(kHz)$	78 1/8	39 1/16	22 70/89	11 35/89	11 9/56	5 47/81	2 64/81	1 32/81
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81%	80.47%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	12 4/5	25 3/5	43 31/35	87 27/35	89 3/5	179 1/5	358 2/5	716 4/5
	T_g/T_b	1/32	2/5	1 13/35	2 26/35	2 4/5	5 3/5	11 1/5	22 2/5
		1/16	4/5	2 26/35	5 17/35	5 3/5	11 1/5	22 2/5	44 4/5
		1/8	1 3/5	5 17/35	10 34/35	11 1/5	22 2/5	44 4/5	89 3/5
		1/4	3 1/5	10 34/35	21 33/35	22 2/5	44 4/5	89 3/5	179 1/5
10	$\Delta f(kHz)$	156 1/4	78 1/8	45 55/96	22 70/89	22 9/28	11 9/56	5 47/81	2 64/81
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81%	80.47%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	6 2/5	12 4/5	21 33/35	43 31/35	44 4/5	89 3/5	179 1/5	358 2/5
	T_g/T_b	1/32	1/5	24/35	1 13/35	1 2/5	2 4/5	5 3/5	11 1/5
		1/16	2/5	1 13/35	2 26/35	2 4/5	5 3/5	11 1/5	22 2/5
		1/8	4/5	2 26/35	5 17/35	5 3/5	11 1/5	22 2/5	44 4/5
		1/4	1 3/5	5 17/35	10 34/35	11 1/5	22 2/5	44 4/5	89 3/5
15	$\Delta f(kHz)$	234 3/8	117 3/16	68 23/64	34 16/89	33 27/56	16 20/27	8 10/27	4 5/27
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81%	80.47%	91.60%	91.37%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	4 4/15	8 8/15	14 22/35	29 9/35	29 13/15	59 11/15	119 7/15	238 14/15
	T_g/T_b	1/32	2/15	16/35	32/35	14/15	1 13/15	3 11/15	7 7/15
		1/16	4/15	32/35	1 29/35	1 13/15	3 11/15	7 7/15	14 14/15
		1/8	8/15	1 29/35	3 23/35	3 11/15	7 7/15	14 14/15	29 13/15
		1/4	1 1/15	3 23/35	7 11/35	7 7/15	14 14/15	29 13/15	59 11/15

Table 21—U-NII Channelization Parameters

		OFDM		OFDMA
	$F_s/(BW)$	1	8/7	8/7
BW	N_{FFT}	64	256	2048
5 (Optional)	$\Delta f(kHz)$	78/18	22 9/28	2 64/81
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81%	89.73%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	12 4/5	44 4/5	358 2/5
	T_g/T_b	1/32	1 2/5	11 1/5
		1/16	4/5	2 4/5
		1/8	1 3/5	5 3/5
		1/4	3 1/5	
10	$\Delta f(kHz)$	156 1/4	44 9/14	5 47/81
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81%	89.73%	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	6 2/5	22 2/5	179 1/5
	T_g/T_b	1/32	7/10	5 3/5
		1/16	1 2/5	11 1/5
		1/8	4/5	2 4/5
		1/4	1 3/5	5 3/5
20	$\Delta f(kHz)$	312 1/2	89 2/7	11 9/56
	$BW_{Efficiency}$	82.81%	91.60	94.64%
	$T_b(\mu s)$	3 1/5	11 1/5	89 3/5
	T_g/T_b	1/32		2 4/5
		1/16	7/10	5 3/5
		1/8	1 2/5	11 1/5
		1/4	4/5	2 4/5

8.3.6.2 Common elements

8.3.6.2.1 PMP Frame structure

When implementing a TDD system, the frame structure is built from BS and SS transmissions. Each burst transmission consists of one or more OFDM symbols. The cell radius is dependent on the time left open for initial system access. This time should be at least equal to the maximum tolerable round trip delay plus the number of OFDM symbols necessary to transmit the ranging burst. Further, in each frame, the TX/RX transition gap (TTG) and RX/TX transition gap (RTG) need to be inserted between the downlink and uplink and at the end of each frame respectively

to allow the BS to turn around (time plan for a single frame is shown in Figure 59). The sum of TTG and RTG should be 2τ plus a multiple of T_s . For license-exempt implementations, TDD is the only duplexing arrangement allowed.

In FDD systems there is no need for TTG and RTG as the downlink and uplink transmit on independent frequencies (for H-FDD terminals, scheduling rules should avoid TX and RX activity of the same terminal within the TTG and RTG gap time).

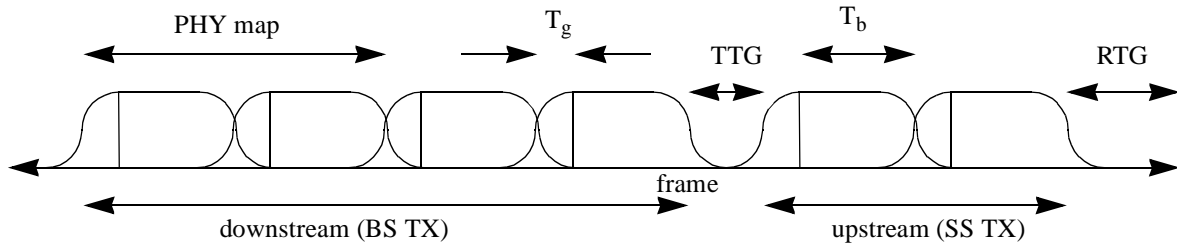


Figure 59—Time Plan - One TDD time frame

8.3.6.2.2 Ranging

8.3.6.2.3 Multiple Antenna Technology (optional)

Employing adaptive antenna arrays can increase the spectral efficiency linearly with the number of antenna elements. This is achieved by steering beams to multiple users simultaneously so as to realize an inter-cell frequency reuse of one and an in-cell reuse factor proportional to the number of antenna elements. An additional benefit is the gain in signal strength (increased SNR) realized by coherently combining multiple signals, and the ability to direct this gain to particular users. This is in contrast to sectored antenna approaches where most users are not in the direction of maximum antenna gain. Another benefit is the reduction in interference (increased signal to interference plus noise ratio, SINR) achieved by steering nulls in the direction of co-channel interferers.

The benefits of adaptive arrays can be realized for both the uplink and downlink signals using retro directive beam forming concepts in TDD systems, and to some extent in FDD systems using channel estimation concepts. These techniques do not require multiple antennas at the SS, although further benefits can be achieved by doing this.

Further benefits can be realized by combining adaptive antenna arrays with frequency spreading. These techniques are based on Stacked Carrier Spread Spectrum implementations.

Adaptive array could be designed to accommodate Narrow Band or Broad Band systems, support for narrow band system is optional and achieved by defining the Sub-Channel carriers to be adjunct. The system inherently supports Broad Band channels, by using any other symbol structure (including the one where carriers of a sub-Channel are allocated adjunct).

When using Broad Band allocations in a Broad Band channel (up to 28MHz) there are several methods used to design adaptive arrays which are well known [23], this methods could comprise the use of matched receivers (amplitude and phase all over the band). Another method could comprise the use of non-matched receivers where processing could be done in the Base Band (by first sending internal testing signals and tuning the arrays in the Base Band, easily implemented for OFDM modulation, which is a frequency domain processing).

8.3.6.2.3.1 Transmit diversity Alamouti's Space-Time Coding

Alamouti's scheme [24] is used on the downlink to provide (Space) transmit diversity of 2nd order.

There are two transmit antennas on the BTS side and one reception antenna on the CPE side. This scheme requires Multiple Input Single Output -MISO- channel estimation. Decoding is very similar to maximum ratio combining.

Figure 60 shows Alamouti scheme insertion into the OFDM chain. Each Tx antenna has its own OFDM chain, but they have the same Local Oscillator for synchronization purposes.

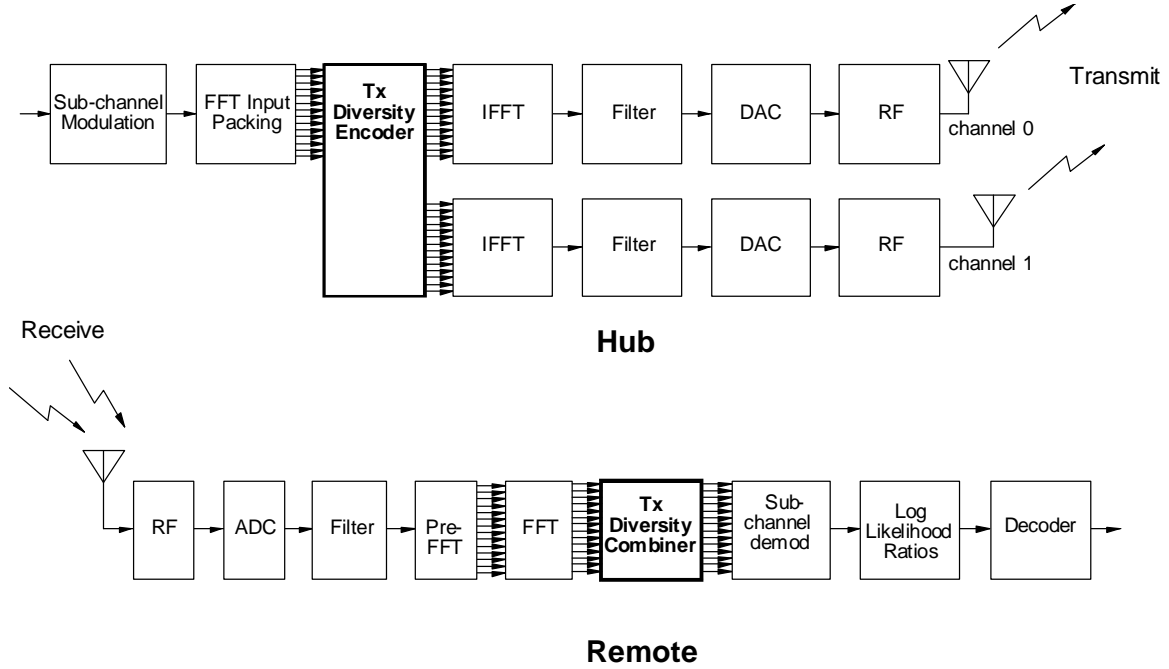


Figure 60—Illustration of the Alamouti STC

Both antennas transmit in the same time 2 different OFDM data symbols. Transmission is performed twice so as to decode and get 2nd order diversity. Time domain (Space-Time) repetition is used.

8.3.6.2.3.2 MISO channel estimation and synchronization

Both antennas transmit in the same time, and they share the same Local Oscillator. Thus, received signal has exactly the same auto-correlation properties as in the 1 Tx mode. Time and frequency coarse and fine estimation can so be performed in the same way as in the 1 Tx mode. The scheme requires MISO channel estimation, which is allowed by splitting some preambles and pilots between the 2 Tx antennas.

8.3.6.2.3.3 Alamouti STC Encoding

(Scheme explanation) The basic scheme [24] transmits 2 complex symbols s_0 and s_1 , using twice a MISO channel (two Tx, one Rx) with channel values h_0 (for antenna 0) and h_1 (for antenna 1).

First channel use: Antenna0 transmits s_0 , antenna1 transmits s_1 .

Second channel use: Antenna0 transmits $-s_1^*$, antenna1 transmits s_0^* .

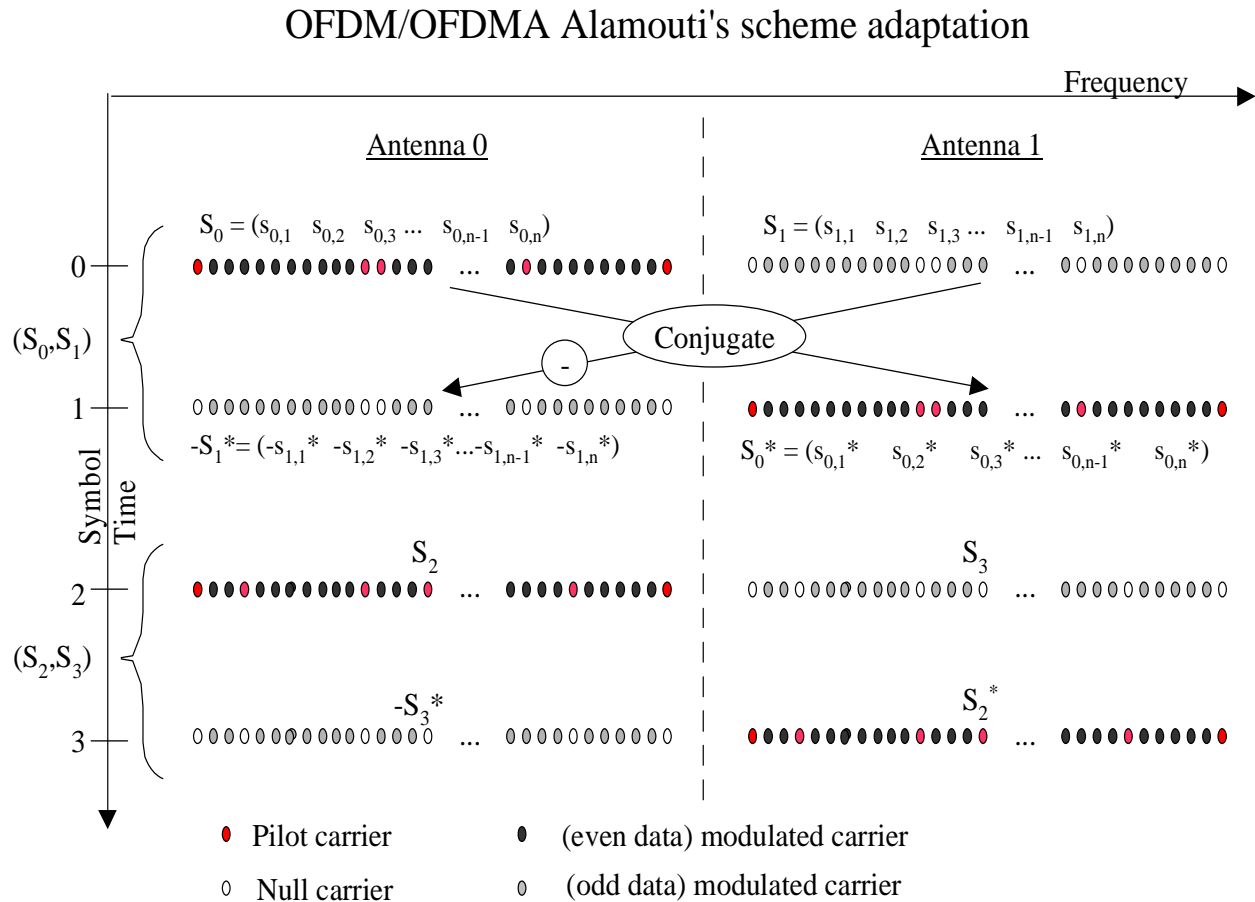
Receiver gets r_0 (first channel use) and r_1 (second channel use) and computes s_0 and s_1 estimates:

$$s_0 = h_0^* \cdot r_0 + h_1 \cdot r_1 \quad (18)$$

$$s_1 = h_1^* \cdot r_0 - h_0 \cdot r_1^* \quad (19)$$

These estimates benefit from 2nd order diversity as in the 1Tx-2Rx Maximum Ratio Combining scheme. OFDM/OFDMA symbols are taken by pairs. (equivalently, 2 Tx symbol duration is twice 1 Tx symbol duration, with twice more data in a symbol.) In the transmission frame, variable location pilots are kept identical for two symbols, that means that the modulo L of the transmission is held the same for the duration of two symbols. Alamouti's scheme is applied independently on each carrier, in respect to pilot tones positions.

Figure 61 shows Alamouti's scheme for OFDMA. Note that for OFDM, the scheme is exactly the same except that a pilot symbol is inserted before the data symbols. Also note that since pilot positions do not change from even to odd symbols, and pilots modulation is real, conjugation (and inversion) can be applied to a whole symbol (possibly in the time domain)



8.3.6.2.3.4 Alamouti STC Decoding

The receiver waits for 2 symbols, and combines them on a carrier basis according to the formula in clause 8.3.6.2.3.3.

8.3.6.3 OFDM PHY Layer for licensed bands

8.3.6.3.1 Introduction

This specification allows for FFT sizes 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096. A compliant device shall implement either Mode A (256 FFT with TDMA), or alternatively Mode B (2048 FFT with OFDMA) for any bandwidth.

8.3.6.3.2 Common elements

8.3.6.3.2.1 Channel Coding

8.3.6.3.2.1.1 Scrambling (Randomization)

Data randomization is performed on data transmitted on the DL and UL. The randomization is performed on each allocation (DL or UL), which means that for each allocation of a data block (Sub-Channels on the frequency domain and OFDM symbols on the time domain) the randomizer shall be used independently. If the amount of data to transmit does not fit exactly the amount of data allocated, padding of FFx ('1' only) shall be added to the end of the transmission block, up to the amount of data allocated.

The shift-register of the randomizer shall be initialized for each new allocation or for every 1250 bytes passed through (if the allocation is larger than 1250 bytes).

The Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) generator shall be $1 + X^{14} + X^{15}$ as shown in Figure 62. Each data byte to be transmitted shall enter sequentially into the randomizer, MSB first.

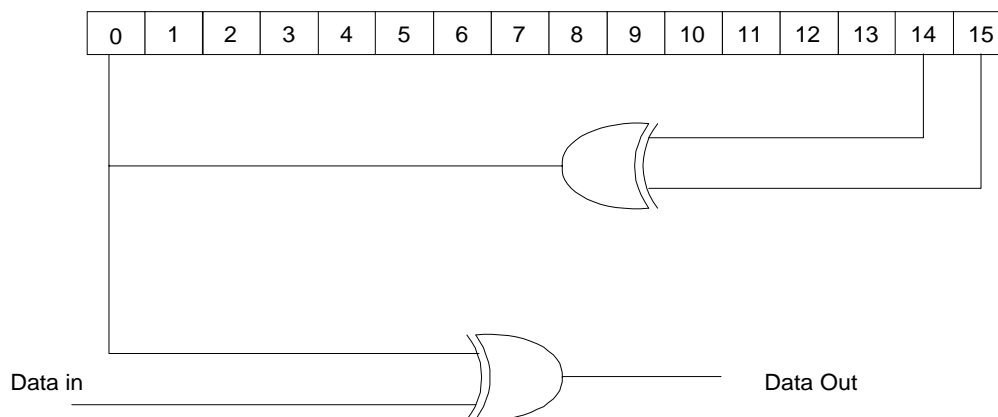


Figure 62—PRBS for Data Randomization

The bit issued from the randomizer shall be applied to the encoder.

In the downlink, the scrambler shall be re-initialized at the start of each frame with the sequence:

1 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0.

The uplink initialization of the randomizer for OFDM is defined in clause 8.3.6.3.3.2. The downlink initialization of the randomizer for OFDMA is defined in clause 8.3.6.3.4.2.

8.3.6.3.2.1.2 FEC

Code rates of 1/2, 3/4 for QPSK and 16QAM are required. Additionally, code rates 2/3 and 3/4 shall be implemented when 64QAM (optional modulation) is supported. These coding rates shall be implemented using concatenated Reed Solomon and Convolutional codes. Optionally, Turbo Product Codes (TPC) may be implemented using the extended coding mode, as shown in 8.3.6.3.2.1.3.

The Reed-Solomon-Convolutional coding rate 1/2 shall be used as the coding mode when requesting access to the network.

8.3.6.3.2.1.2.1 Tail Biting Code Termination

In order to allow sharing of the ECC decoder, each of the multiple data streams subdivides its data into RS blocks. In this mode, each RS block is encoded by a tail-biting convolutional encoder. In order to achieve a tail biting convolutional encoding the memory of the convolutional encoder shall be initialized with the last data bits of the RS packet (the packet data bits are numbered b0..bn).

8.3.6.3.2.1.3 Turbo Product Codes (Optional)

The Turbo Product Codes and shortening methods used for the OFDM PHY layer (licensed bands) are generically described in clause 8.3.3.1.5.3, with specific codes provided in clause 8.3.6.3.3.2.2.2 and 8.3.6.3.4.2.2.2.

8.3.6.3.2.1.4 Interleaving

The PRBS generator depicted in Figure 63 is used to achieve the bit interleaver array, it is initialized with the binary value:

0 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0.

The PRBS generator produces an index value, which shall correspond to the new position of the input bit into the output interleaved data burst.

The interleaver shall use the following algorithm:

- The Interleaver indexes range from 1 to N, where N denotes the block size (defined in clause 8.3.6.3.3.2.3 and 8.3.6.3.4.2.3).
- For each input bit, the PRBS shall be rotated, the rotation produces a number, which is the value of the PRBS memory register.
- If the obtained number is bigger than N, it shall be discarded and the PRBS shall be rotated again. The rotation shall continue until an index between 1 to N is produced.
- The obtained index shall be used to address the position of the processed bit into the output interleaved data burst

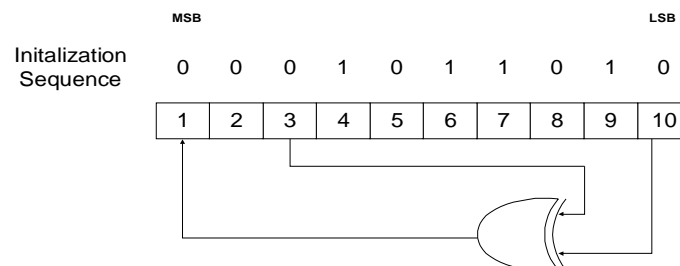


Figure 63—PRBS for Bit-Interleaver Array

8.3.6.3.2.2 Modulation

The modulation used both for the UL and DL data carrier is QPSK, 16QAM and optionally 64QAM. These modulations are used adaptively both in the UL and DL in order to achieve the maximum throughput for each link. The modulation on the DL can be changed for each allocation, to best fit the modulation for a specific user/users. For the UL, each user is allocated a modulation scheme, which is best suited for his needs.

The pilot carriers for the UL and DL are mapped using a BPSK modulation.

8.3.6.3.2.2.1 Data Modulation

After bit interleaving, the data bits are entered serially to the mapper, which is shown in Figure 12. The most significant bits are the first to arrive at the mapper and the ordering of bits in Figure 12 is MS bit to the left.

Note that 64-QAM is optional in all modes, whereas BPSK modulation is only implemented for license-exempt operation.

The complex number z in Figure 12, before mapping onto the carriers, shall be normalized to the value c as defined in Table 22:

Table 22—Normalization factors

Modulation scheme	Normalization Factor 6 dB attenuation	Normalization Factor Reference 0dB	Normalization Factor 6 dB busting
BPSK	$c = z/2$	$c = z$	$c = 2z$
QPSK	$c = z/\sqrt{2}$	$c = z/\sqrt{2}$	$c = z\sqrt{2}$
16 QAM	$c = z/\sqrt{40}$	$c = z/\sqrt{10}$	$c = z/\sqrt{5}$
64 QAM	$c = z/\sqrt{164}$	$c = z/\sqrt{42}$	$c = z/\sqrt{21}$

The complex number c , resulting from the normalization process, shall be modulated onto the allocated data carriers. The data mapping shall be done by sequentially modulating these complex values onto the relevant carriers. The reference-normalizing factor is used for the UL, and the DL defined for 0dB boosting or attenuation. The normalizing factors used for attenuation and boosting are for DL use only, this is defined in the DL parameters for a specific burst type and is used for Forward APC.

8.3.6.3.2.2.2 Pilot Modulation

Pilot carriers shall be inserted into each data burst in order to constitute the Symbol and they shall be modulated according to their carrier location within the OFDM symbol.

The Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) generator depicted hereafter, shall be used to produce a sequence, w_k . The polynomial for the PRBS generator shall be $X_{11} + X_2 + 1$.

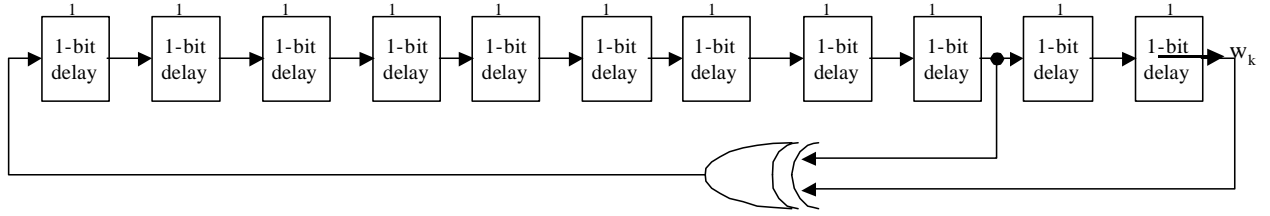


Figure 64—PRBS for pilot modulation

The value of the pilot modulation, on carrier k , shall be derived from w_k .

When using data transmission on the DL the initialization vector of the PRBS will be: [1111111111]. When using data transmission on the UL the initialization vector of the PRBS will be: [1010101010]

The PRBS shall be initialized so that its first output bit coincides with the first usable carrier. A new value shall be generated by the PRBS on every usable carrier. For the PRBS allocation, the DC carrier and the side-band carriers are not considered as usable carriers.

Each pilot shall be transmitted with a boosting of 2.5 dB over the average power of each data tone. The Pilot carriers shall be modulated according to the following formula:

$$\begin{aligned}\Re\{C_k\} &= \frac{8}{3}\left(\frac{1}{2} - w_k\right) \\ \Im\{C_k\} &= 0\end{aligned}\quad (20)$$

For preambles or midambles, the pilots shall not be boosted and shall be modulated according to the following formula:

$$\begin{aligned}\Re\{C_k\} &= 2\left(\frac{1}{2} - w_k\right) \\ \Im\{C_k\} &= 0\end{aligned}\quad (21)$$

For Mode B, a ranging pilot modulation exception is defined in 8.3.6.3.4.3.1.3.

8.3.6.3.2.3 Framing Structure

The framing structure used for the DL includes the transmission of a PHY control and UL mapping, which is transmitted in the most robust coding and modulation of the system followed by transmission using modulation and coding schemes as defined in the PHY control. The MAC layer also defines the DL transmission frame length and the length of the different transmission parts. Figure 65 illustrates the DL framing:

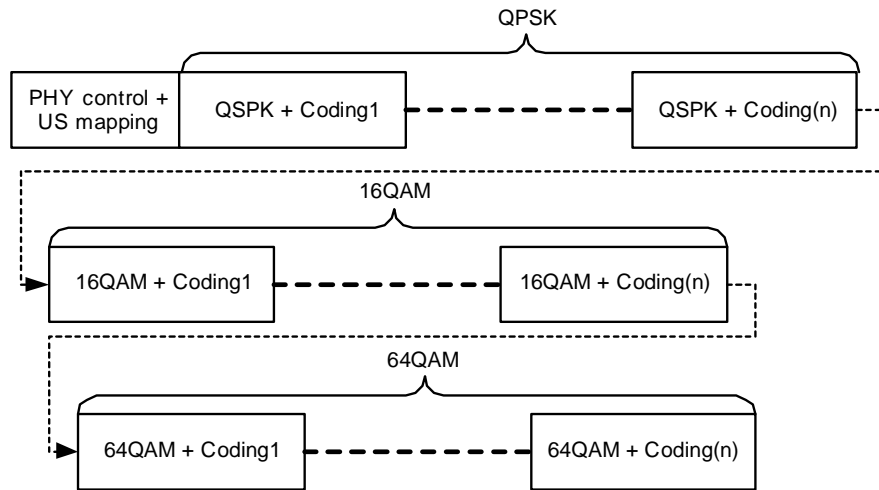


Figure 65—DL Frame Structure

In mode A, the transitions between modulations and coding takes place only on OFDM symbol boundaries, in mode B and C, the transition may take place on carriers within an OFDM symbol.

8.3.6.3.2.4 Control Mechanisms

Ranging for time (coarse synchronization) and power is performed during two phases of operation; during registration of a new subscriber unit either on first registration or on re-registration after a period TBD of inactivity; and second during FDD or TDD transmission on a periodic basis.

8.3.6.3.2.4.1 Synchronization

8.3.6.3.2.4.1.1 Network Synchronization

For TDD realizations, all Base-Stations may have the facility to be time synchronized to a common timing signal. For FDD realizations, it is recommended (but not required) that all Base-Stations be time synchronized to a common timing signal. In the event of the loss of the network timing signal, Base-Stations shall continue to operating and shall automatically resynchronize to the network timing signal when it is recovered.

For both FDD and TDD realizations, frequency references derived from the timing reference may be used to control the frequency accuracy of Base-Stations provided that they meet the frequency accuracy requirements of clause. 8.3.6.3.2.4.1.4. This applies during normal operation and during loss of timing reference.

8.3.6.3.2.4.1.2 Time Stamp, Frame Timing Reference

Each Base-Station and CPE shall maintain a 32 bit system clock which is incremented as described in clause ??????.

Each Base-Station and CPE shall have a facility to time stamp incoming OFDM or OFDMA symbols. The time stamp shall be an integer in the range from 0 to $2^{N_{\text{timestamp}}}-1$. The time stamp shall be synchronized to the network timing.

Time stamps shall be automatically reacquired after the loss of time or frequency synchronization. Frame and symbol timing at the Base-Station and CPE shall be derived from the synchronized timing epoch and the time stamp. CPE cannot transmit payload data until time, frequency, frame and time stamp synchronization is achieved. A provision

shall be made for time stamp rollover such that no ambiguity could occur across the network elements. This applies during normal operation and during loss of timing reference.

8.3.6.3.2.4.1.3 Guard Timing and Frame Timing

The Base-Station shall transmit an OFDM or OFDMA symbol coincident with the timing epoch.

The TDD guard timing between Basestation transmission and CPE transmission (RTG) shall be adjustable in the range of TBD microseconds to TBD microseconds.

The TDD guard timing between CPE transmission and Basestation transmission (TTG) shall be adjustable in the range of TBD microseconds to TBD microseconds.

8.3.6.3.2.4.1.4 Subscriber Station Synchronization

For any duplexing all CPEs shall acquire and adjust their timing such that all uplink OFDM symbols arrive time coincident at the Base-Station to a accuracy of +/- 30% of the guard-interval or better.

The frequency accuracy of the Base-Station RF and Base-Band reference clocks shall be at least 2ppm. The user reference clock could be at a 20ppm accuracy, and the user should synchronize to the DL and extract his clock from it, after synchronization the RF frequency would be accurate to 2% of the carrier spacing.

8.3.6.3.2.4.2 Ranging

During registration, a new subscriber registers during the random access channel and if successful is entered into a ranging process under control of the base station. The ranging process is cyclic in nature where default time and power parameters are used to initiate the process followed by cycles where (re)calculated parameters are used in succession until parameters meet acceptance criteria for the new subscriber. These parameters are monitored, measured and stored at the base station and transmitted to the subscriber unit for use during normal exchange of data. During normal exchange of data, the stored parameters are updated in a periodic manner based on configurable update intervals to ensure changes in the channel can be accommodated. The update intervals will vary in a controlled manner on a subscriber unit by subscriber unit basis.

Ranging on re-registration follows the same process as new registration. The purpose of the ranging parameter expiry is in support of portable applications capability. A portable subscriber unit's stored parameters will expire and are removed after the expiry intervals no longer consuming memory space and algorithm decision time.

8.3.6.3.3 Mode A - OFDM

8.3.6.3.3.1 OFDM Symbol Parameters

For 64 and 128-FFT, for ANSI bands and for ETSI bands. For 256 and 512-FFT, for any BW. For any BW, the mandatory FFT size is 256.

The data symbol structure is made up of data carriers and constant location pilots. The number of data carriers and pilots depends on the FFT size being employed, but it is the same for up- and down-stream.

In Table 23, the DC carrier is numbered 0, whereas carrier numbers increase from the lowest to the highest frequency.

Table 23—Symbol Parameters

N_{FFT}	Parameter	Value	
64	N_{used}	53	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	6	5
	BasicConstantLocationPilots	{-21,-7,7,21}	
128	N_{used}	103	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	13	12
	BasicConstantLocationPilots	{-45,-27,-9,9,27,45}	
256	N_{used}	201	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	28	27
	BasicConstantLocationPilots	{-84,-60,-36,-12,12,35,60,84}	
512	N_{used}	395	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	59	58
	BasicConstantLocationPilots	{-171,-133,-95,-57,-19,19,57,95,133,171}	

8.3.6.3.3.2 Channel Coding

Channel coding is composed of three steps: randomizer, forward error correction (FEC) and interleaving. They shall be applied in this order at transmission. The complementary operations shall be applied in reverse order at reception.

8.3.6.3.3.2.1 Uplink Scrambling (Randomization) Initialization

The scrambler (see clause 8.3.6.3.2.1.1) is initialized with the following vector

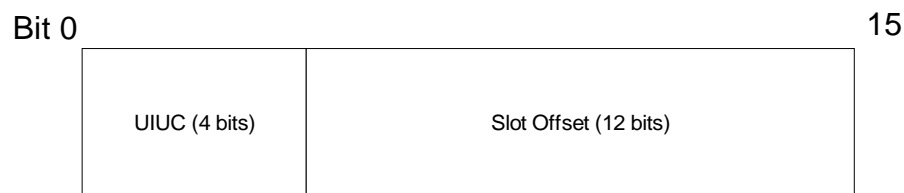


Figure 66—OFDM Randomizer Initialization vector

8.3.6.3.3.2.2 FEC

8.3.6.3.3.2.2.1 Concatenated Reed Solomon and Convolutional Coding

The encoding is performed by first passing the data in block format through the RS encoder and then pass it through a tail biting convolutional encoder.

Table 24 gives the block sizes and the code rates used for the different modulations and code rates. As 64 QAM is optional, the codes for this modulation must only be implemented if the modulation is implemented.:

Table 24—Mandatory Channel Coding per Modulation

Modulation	Block Size (Bytes)	Overall Coding Rate	RS Code	CC Code Rate
QPSK	24	1/2	(32,24,4)	2/3
QPSK	36	3/4	(40,36,2)	5/6
16 QAM	48	1/2	(64,48,8)	2/3
16 QAM	72	3/4	(80,72,4)	5/6
64 QAM	96	2/3	(108,96,6)	3/4
64 QAM	108	3/4	(120,108,6)	5/6

8.3.6.3.3.2.2 Turbo Product Codes (Optional)

Table 25 gives the block sizes, code rates, channel efficiency, and code parameters for the different modulation and coding schemes. As 64 QAM is optional, the codes for this modulation must only be implemented if the modulation is implemented.

Table 25—Optional Channel Coding per Modulation

Modulation	Block Size (Bytes)	Overall Code Rate	Efficiency (bit/s/Hz)	Constituent Codes	Code Parameter
QPSK	26	0.542	1.1	(32,31)(16,11)	$E=1, I_x=4, I_y=3, B=8$
QPSK	41	0.854	1.71	(32,31)(32,31)	$E=1, I_x=14, I_y=11, B=12$
16 QAM	56	0.583	2.33	(32,26)(32,26)	$E=1, I_x=6, I_y=3, B=12$
16 QAM	75	0.78	3.12	(16,15)(64,57)	$E=1, I_x=0, I_y=17$
64 QAM	107	0.74	4.44	(64,63)(32,26)	$E=1, I_x=25, I_y=3$
64 QAM	115	0.8	4.8	(32,31)(64,57)	$E=1, I_x=8, I_y=17$

8.3.6.3.3.2.3 Interleaving

A combination of a bit interleaver and a symbol interleaver is used to interleave the data over the frequency domain.

8.3.6.3.3.2.3.1 Bit Interleaving

Table 26 summarises the bit interleaver sizes as a function of modulation and coding.

Table 26—Number of bits in OFDM symbol

96 Symbol Interleaver		N_{FFT}			
		64	128	256	512
Modulation	Bits/Block	Blocks/OFDM Symbol			
QPSK	192	1/2	1	2	4
16 QAM	384	1/2	1	2	4
64 QAM	576	1/2	1	2	4

It should be noted that in the case of 64-FFT, the interleaver always operates over 2 OFDM symbols.

8.3.6.3.3.2.3.2 Symbol (Sub-carrier) Interleaving

The symbol interleaver is defined only for 256 and 512-FFT, and follows the modulation mapper, which follows bit-interleaver.

The symbol interleaving works as follows: data symbols coming from the modulation mapper are divided into N groups of 96 symbols each. Therefore, there will be 2 groups for 256-FFT: group 0 containing from symbol S_0 to Symbol S_{95} , and group 1 with symbols varying from S_{96} to S_{191} . In the case of 512 FFT, there will be 4 groups containing: group 0 symbols from S_0 to S_{95} , group 1 symbols from S_{96} to S_{191} , group 2 symbols from S_{192} to S_{287} , and group 3 symbols from S_{288} to S_{383} .

Once the groups have been formed, the symbols will be applied to the IFFT processor assigning one symbol of each group to the available data carriers in the following way: $Carrier(n + N \cdot k) = group(n, k)$ where $n=0,1..(N-1)$. $k=0,1,2...95$. (pointer to elements in each group).

For example, for 512-FFT, the symbols will be applied to the carriers in the following way: $S_0 \rightarrow C_0$, $S_1 \rightarrow C_4, ..., S_{95} \rightarrow C_{380}$, $S_{96} \rightarrow C_1, ..., S_{191} \rightarrow C_{381}$, $S_{192} \rightarrow C_2, ..., S_{287} \rightarrow C_{382}$, $S_{288} \rightarrow C_3, ..., S_{383} \rightarrow C_{383}$. This process is graphically explained in Figure 67.

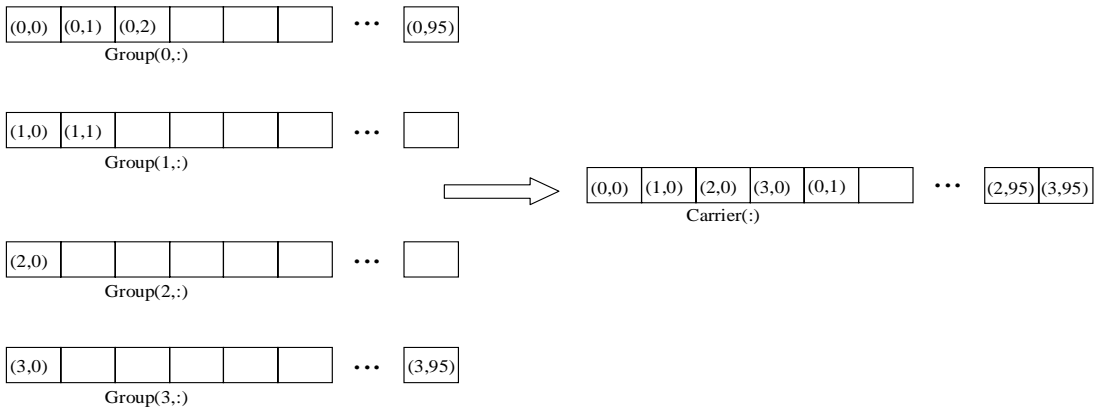


Figure 67—Symbol Interleaver for 512 FFT

8.3.6.3.3.3 Control Mechanisms

8.3.6.3.3.3.1 Ranging

In the OFDM mapping regular uplink bursts shall be used for ranging. The only difference is that an extended header shall be used in order to allow resolving larger timing uncertainty, arising from the propagation delay in large cells.

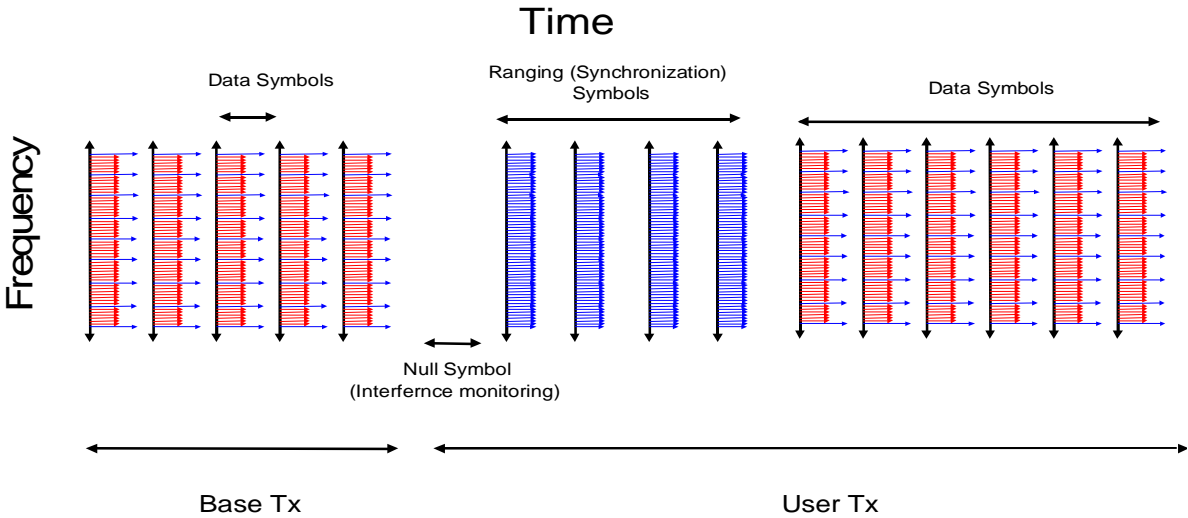


Figure 68—Ranging Symbol Allocation

8.3.6.3.3.3.2 Bandwidth requesting

Bandwidth requests in OFDM are contention based, wherein regular uplink bursts shall be used for bandwidth requests. Bandwidth requests are further provisioned by a piggy-back mechanism provided by the MAC.

The base station shall allocate a number of symbols every frame for bandwidth requests. This number of symbols shall be large enough to contain one or a multiple of long preamble uplink bursts with one OFDM symbol in data. CPEs requiring bandwidth may, using a backoff mechanism, use these slots to request bandwidth.

8.3.6.3.3.3 Power Control

8.3.6.3.3.4 Frame structure

8.3.6.3.3.4.1 Uplink

The basic allocation for a user UL transmission is made up of a long preamble and an integer number of OFDM data symbols, adding more data symbols prolongs the transmission, while the short preamble is repeated every X data symbols transmission. Therefore the UL mapping is illustrated in Figure 69:

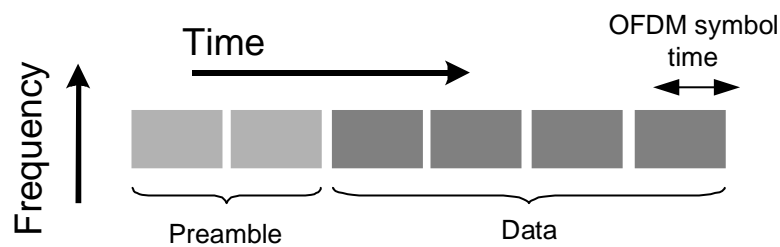


Figure 69—Mode A UL Framing

8.3.6.3.3.4.2 Downlink

Data is encoded as a single stream and the resulting stream is mapped to consecutive OFDM symbols. In every OFDM symbol, only one coding and constellation can be used to transmit data. Figure 70 illustrates a possible two-dimensional transmission mapping (every color represents a different Modulation and coding scheme).

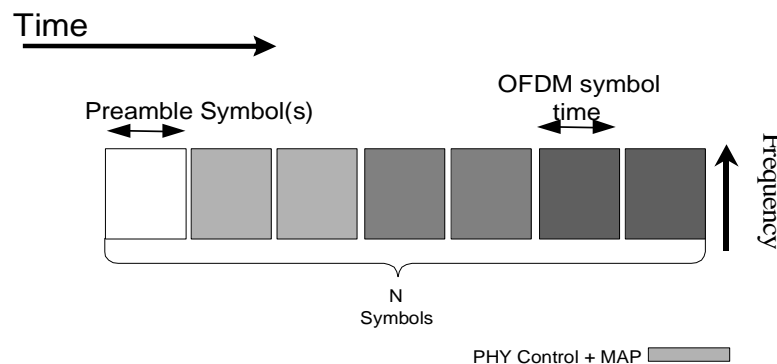


Figure 70—Mode A DL Framing

As shown in Figure 70, the DL frame starts with a preamble consisting of one or more pilot symbols.

8.3.6.3.3.5 Preamble structure

8.3.6.3.3.6 Alamouti STC preambles (optional)

A long preamble is transmitted once, either by one or both antennas. It is used for coarse synchronization.

A short preamble is transmitted once, antenna 0 using even carriers, and antenna 1 odd carriers. This allows fine synchronization and MISO channel estimation. Each channel (0 & 1) is interpolated with very little loss according to channel model.

Another option for short preamble is to transmit it twice alternatively from antenna 0 then antenna 1. This yields to a preamble overhead, but with better fine synchronization.

Pilots tones are used to estimate phase noise. There are transmitted alternatively (on a symbol basis) from one antenna or the other. Since both antennas have the same LO, there is no penalty on phase noise estimation.

8.3.6.3.4 Mode B - OFDMA

8.3.6.3.4.1 OFDM Symbol Parameters

For 512, 1024, 2048 and 4096-FFT, $F_s = B(W \cdot 8/7)$ for any channel bandwidth BW . For any channel bandwidth, the mandatory FFT size is 2048.

8.3.6.3.4.1.1 Downlink

The symbol structure for those FFT sizes is made up of constant and variable location pilots, which are spread all over the symbol, and from data carriers, which are divided into subchannels. The amount of Sub-Channels differs between the different FFT sizes.

First allocating the pilots and then mapping the rest of the carriers to Sub-Channels construct the OFDMA symbol. There are two kinds of pilots in the OFDM symbol:

- Constant location pilots - which are transmitted every symbol
- Variable location pilots - which shift their location every symbol with a cyclic appearance of 4 symbols

The variable pilots are inserted in the locations defined by the next formula: $k = 3L + 12P_v$

$k \in \{0, \dots, N_{FFT} - 2\}$ Indices of usable carriers minus 1 (excludes DC carriers)

$L \in 0 \dots 3$ denotes the symbol number with a cyclic period of 4

$P_v \geq 0$ is an integer number

The pilot's locations are illustrated in Figure 71:

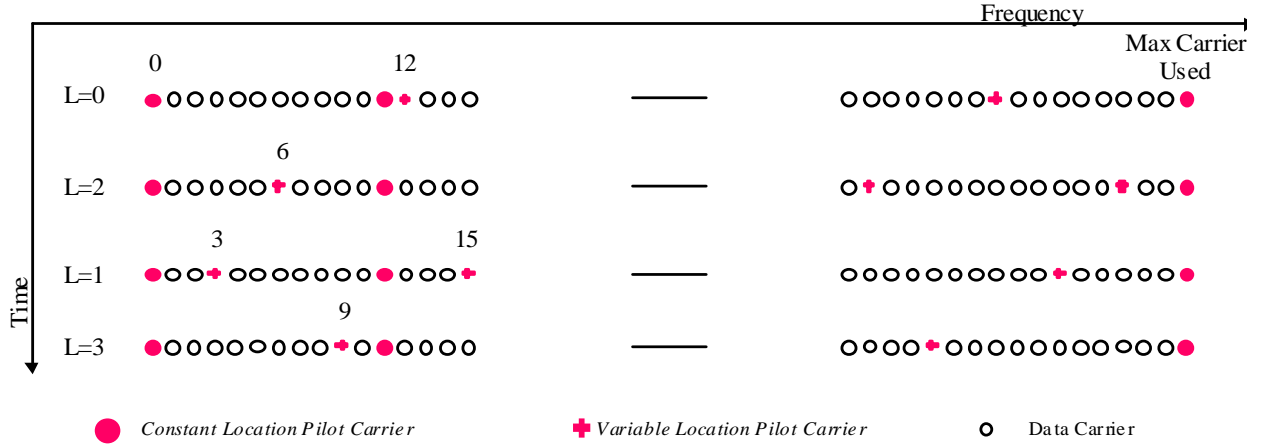


Figure 71—Pilot and data carrier location in DL OFDMA symbol

The symbols are transmitted with the following order $L=0,2,1,3$.

After mapping the pilots, the rest of the carriers (not including the DC carrier, which is not used) are data carriers scattered all over the usable spectrum (we should mention that the exact location of those carriers changes as a function of the symbol number which is modulo 4).

Allocation of carriers to Sub-Channels is achieved using the permutation algorithm below. ID_{cell} is a MAC defined parameter, defining the current cell identification numbers, to support different cells.

- 1 The usable carrier space is divided into N_{groups} basic groups. N_{groups} is equal to the number of data carriers per subchannel (48 in DL and 53 in UL). Each basic group is made up of adjacent carriers. The number of the carriers in a basic group is equal to the number of possible subchannels. As a result of the carrier allocation procedure, each subchannel is built taking one carrier from each basic group.
- 2 We define a basic permutation $\{PermutationBase_0\}$, containing $N_{elements}$ elements. $N_{elements}$ is equal to the number of possible subchannels. Different permutations ($\{PermutationBase_{ID_{cell}}\}$) are achieved by cyclically rotating $\{PermutationBase_0\}$ to the left ID_{cell} times.
- 3 To get a $N_{subchannel}$ length series ($N_{subchannel}$ being the number of data carriers per subchannel) the permuted series are concatenated, until the concatenated series has at least $N_{subchannel}$ elements.
- 4 Let $p_s[j]$ (j starting from 0) be the j -th element of $\{PermutationBase_{ID_{cell}}\}$. The k -th element of the resulting concatenated series, $c_s[k]$, is obtained by:

$$c_s[k] = \{p_s[k_{mod(N_{elements})}] + ceil[(k+1)/N_{elements}] - ID_{Cell}\}_{mod(N_{elements})} \quad (22)$$

- 5 The last step achieves the carrier numbers allocated for the specific Sub-Channel with the current CellId. Using the next formula we achieve the $N_{subchannel}$ carriers (48 in DL, 53 in UL) of the current permutation in the cell:

$$carrier(n, s) = N_{elements} \cdot N + c_s[n] \quad (23)$$

Here $carrier(n, s)$ is the n -th carrier of subchannel number s ; $n = 0, 1, \dots$.

In order to achieve the DL Sub-Channels, the data carriers are grouped into one space (in ascending order of their indices) and then divided it into 48 basic groups (=48). Each group containing a certain amount of carriers, and then special permutations as described above are used to extract the Sub-Channels.

Table 27—Downlink Symbol Parameters

N_{FFT}	Parameter	Value	
512	N_{used}	430	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	41	41
	Subchannels, data carriers/subchannel	8	48
	BasicConstantLocationPilots	{0,75,174,201,214,303,366,384,429}	
	$\{PermutationBase_0\}$	{7,4,0,2,1,5,3,6}	
1024 (1K)	N_{used}	850	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	87	87
	Subchannels, data carriers/subchannel	16	48
	BasicConstantLocationPilots	{0,39,261,330,348,351,522,645,651,726,756,849,850}	
	$\{PermutationBase_0\}$	{6,14,2,3,10,8,11,15,9,1,13,12,5,7,4,0}	
2048 (2K)	N_{used}	1703	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	172	172
	Subchannels, data carriers/subchannel	32	48
	BasicConstantLocationPilots	{0,39, 261, 330, 342, 351, 522, 642, 645, 651, 708, 726, 756, 792, 849, 855, 918, 1017, 1143, 1155, 1158, 1185, 1206, 1260, 1407, 1419,1428, 1461, 1530,1545, 1572, 1701, 1702}	
	$\{PermutationBase_0\}$	{3, 18, 2, 8, 16, 10, 11, 15, 26, 22, 6, 9, 27, 20, 25, 1, 29, 7, 21, 5, 28, 31, 23, 17, 4, 24, 0, 13, 12, 19, 14, 30}	
4096 (4K)	N_{used}	TBD	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	TBD	TBD
	Subchannels, data carriers/subchannel	64	48
	BasicConstantLocationPilots	TBD	
	$\{PermutationBase_0\}$	TBD	

8.3.6.3.4.1.2 Uplink

A subchannel is made up of 48 usable carriers and 5 pilot carriers. The UL subchannel structure is shown in Figure 72.

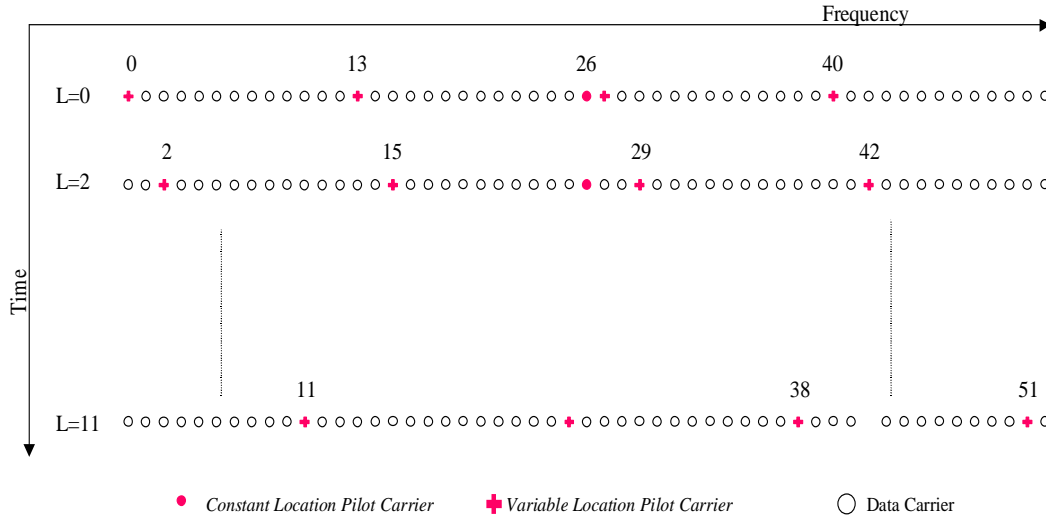


Figure 72—Pilot and data carrier Allocation of UL Sub-channel

The UL data symbol structure is comprised of data carriers and pilot carriers. The data symbols are produced with a modulo 13 repetition (L denotes the modulo 13 index of the symbol with indices 0..12), the location of the variable location pilots are shifted for every symbol produced, the first symbol ($L=0$) is produced after the all-pilot symbols (preamble), which consist of permuted carriers modulated according to 8.3.6.3.2.2.2. For $L=0$ the variable location pilots are positioned at indices: 0,13, 27,40 for other L these location vary by addition of L to those position, for example for $L=5$ variable pilots location are: 5,18, 32, 45. The UL Sub-Channel is also comprised of a constant pilot at the index 26. All other carriers (48) are data carriers, their location changes for every L , the transmission ordering of L is 0,2,4,6,8,10,12,1,3,5,7,9,11.

There are two methods splitting the whole UL OFDMA symbol into Sub-Channels:

- 1 The number of basic groups is 53 ($N_{groups}=53$) and they are allocated Y adjunct carriers, from the first usable carrier to the last (not including the DC carrier, which is not used). Then permutations (see clause 8.3.6.3.4.1.1, $N_{subchannel}=53$) are used to extract the Sub-Channels.
- 2 Defining each basic group as a Sub-Channel, which implies that the number of carriers $Y=53$ and that the carriers within the Sub-Channel are allocated adjunct. The carrier indices for each Sub-Channel are achieved using $carrier(n, s) = 53s + n$ where $carrier(n, s)$ is the n -th carrier of sub-channel number s ; $s = 0,1,...(N_{elements}-1)$; and $n = 0, 1, ..., 52$.

The last method for defining the Sub-Channels involves programming by MAC message the carrier numbers for each Sub-Channel. Table 28 provides the applicable uplink symbol parameters:

Table 28—Uplink Symbol Parameters

N_{FFT}	Parameter	Value	
512	N_{used}	425	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	44	43
	Subchannels, data carriers/subchannel	8	48
	$\{PermutationBase_0\}$	{7, 4, 0, 2, 1, 5, 3, 6}	
1024 (1K)	N_{used}	849	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	88	87
	Subchannels, data carriers/subchannel	16	48
	$\{PermutationBase_0\}$	{6, 14, 2, 3, 10, 8, 11, 15, 9, 1, 13, 12, 5, 7, 4, 0}	
2048 (2K)	N_{used}	1696	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	176	175
	Subchannels, data carriers/subchannel	32	48
	$\{PermutationBase_0\}$	{3, 18, 2, 8, 16, 10, 11, 15, 26, 22, 6, 9, 27, 20, 25, 1, 29, 7, 21, 5, 28, 31, 23, 17, 4, 24, 0, 13, 12, 19, 14, 30}	
4096 (4K)	N_{used}	3392	
	Guard Carriers: Left, Right	352	353
	Subchannels, data carriers/subchannel	64	48
	$\{PermutationBase_0\}$	{TBD}	

8.3.6.3.4.1.3 Permutation Example

[would be better to replace this with a 2k example]

This clause is informative only.

For clarity, an example for using the permutation procedure with the UL 1024 mode is given.

The parameters characterizing the UL 1K mode are as follow:

- Number of FFT points: 1024 (1K)
- Overall Usable Carriers: 849
- Guard Bands: 88, 87 carriers on right an left side of the spectrum
- Number of Sub-Channels: 16

The parameters characterizing the Sub-Channels allocation:

- Number of carriers in each basic group: 16
- The basic series of 16 elements: {6, 14, 2, 3, 10, 8, 11, 15, 9, 1, 13, 12, 5, 7, 4, 0}

Using the defined procedure does the allocating:

- 1 The basic series of 16 numbers is P6, 14, 2, 3, 10, 8, 11, 15, 9, 1, 13, 12, 5, 7, 4, 0}
- 2 In order to get 16 different permutation the series is rotated to the left (from no rotation at all up to 15 rotations), for the first permutation we get the following series: 14, 2, 3, 10, 8, 11, 15, 9, 1, 13, 12, 5, 7, 4, 0, 6
- 3 To get a 53 length series we concatenate the permuted series 5 times (to get a 64 length series) and take the first 53 numbers only, the concatenation depends on the cell Id (which characterizes the working cell and can range from 0 to 15), the concatenated series is achieved using:

$$c_s[k] = \{p_s[k_{mod(16)}] + ceil[(k+1)/N_{elements}] - ID_{Cell}\}_{mod(16)} \quad \text{with } k=0,1,...,63$$

For example when using permutation $s=1$ with ID_{cell} we get the next concatenated series:

0, 4, 5, 12, 10, 13, 1, 11, 3, 15, 14, 7, 9, 6, 2, 8, 2, 6, 7, 14, 12, 15, 3, 13, 5, 1, 0, 9, 11, 8, 4, 10, 4, 8, 9, 0, 14, 1, 5, 15, 7, 3, 2, 11, 13, 10, 6, 12, 6, 10, 11, 2, 0, 3, 7, 1, 9, 5, 4, 13, 15, 12, 8, 14

Therefore the 53 length series is:

0, 4, 5, 12, 10, 13, 1, 11, 3, 15, 14, 7, 9, 6, 2, 8, 2, 6, 7, 14, 12, 15, 3, 13, 5, 1, 0, 9, 11, 8, 4, 10, 4, 8, 9, 0, 14, 1, 5, 15, 7, 3, 2, 11, 13, 10, 6, 12, 6, 10, 11, 2, 0, 3

- 4 The last step achieves the carrier indices allocated for the specific Sub-Channel with the current Cell Id. Using the next formula we achieve the 53 carriers of the current permutation in the cell: $carrier(n, 1) = 16n + p_1[n]$

Where $carrier(n, 1)$ is the n -th carrier of subchannel number 1; $p_1[n]$ is the n -th element of and $n = 0, 1, \dots, 52$.

8.3.6.3.4.2 Channel Coding

8.3.6.3.4.2.1 Uplink Scrambling (Randomization) Initialization

The scrambler (see clause 8.3.6.3.2.1.1) is initialized with the following vector



Figure 73—OFDMA Randomizer Initialization Vector

8.3.6.3.4.2.2 FEC

8.3.6.3.4.2.2.1 Concatenated Reed Solomon and Convolutional Coding

The encoding is performed by first passing the data in block format through the RS encoder and then pass it through a tail biting convolutional encoder.

Table 29 gives the block sizes and the code rates used for the different modulations and code rates. As 64 QAM is optional, the codes for this modulation must only be implemented if the modulation is implemented.

Table 29—Mandatory Channel Coding per Modulation

Modulation	Block Size (Bytes)	Overall Coding Rate	RS Code	CC Code Rate
QPSK	18	1/2	(24,18,3)	2/3
QPSK	26	~3/4	(30,26,2)	5/6
16 QAM	36	1/2	(48,36,6)	2/3
16 QAM	54	3/4	(60,54,3)	5/6
64 QAM	72	2/3	(81,72,4)	3/4
64 QAM	82	~3/4	(90,82,4)	5/6

8.3.6.3.4.2.2 Turbo Product Codes (Optional)

Table 30 gives the block sizes, code rates, channel efficiency, and code parameters for the different modulation and coding schemes.

Table 30—Optional Channel Coding per Modulation

Modulation	Block Size (Bytes)	Overall Coding Rate	Efficiency bit/s/Hz	Constituent Codes	Code Parameters
QPSK	25	0.694	1.39	(8,7)(64,57)	$E=1, I_x=2, I_y=17$
16 QAM	38	0.528	2.11	(64,63)(16,11)	$E=1, I_x=20, I_y=3, B=40$
16 QAM	55	0.764	3.06	(16,15)(64,57)	$E=1, I_x=4, I_y=17$
64 QAM	79	0.731	4.39	(32,31)(32,26)	$E=1, I_x=2, I_y=4, B=6$
64 QAM	85	0.789	4.74	(32,31)(64,57)	$E=1, I_x=14, I_y=17$

8.3.6.3.4.2.3 Interleaving

Table 31 summarises the bit interleaver sizes as a function of modulation and coding.

Table 31—Bit Interleaver Sizes

Modulation	144 Symbol Interleave
QPSK	288
16 QAM	576
64 QAM	864

8.3.6.3.4.3 Control Mechanisms

8.3.6.3.4.3.1 Ranging

Measurements of Time (ranging) and Power are performed by allocating several Sub-Channels to one Ranging Sub-Channel. Users are allowed to collide on this Sub-Channel. Each user randomly chooses one code from a bank of specified binary codes. These codes are modulated by BPSK on the contention Sub-channel. The Base Station can then separate colliding codes and extract timing (ranging) information and power. In the process of user code detection, the Base Station gets the Channel Impulse Response (CIR) of the code, thus acquiring for the Base Station vast information about the user channel and condition. The time (ranging) and power measurements allow the system to compensate for the near/far user problems and the propagation delay caused by large cells.

The usage of the Sub-Channels for ranging is done by the transmission of a Pseudo Noise (PN) code on the Sub-Channel allocated for ranging transmission. The code is always BPSK modulated and is produced by the PRBS described in Figure 74 (the PRBS polynomial generator shall be):

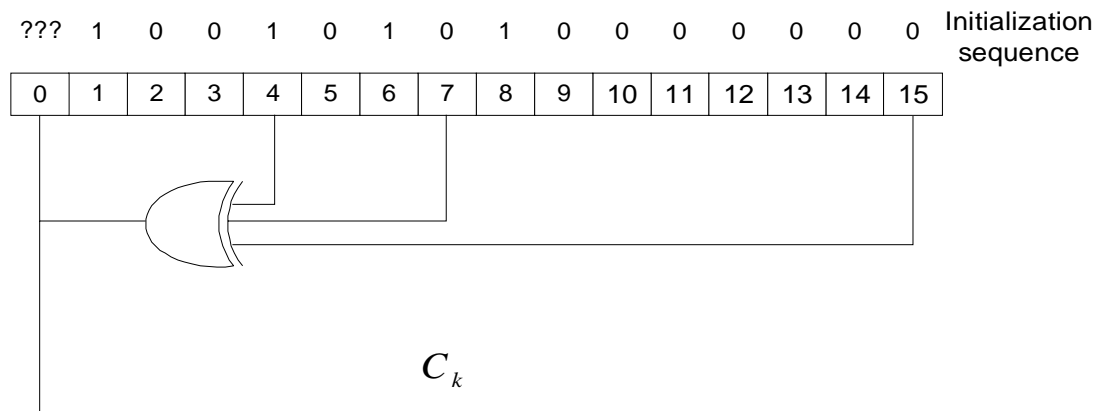


Figure 74—PRBS for Ranging Code Generation

Clocking the PRBS (where each clock produces one bit) subsequently produces the Ranging codes. The length of the ranging codes are multiples of 53 bits long (the default for the 2k mode is 2 Sub-Channels allocated as the ranging Sub-Channel therefore the ranging code length is 106), the codes produced are used for the next purposes:

- The first 16 codes produced are for First Ranging; it shall be used by a new user entering the system.
- The next 16 codes produced are used for maintenance Ranging for users that are already entered the system.
- The last 16 codes produced are for users, already connected to the system, issuing bandwidth requests.

These 48 codes are denoted as Ranging Codes and are numbered 0..47.

The MAC sets the number of Sub-Channels allocated for Ranging, these ranging Sub-Channels could be used concatenates as orders by the MAC in order to achieve a desired length.

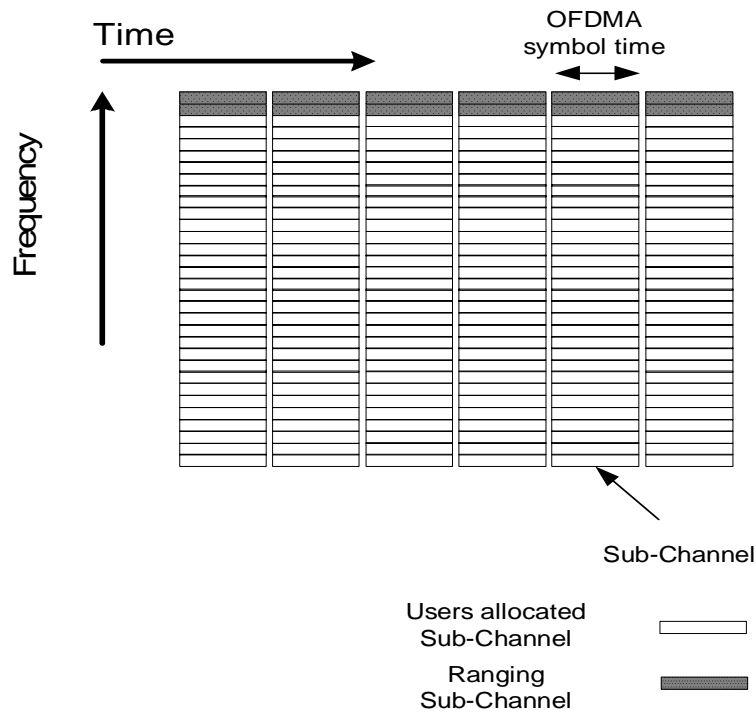


Figure 75—Ranging subchannel allocation (2K mode default configuration)

8.3.6.3.4.3.1.1 Long Ranging transmission

The Long Ranging transmission shall be used by any SU that wants to synchronize to the system channel for the first time. A Long Ranging transmission shall be performed during the two first consecutive symbols of the UL frame. The same ranging code is transmitted during each symbol.

Sending for a consecutive period of two OFDMA signals a preamble shall perform the long ranging transmission. The preamble structure is defined by modulating one Ranging Code, up on the Ranging Sub-Channel carriers. There shall not be any phase discontinuity on the Ranging Sub-Channel carriers during the period of the Long Ranging transmission.

This Long Ranging transmission is allowed only on the Ranging Sub-Channel resources defined by the MAC process in the Base Station.

8.3.6.3.4.3.1.2 Short Ranging transmission

The Short Ranging transmission shall be used only by a SU that has already synchronized to the system. The Short Ranging transmission shall be used for system maintenance ranging or for fast bandwidth allocation requests.

To perform a Short Ranging transmission, the SU shall send a preamble for a period of one OFDM/OFDMA symbol in the duration of the ranging interval. The preamble structure is defined by modulating one Ranging Code on one Ranging Sub-Channel. This transmission may occur on any OFDM symbol out of the six available ranging symbols.

This Short Ranging transmission is allowed only on the Ranging Sub-Channel resources defined by the MAC process in the Base Station.

8.3.6.3.4.3.1.3 Ranging Pilot Modulation

When using the ranging Sub-Channels the user shall modulate the pilots according to the following formula:

$$\begin{aligned}\Re\{Carrier_k\} &= 1/(2 - C_k)/6 \\ \Im\{Carrier_k\} &= 0\end{aligned}\quad (24)$$

being, $Carrier_k$ the k^{th} carrier used within the set of carriers allocated for ranging whereas , and C_k depicts the k^{th} bit of the code generated according to clause 8.3.6.3.4.3.1.1

8.3.6.3.4.3.2 Bandwidth Requesting

The usage of the Sub-Channels for fast bandwidth request is done by the transmission of a Pseudo Noise (PN) code on the Sub-Channel allocated for ranging transmission (see clause 8.3.6.3.4.3.1). Bandwidth requests are further provisioned by a piggy-back mechanism provided by the MAC.

8.3.6.3.4.3.3 Power Control

8.3.6.3.4.4 Frame structure

8.3.6.3.4.4.1 Downlink

The transmission of the DL is performed on the subchannels of the OFDMA symbol, the amount of subchannels needed for the different transmissions (modulation and coding) and their mapping is defined in the PHY control. The mapping of the subchannels is performed in a two-dimensional grid, involving the subchannels in the frequency domain and OFDM symbols in the time domain. Figure 76 illustrates a possible two-dimensional transmission mapping (every color represents a different Modulation and coding scheme). This example disregards the fact that the carriers composing a subchannel may be scattered within the OFDM symbol in non-consecutive locations.

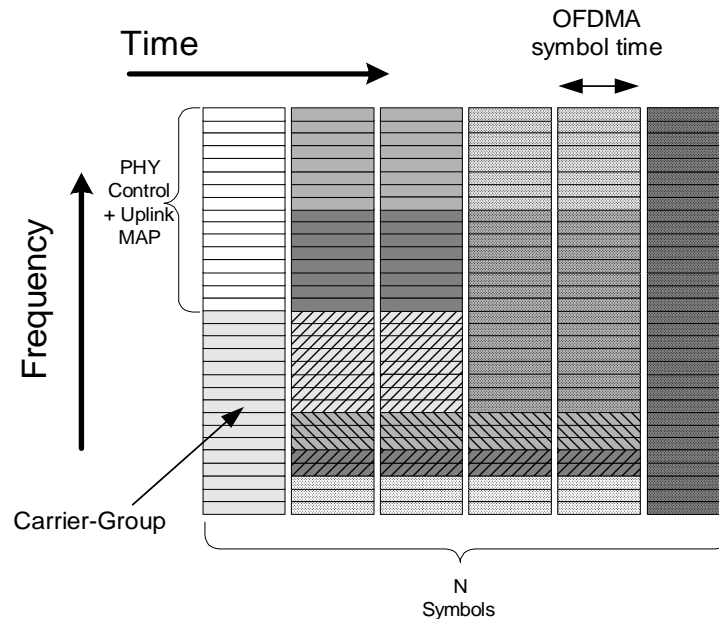


Figure 76—DL Framing

8.3.6.3.4.4.2 Uplink

The basic allocation for a user UL transmission is made up of subchannels, a basic user allocation is made up of one Sub-Channel over duration of 4 OFDMA symbols. The first is a preamble and remaining are used for data transmission, adding more data symbols or subchannels increases the amount of data sent by the user, this allocation is presented in Figure 77:

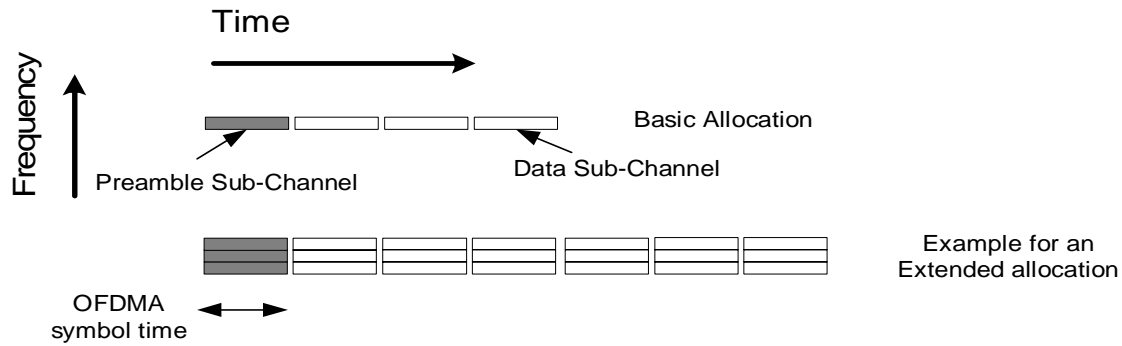


Figure 77—UL bandwidth Allocation

The framing structure used for the UL includes the transmission of a possible symbol for Jamming monitoring, an allocation for Ranging and an allocation for data transmission. The MAC sets the length of the UL framing, and the UL mapping.

The framing for these modes involve the allocation of ranging Sub-Channels within the OFDMA symbols, while the rest of the Sub-channels are used for users transmission, the UL mapping is illustrated in Figure 78:

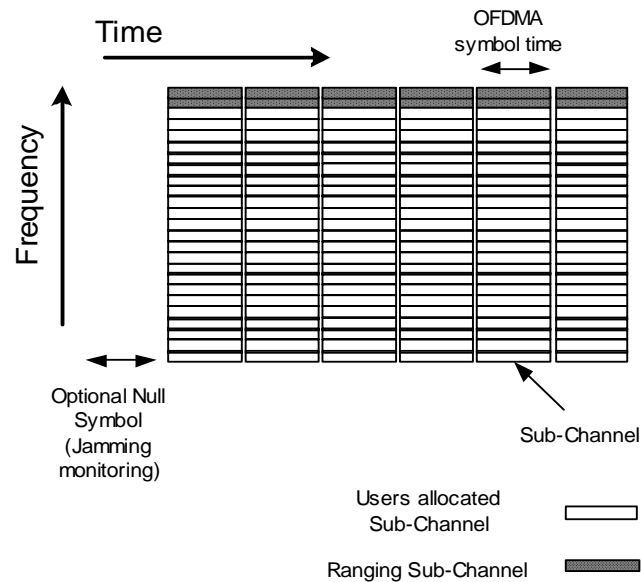


Figure 78—UL Framing

8.3.6.3.4.5 Alamouti STC preamble (optional)

Pilot tones are shared between the two antennas in time.

Again, synchronization, including phase noise estimation, is performed in the same way as with one Tx antenna. The estimation of the two channels is unchanged, but interpolation is more used (in the time domain).

8.3.6.3.5 Mode C (optional)

This mode specifies a mapping for advanced antenna array processing. Unless specified differently, clause 8.3.6.3.4 applies.

Mode C is based on a subchannel structure with 48 data carriers.

This mapping has the same fundamental subchannel tone utilization as Mode B. The main distinction between Mode B and Mode C is that the symbol data is assigned to adjacent carriers as indicated in the framing figures shown below. With Mode B, the framing figures depict logical subchannels since the carriers are actually distributed across the available frequency spectrum to mitigate against frequency selective fading. With Mode C, frequency selective fading is mitigated via spatial processing and spectral diversity.

Note that by using spatial processing, intracell (or intra-sector) spectral reuse is possible. Hence, multiple users will be assigned to overlapping OFDM symbols. This provides lower user latency when contention arises and higher system capacity. Spatial processing also provides beamforming gain and interference rejection via null steering. This, provides SINR improvements that result in reduced transmit power requirements or increased cell radii, and reduces the fade margin requirements due to spatial and spectral diversity combining.

8.3.6.3.5.1 Symbol Structure

Relative to Mode B, in this mapping the pilot and data carriers are assigned fixed positions in the frequency domain within an OFDM symbol.

8.3.6.3.5.2 Frame Format

8.3.6.3.5.2.1 Downlink

The frame format is described by a two-dimensional layout with subchannels in the frequency domain and OFDM symbols in the time domain. Figure 79 illustrates a generic two-dimensional downlink transmission mapping where the different colors and shading reflect different modulation and coding schemes. Figure 80 shows a specific example as an overlay to a Mode B mapping.

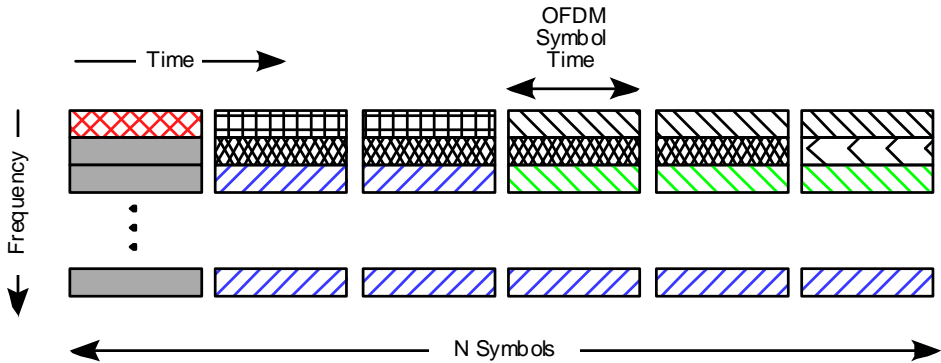


Figure 79—Downlink Framing

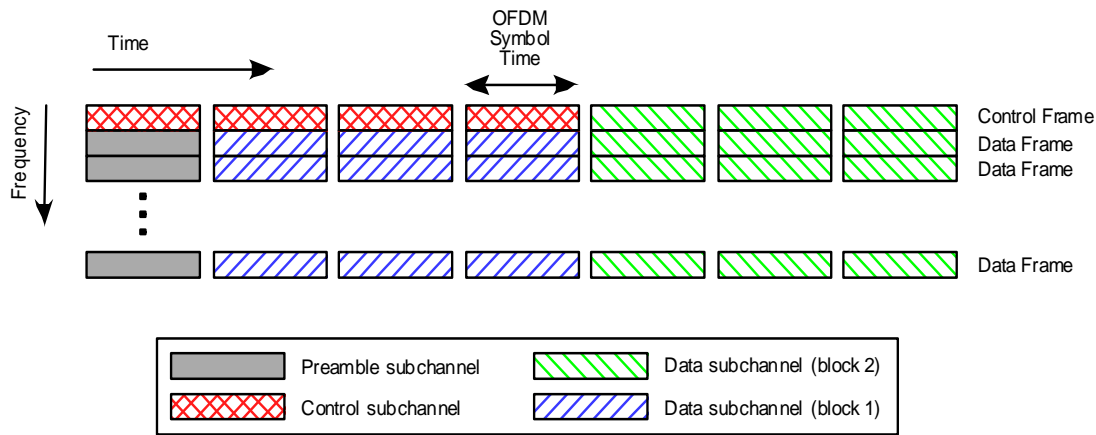


Figure 80—Downlink Framing, using Mode B Framing

8.3.6.3.5.2.2 Uplink

The framing structure is described by a layout with subchannels in the frequency domain and OFDM symbols in the time domain. The mapping shown in Figure 81 shows the generic uplink framing with N OFDM symbols. A frame may be a control frame or a data frame. A control frame has one or more control symbols. A data frame is comprised of a preamble symbol and data symbols. The mapping shown in Figure 82 with four OFDM symbols is one example, where the data frame is identical to the basic allocation in Mode B.

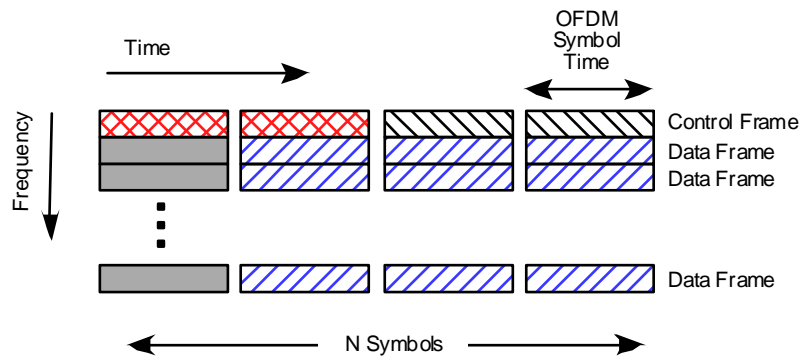


Figure 81—UL Framing

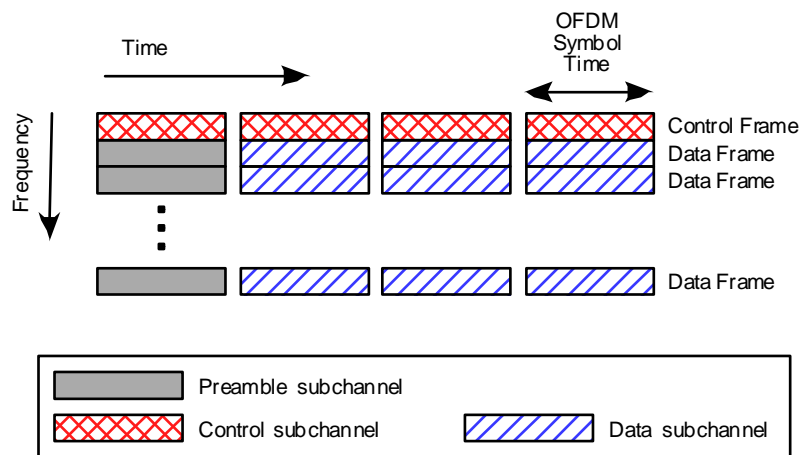


Figure 82—UL Framing Example

8.3.6.3.5.3 Superframe Format

There are two frame structures, a control frame, which contains one or more control symbols, and a data frame, which contains a preamble symbol and one or more data symbols. As shown in Figure 83, a superframe is defined as a control frame followed by one or more data frames.

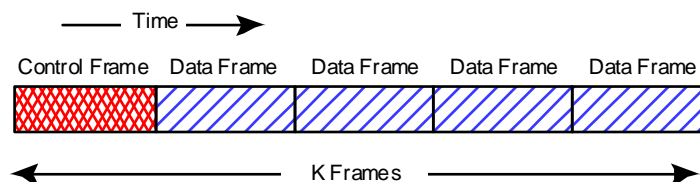


Figure 83—Superframe Structure

This superframe structure can be applied as shown in Figure 84. As with Mode B, the first two subchannels can be reserved for control functions such as ranging and contention based access. For the remaining subchannels, the superframe structure is offset so that the control frames are distributed throughout time and frequency.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

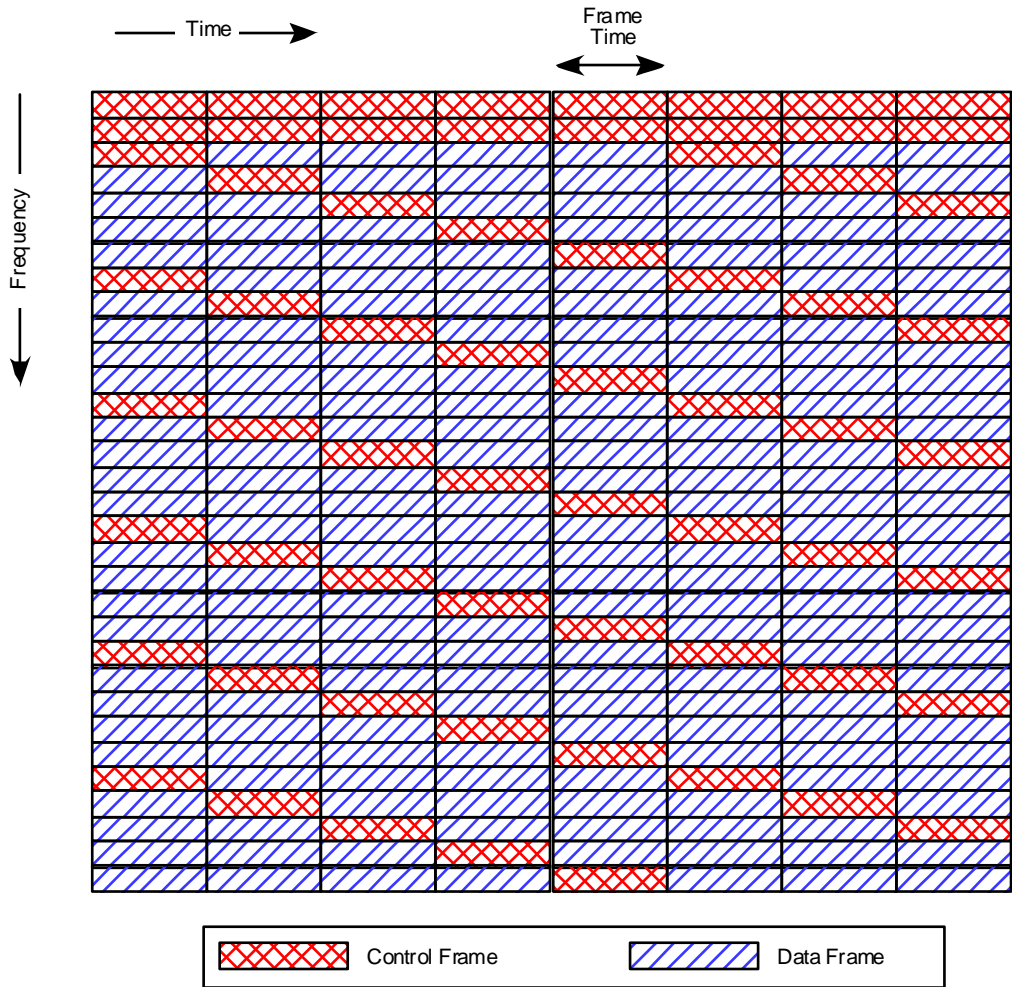


Figure 84—Superframe Layout

8.3.6.4 OFDM PHY Layer for license-exempt bands

8.3.6.4.1 Introduction

The PHY specified in this clause is intended for license exempt operation in the 2 to 11 GHz band in general, and the 5 GHz band in specific. In order to allow different deployment scenarios from dense populated areas (where sectorized environments and the high interference levels may require narrow channels) to sparse populated areas (where wider channels can help delivering better services at the same system cost), the PHY layer is allowed to operate with channel bandwidths of 10 MHz or 20 MHz and optionally 5 MHz. An compliant device must implement 10 MHz and/or 20 MHz channelization and may implement 5MHz channelization (see clause 8.3.6.4.2.3.1).

The PHY defines two mandatory modes 64 and 256 -FFT and one optional mode 2048-FFT. All modes shall only support TDD operation. The mandatory modes employ Time Division Multiple Access (TDMA) while the optional mode employs a combination of TDMA and Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access (OFDMA). The modes are summarized in Table 32.

Table 32—Mandatory and optional modes

Mode	Access method	FFT size	Status
A	TDMA	64	Mandatory
B	TDMA	256	Mandatory
C	OFDMA	2048	Optional

In order for a system to comply with this standard, it shall implement both mode A and mode B and may implement mode C. A compliant device shall be capable of facilitating devices using either mode A or mode B, but need not be capable of facilitating both modes in the same configuration.

8.3.6.4.2 Common elements

8.3.6.4.2.1 Symbol Description

The cyclic prefixes T_g (see Figure 56) are fractions 1/4, 1/8, 1/16 1/32 of T_s and must be provided with a minimum time-duration of 750 ns and a maximum time-duration of at most 6 μ s. If a fraction provides a time-duration below 750ns or above 6 μ s for a given FFT size and channelization, this fraction does not have to be implemented (see Table 21).

In addition to the PMP frame structure in clause 8.3.6.2.1, an optional frame structure (see Figure 85) is defined to facilitate mesh networks.

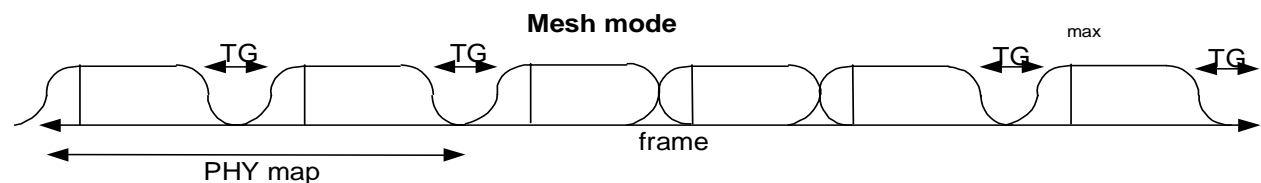


Figure 85—Mesh Frame Structure (optional)

In the optional mesh mode, a PHY map consisting of several control slots are allocated and the frame structure is built from node transmissions. The cell radius is dependent on the Transition GAP (TG), which is inserted before every and after the last PHY map. Random access uses the same method as the PMP mode. The number of PHY maps in the mesh mode shall be a network management variable.

8.3.6.4.2.2 Preambles

Preambles are special training sequences that are prepended to the OFDM symbols carrying data. The receiver uses them for signal detection, AGC convergence, carrier recovery, symbol timing recovery and equalization. The PHY uses a fully featured preamble and shortened versions of it depending on the burst position in the frame. The complete preamble is depicted in Figure 86 and consists of multiple short training symbols and 1 long training symbol.

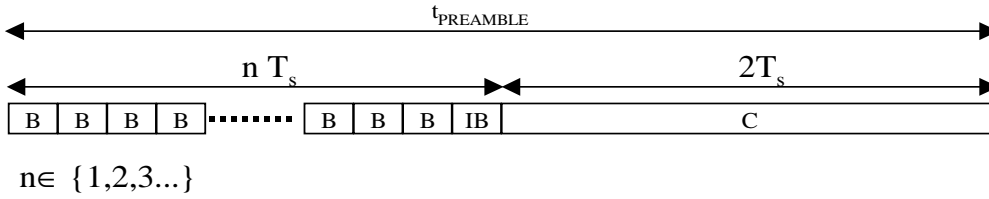


Figure 86—Complete Preamble Structure

A short training symbol (B) has no cyclic prefix and consists of 12 carriers with an FFT size of 16 modulated by the elements of the sequence (to discuss the factor):

$$S_{16_{-7,7}} = \{0, 1+j, -1-j, 1+j, -1-j, -1-j, 1+j, 0, -1-j, -1-j, 1+j, 1+j, 1+j, 1+j, 0\} \quad (25)$$

Equivalently, the same 12 carriers are spaced at 4 times the inter-carrier spacing with an FFT size of 64:

$$S_{16_{-31,31}} = \{0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1+j, 0, 0, 0, -1-j, 0, 0, 0, 1+j, 0, 0, 0, -1-j, 0, 0, 0, -1-j, 0, 0, 0, 1+j, 0, 0, 0, 0, \dots\} \quad (26)$$

$$S_{16_{-127,127}} = \begin{aligned} &\{ \quad 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1+j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, \dots \\ &\quad -1-j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1+j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, \dots \\ &\quad -1-j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, -1-j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, \dots \\ &\quad 1+j, 0, \dots \\ &\quad -1-j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, -1-j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, \dots \\ &\quad 1+j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1+j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, \dots \\ &\quad 1+j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1+j, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, \dots \\ &\quad 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 \} \end{aligned} \quad (27)$$

The last repetition of the short symbols is a sign-inverted copy of the previous short symbol B, i.e. IB=-B.

Having a period of only 16 samples, short training symbols are suitable for signal detection and for fast AGC. Having enlarged inter-carrier spacing, short training symbols can be used for coarse carrier recovery for an offset up to half of the carrier spacing. Table 33 summarizes the offset recovery capabilities for different channel bandwidths.

Table 33—Offset recovery capabilities

Channel BW (MHz)	Allowed Offset (ppm)
20	?
10	?
5	?

The long training symbol is an OFDM symbol generated with the same FFT size as the data symbols but with a cyclic prefix (guard interval or GI) extended so that the overall length is 2 times the nominal length of a data symbol (TBD). It is BPSK modulated with a known/fixed pattern. It may be used for fine carrier offset recovery, symbol timing recovery and equalization. The first two functions require the extended cyclic prefix; the equalization requires the same cyclic prefix as normal (data) OFDM symbols. For an FFT size of 64, the long training symbol is modulated by the sequence (TBD):

$$S_{64-31,31} = \{0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, -1, -1, 1, 1, 1, -1, 1, -1, 1, 1, 1, 1, -1, -1, 1, 1, -1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 0, \dots$$

$$1, -1, -1, 1, 1, -1, 1, -1, 1, -1, -1, -1, -1, 1, 1, -1, -1, 1, -1, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0\}$$

The preamble usage depends on the burst position within the frame. A shortened preamble that contains only the long training symbol is depicted in Figure 87.

I

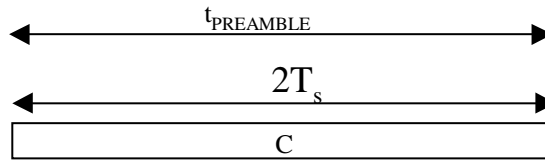


Figure 87—Shortened preamble: Long training symbol with large GI

8.3.6.4.2.3 Transmitter Requirements

8.3.6.4.2.3.1 Channelization

Channel center frequencies are defined at every integral multiple of 5 MHz above 5 GHz. The relationship between center frequency and channel number is given by the following equation:

$$\text{Channel center frequency} = 5000 + 2.5 n_{\text{ch}} \text{ (MHz)}$$

where $n_{\text{ch}} = 0, 1, \dots, 400$. This definition provides a 9-bit unique numbering system of all channels with 2.5 MHz spacing from 5 GHz to 6 GHz to provide flexibility to define channelization sets for all current and future regulatory

domains. The set of valid operating channel numbers by regulatory domain is defined in Table 34. The channels in parenthesis are optional, the others are mandatory.

Table 34—Channelization

Regulatory domain	Band (GHz)	Channelization (MHz)		
		20	10	(5)
USA	U-NII middle 5.25 -5.35	(104), 112, 120, 128, (136)	(102), 106, 110, 114, 118, 122, 126, 130, 134, (138)	(103), (105), (107), (109), (111), (113), (115), (117), (119), (121), (123), (125), (127), (129), (131), (133), (135), (137)
USA	U-NII upper 5.25-5.35	298, 306, 314, 322	(292), 296, 300, 304, 308, 312, 316, 320, 324,(328)	(293), (295), (297), (299), (301), (303), (305), (307), (309), (311), (313), (315), (317), (319), (321), (323), (325), (327)

Figure 88 shows the channelization scheme for this standard, which shall be used with the FCC U-NII frequency allocation. The middle U-NII sub-band accommodates 3 channels of 20MHz, while the upper U-NII band supports 4 channels. Both U-NII bands accommodate 8 channels of 10 MHz. Additionally, two optional 20 MHz channels are defined in the middle U-NII band and one 10 MHz channel in each of the bands. The 5 MHz channelization, which is optional, provides 18 channels in each band.

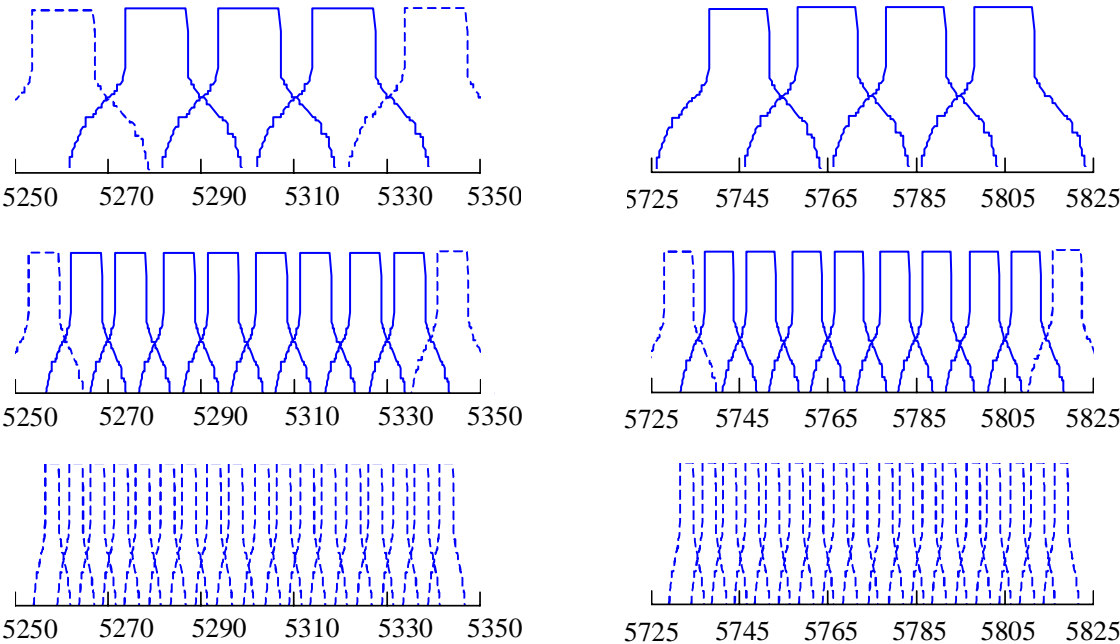


Figure 88—U-NII Frequency plan

8.3.6.4.2.3.2 Transmit spectral mask

The transmitted spectral density of the transmitted signal shall fall within the spectral mask as shown Figure 89 and Table 35. The measurements shall be made using 100 kHz resolution bandwidth and a 30 kHz video bandwidth. The 0 dBr level is the maximum power allowed by the relevant regulatory body.

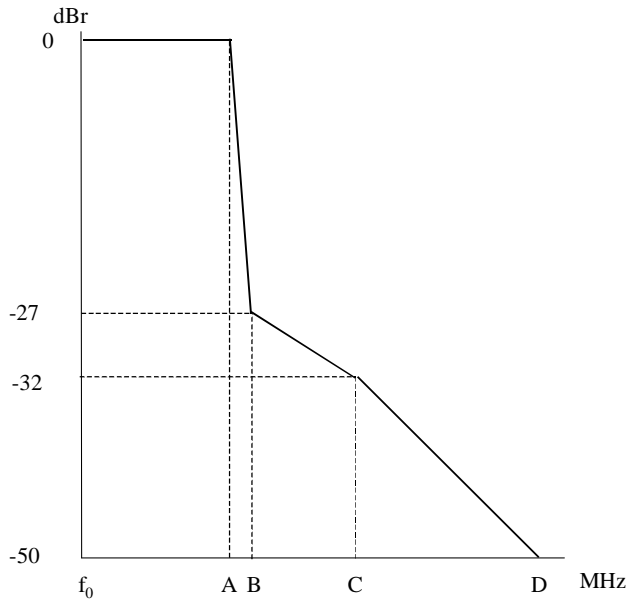


Figure 89—Transmit Spectral Mask (see Table 35)

Table 35—Transmit Spectral Mask Parameters

Chanelization (MHz)	A	B	C	D
20	9.5	10.5	19.5	29.5
10	4.25	TBD	TBD	TBD
5	2.25	TBD	TBD	TBD

8.3.6.4.2.3.3 Transmit Power Level Control

The transmitter shall support monotonic power level control of 45dB minimum with resolution of 3dB.

8.3.6.4.2.3.4 Transmitter Linearity

Review alternate approaches and how transmitter quality handled in 802.11a/b and similar standards. One suggested option is:

The transmitter linearity shall be sufficient to ensure minimal distortion of the transmitted OFDM signal. The test method will use a notch test method with the assistance of a test mode to create a notched OFDM signal. The average

depth of the notch shall be TBD dB measured at the transmitter output. Use of an EVM may be used as an alternate test method, but all equipment must support all defined test modes.

8.3.6.4.2.3.5 Transmitter Spectral Flatness

The average energy of the constellations in each of the n spectral lines shall deviate no more than the following:

Table 36—Spectral Flatness

Spectral Lines	Spectral Flatness
Spectral lines from $-n/2$ to -1 and $+1$ to $n/2$	± 2 dB from their average energy
Spectral lines from $-n$ to $-n/2$ and $+n/2$ to n	± 4 dB from their average energy

This data will be taken from the channel estimation step.

8.3.6.4.2.3.6 Transmitter Constellation Error and Test Method

This requirement specifies limits for Error Vector Magnitude (EVM) measurements for the constellation elements.

The definition and test method are specified in 802.11a clause 17.3.9.6.3. If this test is desired for 802.16.4, the definition can be copied straight from the 802.11a spec with the following addition:

For OFDMA modes, measurements will be taken with all subchannels active.

To separate EVM measurements for the BS and SS.

8.3.6.4.2.4 Receiver Requirements

8.3.6.4.2.4.1 Receiver Sensitivity

The packet error rate (PER) shall be less than TBD (%) at the power levels shown below for a standard message and test conditions. The measurement shall be taken at the antenna port or through a calibrated radiated test environment.

Table 37—Receiver Sensitivity

Channel Bandwidth (MHz)	Data Rate (Mbit/s)	Maximum Sensitivity (dBm)
20z		
20		
20		
10		
10		
10		
5		
5		
5		

Standard test message: TBD bytes of TBD format (possibly 2 std messages -short and long)

Test Conditions: room temp, no interference, conducted measurement if RF port available, radiated measurement in a calibrated test environment if antenna is integrated, FEC enabled

8.3.6.4.2.4.2 Receiver Adjacent and Alternate Channel Rejection

The adjacent channel rejection and alternate channel rejection shall be measured by setting the desired signal's strength 3dB above the rate dependent receiver sensitivity and raising the power level of the interfering signal until the specified error rate is obtained. The power difference between the interfering signal and the desired channel is the corresponding adjacent channel rejection. The interfering signal in the adjacent channel shall be a conformant OFDM signal, unsynchronized with the signal in the channel under test. For alternate channel testing the test method is identical except the interfering channel will be any channel other than the adjacent channel.

For the PHY to be compliant, the minimum rejection shall exceed the following:

Table 38—Minimum Adjacent and Non-Adjacent Channel Rejection

Channel Bandwidth (MHz)	Adjacent Channel Rejection (dB)	Non-Adjacent Channel Rejection (dB)
20	40?	50?
10	40?	50?
5	40?	50?

8.3.6.4.2.4.3 Receiver Interference Requirements

Interference may be mitigated through intelligent configuration and control, however it cannot be completely eliminated. The receiver must not degrade more than TBD dB when operating in the presence of the following interference signals:

Table 39—Interference Requirements

Signal Freq	User	Power Level (dB)
	Radar	
	ISM pt-pt	-10

Change clause for out of UNII band rejection and add to table.

8.3.6.4.2.4.4 Receiver Maximum Input Signal

The receiver shall be capable of receiving a maximum on-channel signal of -20dBm, and must tolerate a maximum signal of 0dBm without damage.

Limit may need to be adjusted to account for radiated vs injected measurements. TBD how to test for units with integrated antenna.

8.3.6.4.2.4.5 Receiver Linearity

The receiver shall have a minimum Input Intercept Point (IIP3) of 0dBm.

To change this spec to an IMD measurement and corresponds to the adjacent channel needs.

8.3.6.4.2.4.6 Receiver Gain Control and RSSI Parameters

The minimum RSSI resolution shall be 1dB with accuracy TBDdB.

TBD how to handle this internal spec need (reporting and adjusting power control and AGC loops)

8.3.6.4.2.5 Frequency Control Requirements

8.3.6.4.2.5.1 Transmit/Receive Center Frequency and Symbol Clock Frequency Tolerance

The transmitted center frequency, receive center frequency and the symbol clock frequency shall be derived from the same reference oscillator. At the BS the reference frequency tolerance shall be +/- 20ppm. At the SS, both the transmitted center frequency and the symbol clock frequency shall be synchronized to the BS with a tolerance of maximum 1% of the inter-carrier spacing.

For mesh capable devices, all devices shall have a +/- 20ppm maximum frequency tolerance and achieve synchronization to its neighboring nodes with a tolerance of maximum 3% of the inter-carrier spacing.

During the synchronization period as described in the 802.16 MAC, the SS shall acquire frequency synchronization with the specified tolerance before attempting any uplink transmission. During normal operation, the SS shall track the frequency changes and shall defer any transmission if synchronization is lost.

8.3.6.4.2.5.2 Frequency Lock Detect

All modems will monitor the status of the frequency lock detect and prevent transmission if the oscillators lose synchronization to the base station clock.

8.3.6.4.2.5.3 Phase Noise

Recommended phase noise mask for the SS and BS.

8.3.6.4.2.5.4 General Requirements

8.3.6.4.2.5.5 Temperature Range

To use BellCore temperature ranges:

Table 40—Operational Temperature Classes

Class	Range (°C)	Environment
1	[0,40]	
2	[-20,50]	
3	[-30,70]	
4	[-40,85]	

8.3.6.4.2.5.6 Antenna Interface

Any exposed transmit and receive antenna interface port shall be 50 ohms. It is permissible to integrate the antenna and eliminate any external RF port.

8.3.6.4.2.5.7 Indoor to Outdoor Unit Interface (Recommended Practice)

For systems deployed using an outdoor RF unit and an indoor modem the following interface is recommended:

- Transmit IF = ??
- Receive IF = ?? or same as transmit if TDD mode is used
- Reference frequency = ??
- Control communication channel = ??
- Tx/Rx Switching = ??

8.3.6.4.2.5.8 Diagnosis Features

??

8.3.6.4.2.6 Channel Coding

Data encoding is composed of three steps: randomizer, forward error correction (FEC) and interleaving. They shall be applied in this order at transmission. The complementary operations shall be applied in reverse order at reception. Table 41 describes the mandatory and optional coding schemes:

Table 41—Channel Coding Schemes

FEC	Interleaving	Mode		
		A	B	C
Concatenated RS and CC with zero tailing	8.3.6.4.2.6.5.1	Mandatory 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.1	Mandatory 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.1	-
Concatenated RS and CC with tail biting	8.3.6.4.2.6.5.1	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.1	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.1	-
Convolutional with zero tailing	8.3.6.4.2.6.5.1	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.2	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.2	-
Convolutional with tail biting	8.3.6.4.2.6.5.1	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.2	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.2	-
Concatenated RS and CC with tail biting	8.3.6.4.2.6.5.2	-	-	Mandatory 8.3.6.4.2.6.2.1
Turbo Product Codes	8.3.6.4.2.6.5.2	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.3	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.3	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.3
Turbo Convolutional Codes	8.3.6.4.2.6.5.2	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.4	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.4	Optional 8.3.6.4.2.6.4

8.3.6.4.2.6.1 Data randomizer (scrambler)

The data bytes to be transmitted are converted to a serial bit stream using the LSB first MSB last rule. The serial bit stream shall be passed through a data randomizer that uses the generator polynomial $R(X) = X^7 + X^4 + 1$ and is depicted in Figure 90. The same randomizer is used to scramble data at transmission and de-scramble received data.

In order to avoid retransmission of the same frame with the same initial state of the scrambler, the initial state of the scrambler will be variable, set at the beginning of an OFDM/OFDMA burst to a TBD parameter.

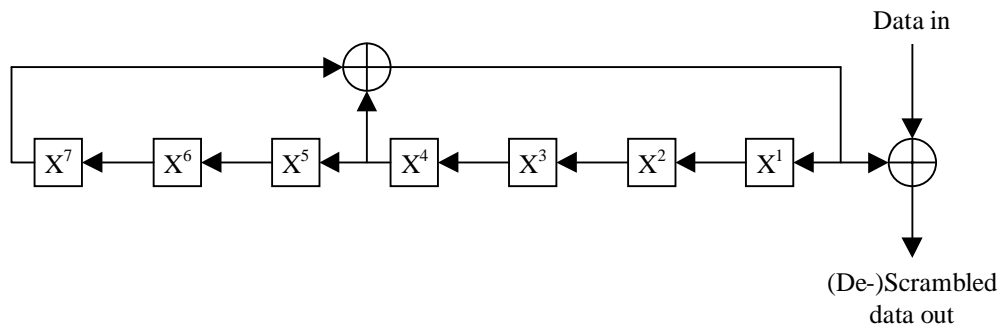


Figure 90—Data Randomizer

8.3.6.4.2.6.2 FEC

8.3.6.4.2.6.2.1 Concatenated Reed-Solomon - Convolutional Coding

See clause 8.3.6.3.2.1.2.

The following amendments apply:

Code rates of 1/2 and 3/4 apply to BPSK. The coding rates for BPSK are described in Table 43 and Table 44.

8.3.6.4.2.6.2.2 Convolutional encoder (Optional)

For 64-FFT and 256-FFT an optional convolutional encoder can be used instead of the concatenated RS and convolutional coding.

The serial data from randomizer shall be coded with a convolutional encoder of coding rate $R=1/2$, $2/3$ or $3/4$ corresponding to the desired data rate. The convolutional encoder shall use the industry standard generator polynomials $g_0=133_{\text{oct}}$ and $g_1=171_{\text{oct}}$ of rate $R=1/2$ as shown in Figure 91. Bit denoted as "A" shall output from the encoder before the bit denoted as "B". Rates of $2/3$ and $3/4$ shall be derived by employing "puncturing", i.e. by omitting some of the encoded bits in the transmitter based on known patterns. The puncturing patterns are illustrated in Figure 92 for $R=3/4$ and Figure 93 for $R=2/3$. The rate $R=1/2$ is illustrated in Figure 94. In the receiver, decoding by the Viterbi algorithm is recommended.

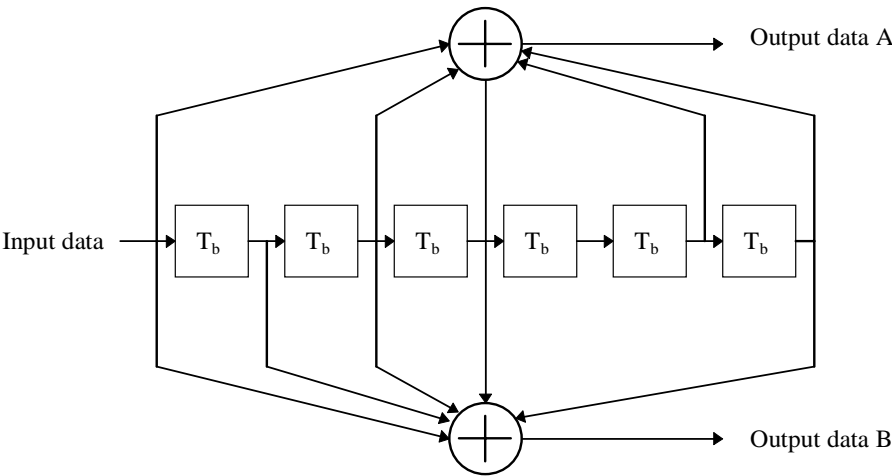


Figure 91—Convolutional Encoder

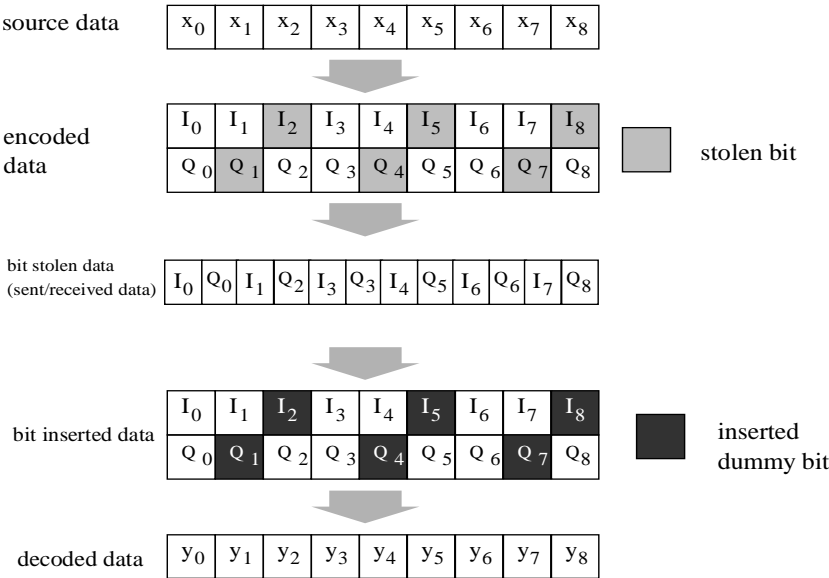
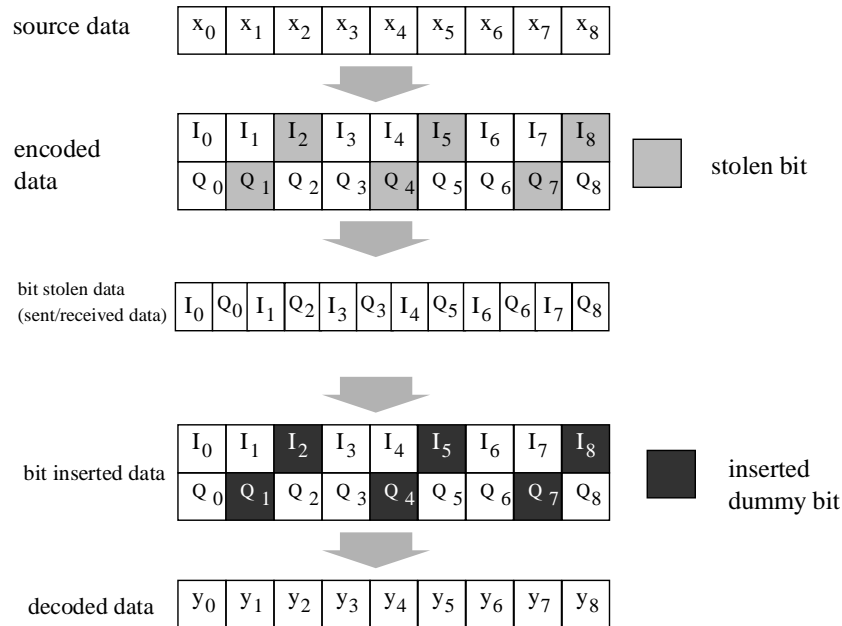
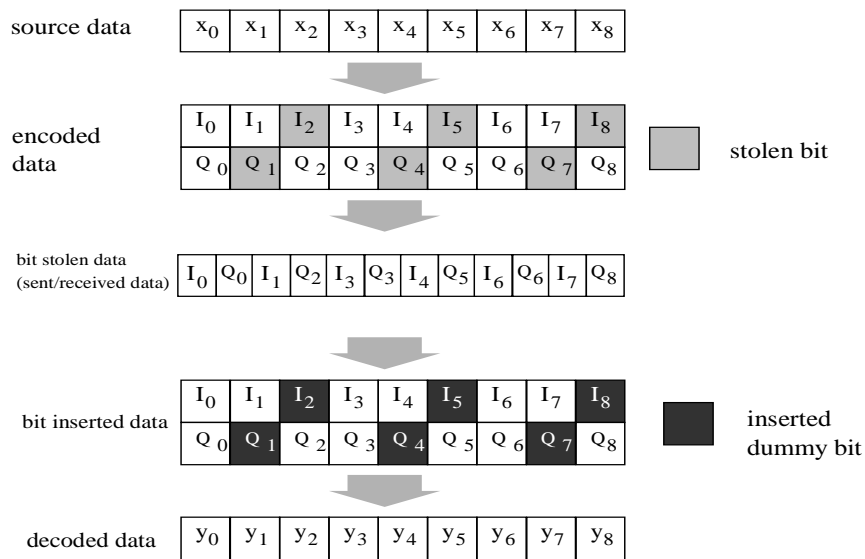


Figure 92—Puncturing for R=3/4, Transmission and Reception

**Figure 93—Puncturing for R=2/3, Transmission and Reception****Figure 94—Puncturing for R=1/2, Transmission and Reception**

8.3.6.4.2.6.3 Turbo Product Coding

The Turbo Product Codes and shortening methods used for the OFDM PHY layer (licensed bands) are generically described in clause 8.3.3.1.5.3, with specific codes provided in clause 8.3.6.3.2.2.2 and 8.3.6.3.4.2.2.2.

8.3.6.4.2.6.4 Turbo Convolutional Coding

Turbo Convolutional Coding is based on Recursive Systematic Convolutional (RSC) codes with a base rate of 1/2. The frames are encoded in blocks. Figure 95 illustrates the overall encoding process.

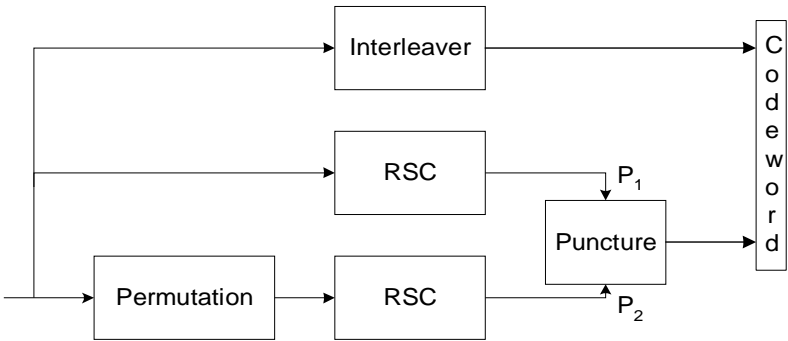


Figure 95—Turbo Encoder

The RSC coder is shown in Figure 96.

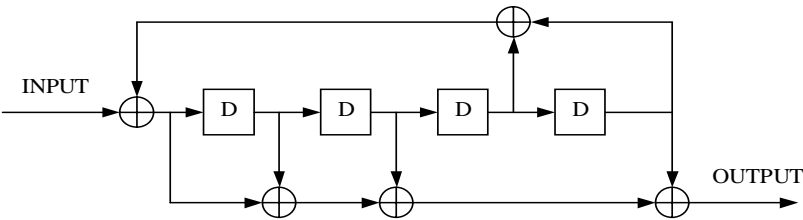


Figure 96—RSC Encoder

Each constituent code shall be terminated using a tail biting scheme.

Codes rates of 1/2, 2/3 and 3/4, are supported via puncturing. Table 42 lists the puncture patterns used to implement these rates.

Table 42—Puncturing patterns

Rate	Puncturing Pattern						
1/2	P ₁	1	0				
	P ₂	0	1				
2/3	P ₁	1	0	0	0		
	P ₂	0	0	1	0		
3/4	P ₁	1	0	0	0	0	0
	P ₂	0	0	0	1	0	0

All the systematic bits are transmitted for each rate.

8.3.6.4.2.6.5 Interleaving

8.3.6.4.2.6.5.1 Mode A and Mode B

All encoded data bits shall be interleaved by block interleaver with a block size corresponding to the number of coded bits per OFDM symbol, N_{CBPS} . The interleaver is defined by a two step permutation. The first ensures that adjacent coded bits are mapped onto nonadjacent sub-carriers. The second permutation insures that adjacent coded bits are mapped alternately onto less or more significant bits of the constellation, thus avoiding long runs of lowly reliable bits (LSB).

Let N_{BPSC} be the number of bits per sub-carrier, i.e. 1, 2, 4 or 6 for BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM, respectively. Let $s = \max(N_{BPSC}/2, 1)$. Let k be the index of the coded bit before the first permutation at transmission, m be the index after the first and before the second permutation and j be the index after the second permutation, just prior to modulation mapping.

The first permutation is defined by the rule:

$$m = (N_{CBPS}/16) \cdot k_{mod 16} + \text{floor}(k/16) \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, N_{CBPS} \quad (28)$$

The second permutation is defined by the rule:

$$j = s \cdot \text{floor}(m/s) + (m + N_{CBPS} - \text{floor}(16 \cdot m/N_{CBPS}))_{mod s} \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, N_{CBPS} \quad (29)$$

The deinterleaver, which performs the inverse operation, is also defined by two permutations. Let j be the index of the received bit before the first permutation, m be the index after the first and before the second permutation and k be the index after the second permutation, just prior to delivering the coded bits to the convolutional decoder.

The first permutation is defined by the rule:

$$m = s \cdot \text{floor}(j/s) + (m + \text{floor}(16 \cdot j/N_{CBPS}))_{mod s} \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, N_{CBPS} \quad (30)$$

The second permutation is defined by the rule:

$$k = 16 \cdot m - (N_{CBPS} - 1) \cdot \text{floor}(16 \cdot m/N_{CBPS}) \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, N_{CBPS} \quad (31)$$

The first permutation in the deinterleaver is the inverse of the second permutation in the interleaver, and conversely.

8.3.6.4.2.6.5.2 Mode C

See clause 8.3.6.3.2.1.4 and 8.3.6.3.4.2.3.

8.3.6.4.2.6.5.3 Turbo Convolutional Coding specific Interleaver

The size of the code permutter is equal to the information bits in a block (see ???, ??? and ???). To generate the interleaver of size N , two sets of values are stored in memory. The first set of values is size n and the second set of values is size m , where $n \cdot m = N$. The n stored values are labeled $n[0..n-1]$ and the m stored values are labeled $m[0..m-1]$. The interleaved addresses $j[0..N-1]$ are generated as follows:

For first n addresses: $j[0 \dots n-1] = n[0 \dots n-1]$

Subsequent sets of n addresses are generated using: $j[x] = (j[x-n] + m[x])_{\text{mod } N}$

Tables for n and m will be provided once frame sizes have been agreed upon.

For each frame size a channel interleaver of size N is also defined. The channel interleaver is applied to the information bits after encoding by the first encoder. The interleaver $I(x)$ is defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} I(0) &= C \\ I(x) &= [I(x-1) + p]_{\text{mod } N} \end{aligned} \quad (32)$$

8.3.6.4.2.7 Control mechanisms

8.3.6.4.2.7.1 Network entry

The base station shall allocate a number of symbols every few frames for network entry. This number of symbols shall be large enough to contain the maximum Round Trip Duration (RTD_{max}) plus a long preamble uplink burst with one OFDM symbol in data. A CPE attempting to enter the network shall listen to the base station until such a period is scheduled and send a network entry request using a long preamble uplink burst.

The PHY map must include the knowledge of the power used in the PHY map burst transmission (TxP_PHYmap). The power used for transmitting the network entry burst is thus TxP_NetworkEntry = TxP_PHYmap - RSSI_{max} + Rx_sensitivity + M, in which RSSI_{max} is the maximum signal level received from the basestation and Rx_sensitivity is the receiver sensitivity of the modulation to be used (BPSK, rate TBD) and M is a margin factor, or the maximum available which one is less. In the first attempt M is TBD dB (proposal 3dB) and if the attempt fails, the output power may be increased by 3dB per retry. For the mesh mode the procedure is similar with the exception that the used output power is chosen according to the furthest neighbor (from path loss perspective) to be reached.

8.3.6.4.2.7.2 Ranging

See clause 8.3.6.3.2.4.2.

8.3.6.4.3 Mode A - OFDM, 64 FFT

8.3.6.4.3.1 OFDM Symbol Parameters

See 8.3.6.3.3.1 where applicable for 64-FFT.

8.3.6.4.3.2 Channel Coding

8.3.6.4.3.2.1 FEC

8.3.6.4.3.2.1.1 Concatenated Reed-Solomon - Convolutional Coding

See clause 8.3.6.4.4.2.1.1.

8.3.6.4.3.3 Control Mechanisms

8.3.6.4.3.3.1 Ranging

See clause 8.3.6.4.4.3.1.

8.3.6.4.3.3.2 Bandwidth Requests

See clause 8.3.6.4.4.3.2.

8.3.6.4.4 Mode B - OFDM, 256 FFT

8.3.6.4.4.1 OFDM Symbol Parameters

See 8.3.6.3.3.1 where applicable for 256-FFT. .

8.3.6.4.4.2 Channel Coding

8.3.6.4.4.2.1 FEC

8.3.6.4.4.2.1.1 Concatenated Reed-Solomon - Convolutional Coding

In addition to Table 24, the following code rates are defined for BPSK in Table 43.

Table 43—BPSK Channel Coding

Modulation	Block Size (Bytes)	Overall Coding Rate	RS Code	CC Code rate
BPSK	12	1/2	(?,?,?)	2/3
BPSK	18	~3/4	(?,?,?)	5/6

8.3.6.4.4.3 Control Mechanisms

8.3.6.4.4.3.1 Ranging

See clause 8.3.6.3.3.3.1.

In the optional Mesh mode, the ranging and network entry shall be done in the control-slots.

8.3.6.4.4.3.2 Bandwidth requests

See clause 8.3.6.3.3.3.2.

8.3.6.4.5 Mode C - OFDMA (optional)

See 8.3.6.3.4.1 where applicable for 2048-FFT.

8.3.6.4.5.1 Channel Coding

8.3.6.4.5.1.1 FEC

8.3.6.4.5.1.1.1Concatenated Reed-Solomon - Convolutional Coding

In addition to Table 29, the following code rates are defined for BPSK in Table 43.

Table 44—BPSK Channel Coding

Modulation	Block Size (Bytes)	Overall Coding Rate	RS Code	CC Code Rate
BPSK	13	1/2	(?;?,?)	2/3
BPSK	26	~3/4	(?;?,?)	5/6

8.3.6.4.5.2 Control Mechanisms

8.3.6.4.5.2.1 Ranging

See clause 8.3.6.3.4.3.1.

8.3.6.4.5.2.2 Bandwidth requests

See clause 8.3.6.3.4.3.2.

8.3.7 Bibliography

- [1] ETSI EN 301021 v1.4.1 (2001/03) Fixed Radio Systems; Point-to-multipoint equipment; Time division Multiple access (TDMA); Point-to-Multipoint digital radio systems bands in the range 3 GHz to 11 GHz
- [2] Title 47, part 15, <http://www.fcc.gov/.....>, Federal Communications Commission
- [3] Drury G., Markarian G., Pickavance K. "Coding and Modulation in Digital Television", KLUWER ACADEMIC Publishers, 2000, USA.
- [4] H. Sari, G. Karam, and I. Jeanclaude, "Channel Equalization and Carrier Synchronization in OFDM systems," in Audio and Video Digital Radio Broad- casting Systems and Techniques, R. de Gaudenzi and M. Luise (Editors), pp. 191-202, Elsevier Science Publishers, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 1994. (Proceedings of the International Tirrenia Workshop in Digital Communications, September 1993, Tirrenia, Italy.)
- [5] V. Tarokh and H. Jafarkhani, "On the Computation and Reduction of the Peak-to-Average Ratio in Multicarrier Communications", IEEE Trans. Commun., Vol. 48, No. 1, Jan., 2000, p. 37-44.
- [6] C. Van den Bos, M.H.L. Kouwenhoven and W.A. Serdijn, "The Influence of Nonlinear Distortion on OFDM Bit Error Rate", Proc. Int. Conf. On Commun., New Orleans, June, 2000.
- [7] M.V. Clark, "Adaptive Frequency-Domain Equalization and Diversity Combining for Broadband Wireless Communications", IEEE JSAC, Vol. 16, No. 8, Oct. 1998, pp. 1385-1395.
- [8] D. Falconer and S. L. Ariyavisitakul, "Frequency Domain Equalization for 2 -11 GHz Fixed Broadband Wireless systems", Tutorial, presented during Session#11 of IEEE802.16 in Ottawa, Canada, January 22, 2001.
- [9] A. Milewski, "Periodic Sequences with Optimal Properties for Channel Estimation and Fast Start-up Equalization", IEEE J. Research and Development, Sept. 1983, pp. 426-431.
- [10] H. Sari, G. Karam and I. Jeanclaude, "Transmission Techniques for Digital Terrestrial TV Broadcasting", IEEE Comm. Mag., Vol. 33, No. 2, Feb. 1995, pp. 100-109.
- [11] H. Sari, G. Karam, and I. Jeanclaude, "An Analysis of Orthogonal Frequency-Division Multiplexing for Mobile Radio Applications," VTC '94 Conf. Rec., vol. 3, pp. 1635-1639, June 1994, Stockholm, Sweden.
- [12] H. Sari, G. Karam, and I. Jeanclaude, "Frequency-Domain Equalization of Mobile Radio and Terrestrial Broadcast Channels," GLOBECOM '94 Conf. Rec., vol. 1, pp. 1-5, Nov.-Dec. 1994, San Francisco, California.
- [13] H. Sari, "Channel Equalization and Carrier Synchronization Issues in Multicarrier Transmission," Proc. IEEE Workshop on Synchronization and Equalization in Digital Communications, pp. 29-36, May 1995, Ghent, Belgium.
- [14] S. Alamouti, "A simple transmit diversity scheme for wireless communications," IEEE Journal on Select Areas in Communications, vol. 16, no. 8, Oct. 1998, pp. 1451-1458.
- [15] J.W. Porter and J.A. Thweatt, "Microwave Propagation Characteristics in the MMDS Frequency Band" Proc. International Conference On Communications, New Orleans, June 2000.
- [16] V. Erceg et al., "A model for the multipath Delay Profile of Fixed wireless Channels," IEEE JSAC, vol. 17 no.3, March 1999, pp.399-410
- [17] Jakes, W.C. , " A comparison of specificSpace Diversity Techniques for reduction of Fast Fading in UHF Mobile Radio Systems," IEEE Transactions on vehicular technology, Vol. VT-20, No. 4 pp.81-93, November 1971.

- [18] A. Czylik, "Comparison Between Adaptive OFDM and Single Carrier Modulation with Frequency Domain Equalization", Proc. VTC '97, Phoenix , May 1997, p. 865-869
- [19] IEEE802.16.3p-00/39
- [20] V. Aue, G.P. Fettweis and R. Valenzuela, "Comparison of the Performance of Linearly Equalized Single Carrier and Coded OFDM over Frequency Selective Fading Channels Using the Random Coding Technique", Proc. ICC '98, p. 753-757.
- [21] H. Sari, Y. Levy, and G. Karam, "Orthogonal Frequency-Division Multiple Access for the Return Channel on CATV Networks," ICT '96 Conf. Rec., vol. 1, pp. 52-57, April 1996, Istanbul, Turkey.
- [22] H. Sari and G. Karam, "Orthogonal Frequency-Division Multiple Access and its Application to CATV Networks," European Transactions on Telecommunications (ETT), vol. 9, no. 6, pp. 507-516, November - December 1998.
- [23] A. Cantoni and L.C. Godara, "Fast Algorithm for Time Domain Broad Band Adaptive Array Processing", IEEE Trans. Aerosp. Electr. Syst. AES-18, 682, September 1982.
- [24] Siavash M. Alamouti, "A Simple Transmit Diversity Technique for Wireless Communications", IEEE journal on selected areas in communications, VOL.16, No. 8, pages 1451-1458, October 1998=
- [25] IEEE802.11a 802.11-98/156r2 "Updated submission template for Tga -revision 2."
- [26] C. Tellambura, Y.J. Guo and S.K. Barton: Equalizer Performance for HiperLAN Indoor channels", Wireless Personal Communications vol. 3, pp. 397-410 Feb. 1996.
- [27] IEEE 802.11 Wireless LAN standard: high speed Physical layer in the 5Ghz Band.

8.3.8 Annex TPC

Pending rewrite, the part of the original annex now redundant with 8.3.3.1.5.3 has been cut.

8.3.8.1 Example of a Shortened 2-Dimensional TPC

For example, assume a 456-bit block size is required with a code rate of approximately 0.6. The base code chosen before shortening is the $(32,26)*(32,26)$ code which has a data size of 676 bits. Shortening all rows by 5 bits and all columns by 4 bits results in a $(27,21)*(28,22)$ code, with a data size of 462 bits. To get the exact block size, the first row of the product is shortened by an additional 6 bits. The final code is a $(750,456)$ code, with a code rate of 0.608. Figure 97 shows the structure of the resultant block.

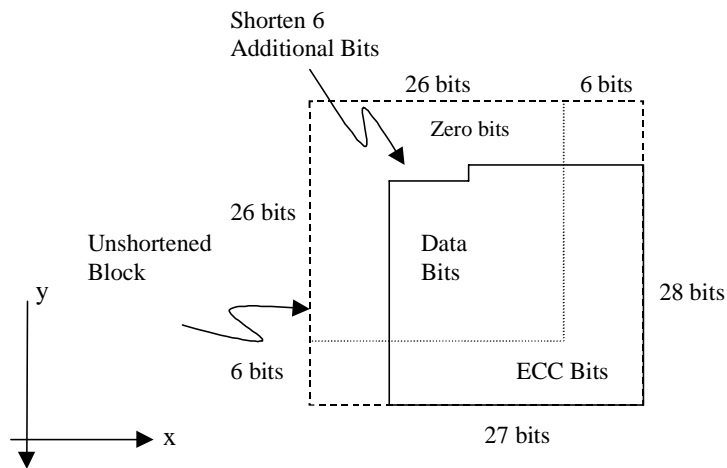


Figure 97—Structure of Shortened 2d Block

Modifications to the encoder to support shortening are minimal. The shortening procedure is trivial, and yet an extremely powerful tool that enables construction of a very versatile code set.

8.3.8.2 Iterative Decoding

Huge performance advantages may be directly associated with the decoding mechanism for product codes. There are many different ways to decode product codes and each has its merits, however, the goal is maximum performance for a manageable level of complexity.

It is known that if it is possible to use unquantized information (so called soft information) from the demodulator to decode an error correcting code, then an additional gain of up to 2 dB over fully quantized (hard decision) information is achievable. It is therefore desirable to have soft information decision available to the TPC decoder.

Of course, we could in theory consider the decoding of this code a single linear code of size $(n_x * n_y * n_z, k_x * k_y * k_z)$, using a soft decision decoder, but this will in general (apart from the smallest, and of course worst performing) be prohibitively complex.

It makes sense therefore, since these codes are constructed from (simple) constituent code that these soft decoders are used to decode the overall code. However until recently there have only been hard decision decoders for these constituent decoders. In recent years the computational power of devices has made it possible to consider (sub optimal) soft decision decoders for all linear codes. This is only half the solution as the main difficulty is with passing the information from one decoder to the next (i.e. when switching from decoding the rows to decoding the columns). For this, accuracy will need to be kept to a maximum, and so using soft input soft output (SISO) decoders will need to be con-

sidered. This is such that an estimate of the transmitted code word may be found and also an indication of the reliability. This new estimate may then be passed onto the next decoding cycle. Inevitably, there will be some degradation from optimal if we are to achieve our decoding using this method, but it does enable the complexity to be reduced to a level that can be implemented. Also, studies have shown that this degradation is very small, so this decoding system is very powerful.

What follows now is an explanation regarding the iterative nature of the decoding procedure. If we consider that, given 2-D TPC block, we define the first round of row and column decoding as a single iteration. We may then perform further iterations, if required. Thus, the main areas of investigation are that of the SISOs, and that of using some previously decoded information in subsequent decoding operations. These are both separate and yet connected areas of interest, as shall be explained.

With regards to the SISOs, there are many different methods including the following which have been described in detail in published academic papers:

- Soft-Output Viterbi Algorithm (SOVA) [20]
- The modified Chase algorithm [18]
- The BCJR algorithm [19],

There have been many other papers explaining these algorithms both as independent algorithms for coding schemes and as part of turbo type decoding schemes. It must be noted that these are not the only algorithms that can achieve soft input soft output style decoding, but they are at present the most readily cited in academic literature.

Each block in a product code is decoded using the information from a previous block decoding. This is then repeated as many times as. In this way, each decoding iteration builds on the previous decoding performance.

Figure 98 illustrates the decoding of a 2-D TPC. Note here that prior to each decoding there needs to be a mathematical operation on all the data we have at that particular time, that is the current estimate of the decoded bits, the original estimate from the demodulator (this will not be used in the first decoding) and the channel information (where applicable).

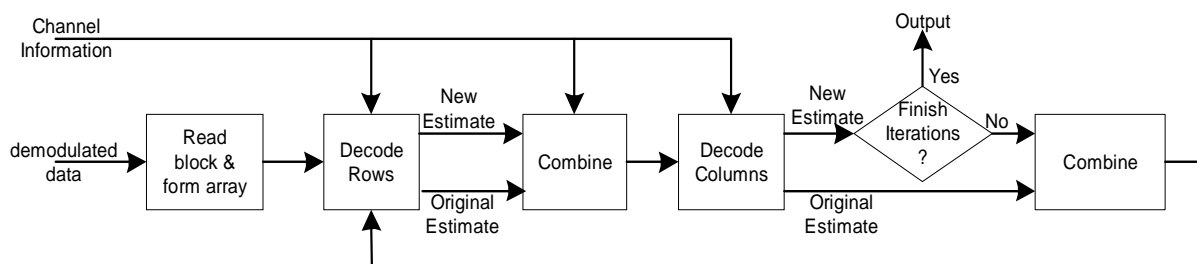


Figure 98—2-D TPC Decoding Procedure

It can easily be seen from Figure 98 that the iteration idea is applicable to one complete decoding of the rows and one complete decoding of the columns.

There is an obvious question as to how the iteration procedure is terminated. This is a question only answerable by the system provider and depends on performance and delay; more iterations imply better performance as the expense of a larger latency. Of course, over clocking the system in comparison can significantly reduce the latency. When considering hardware, the problem of varying delays may be encountered, thus it may be advantageous to fix the number of iterations performed.

8.3.9 Annex License-exempt

8.3.9.1 Coexistence in middle UNII band: Interference and Sharing Mechanisms

8.3.9.1.1 General

The Wireless HUMAN Standard-based systems that will operate in the middle U-NII band (5.25-5.35 GHz) will have to share this band with a number of other systems (e.g., Earth Exploratory Satellite (active) Service (EESS) Synthetic Aperture Radars (SARs), Wireless HUMAN Standard-based systems, non-standard point-to-multipoint Broadband Fixed Wireless Access(BFWA) systems, terrestrial Radars, and IEEE 802.11a , 802.15 and Hiperlan/2 Wireless LANs). As this is a License-Exempt (LE) band these diverse systems will often be operated in the same geographical area by different operators. Moreover besides having to meet local Regulatory requirements (e.g., in the USA the FCC Subpart E Requirements) the Wireless HUMAN Standard-based systems will also be called to meet global agreements; e.g., from the World Radiocommunications Conference (WRC).

The goal of this Section is to identify (and where possible quantify) the interference requirements and identify mechanism that can be used by the Wireless HUMAN Standard-based systems to successfully share spectrum and geographical location with the likely to be encountered diverse systems.

8.3.9.1.2 EESS SAR interference requirement

This interference Wireless HUMAN interference requirement is considered first as it stems from the 1997 World Radiocommunications Conference (WRC '97) that allocated the 5250-5350MHz and 5350-5460 MHz bands on a world wide-primary basis to radiolocation services. These bands are currently also allocated on a world wide-primary basis to active space-borne sensors, including SARs (e.g., SAR 1-4). For the Characteristics of these SARs see Appendix 2 in ITU-R WP7C/126, "Analysis of Potential interference Between Spaceborne SARs and Wireless High speed Local Area Networks Around 5.3.GHz.". The "primary basis" classification means that it is a requirement that must be met by Wireless HUMAN Standard-based systems. The clauses that follow identify mechanisms that can be used to enable the Wireless HUMAN Standard-based systems to meet the interference requirements of EESS SAR sensors.

8.3.9.1.3 Antenna directivity to mitigate interference to EESS

What follows gives an indication of the interference that Wireless HUMAN based BFWA systems can cause to SARs operating in Middle U-NII band, and identify means for minimization of this interference. In particular it has been shown by published results of ITU-R studies that BFWA antenna directivity is effective in minimizing interference to SAR-4, (e.g., USA ITU-R WP7C/24 Contribution). Table 45 shows that use of 6dB antenna directivity can decrease the SAR-4 interference by 4dB.

Note: The value of antenna directivity that should be specified requires trade-off studies with the other mechanism. SAR-4 is used because the SAR-4 system is more interference sensitive than SAR-3 and -4, and the SAR-4 center frequency is 5.3GHz.

The SAR-4 Synthetic Aperture Radar scans a path from 20° to 55° from Nadir. This corresponds to Earth incident angles of 21° and 60°-which can be translated to angles of 69° and 30° with respect to the horizon. That is, any radiation from U-NII devices within that angular range could cause/contribute to satellite interference.

An approach that can be used in analyzing the interference potential from Middle U-NII BFWA systems into spaceborne SAR-4 receiver is to determine the worst case signal power received from a single BFWA transmitter at the spaceborne SAR. Then, the single interferer margin can be calculated by comparing the single BFWA interferer level

with the SAR-4 interference threshold. Knowing the SAR-4 footprint, the allowable density of active BFWA transmitters can then be calculated, if a positive margin results from a single BFWA interferer.

Table 45—Single U-NII BFWA to SAR-4 Interference

Parameter	System	Value	dB
Transmitted Power (W)	BFWA1	0.25	-6.02
	BFWA2	0.25	-6.05
Building Loss (dB)	-	0	0
Antenna High Elevation TX Gain (dB)	BFWA1	0	0
	BFWA2	-4	-4
Antenna Gain, RX (dB)	-	44.52	44.52
Polarization Loss (dB)	-	3	-3
Wavelength (m)		0.0565	24.96
$(4\pi)^2$		0.00633	-21.98
Distance (km)		425.67	-112.58
Power RX (dBW)	BFWA1	-	-124.03
	BFWA2	-	-128.03
Noise Figure (dB)	-	4.62	4.62
kT	-	$4 \cdot 10^{-21}$	-203.98
RX Bandwidth (MHz)	-	46	76.63
Noise Power (dBW)	-	-	-122.73
SAR-4 Interference Threshold (I/N=-6dB)	-	-	128.71
Margin (dB)	BFWA1	-	-4.71
	BFWA2	-	-0.71

Table 45 shows the signal power at the SAR-4 receiver from a transmitter with power output of -6 dBW (24 dBm) and an isotropic radiator with unity gain at all look angles.. The space loss at angles of 21° and 60°, receive antenna gain, polarization loss, scattering gain and satellite interference threshold are derived from ITU-R reports. The reference margin is the difference between the Signal Power at the Satellite Receiver and the Satellite Interference Threshold. The negative margin numbers indicate that radiating an EIRP of 24 dBm toward the satellite will exceed the interference threshold. Fortunately, real-world antennas do not exhibit unity gain at high elevation look angles, and this feature can be used to mitigate interference

A conclusion that can be drawn is that antenna directivity, if properly utilized, will provide interference margin for multiple transmitters. However, it should be noted that the satellite footprint is large (53 sq km at 20° from Nadir and 208 sq km at 55° from Nadir). Therefore, given the potential variables associated with the design, installation and maintenance of the various unlicensed transmitters, antenna directivity alone may not be sufficient to assure non-interference.

It should also be noted that antenna characteristics vary from antenna to antenna and from manufacturer to manufacturer. Also, the physical environment at the antenna mounting site can degrade the off-beam lobes of many antennas,

especially omni-directional and directional antennas with no/small backplanes. Therefore, designers/installers should not assume published patterns and antenna range measurements are totally reliable.

8.3.9.1.4 DFS to mitigate interference

As frequency planning is not practical in licensed-exempt bands, Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) can be used to avoid assigning a channel to a channel occupied by another system. DFS action will be based on Subscriber Unit (SU) and/or Access Point (AP) received signal measurements (during idle channel conditions) and comparing the measurements to a threshold based on the required C/I parameter.

Considering that a Wireless HUMAN-based devices will cohabit the licensed exempt bands with other Wireless HUMAN-based devices and non-Wireless HUMAN-based devices, detailed DFS parameter description is needed for intra- and inter-system interference estimations. This inter-system interference includes coexistence considerations for such WRC 1997 globally primary assignments as Earth Exploratory Satellite Service SARs, and military radars. Wireless HUMAN-based intra-system interference estimates are also needed to assure that the desired level of performance is also possible.

8.3.9.1.5 Transmitted power control to mitigate interference

With power control, the EIRP of some transmitters will be below the permissible level. Therefore, an estimate of total interference within the footprint could be as much as 'n' dB below the reference value. However, this assumption might well be negated as the subscriber population grows and interference between neighbors increase-in which case, the transmitted EIRP could remain near the legal limit.

8.3.9.1.6 Antenna polarization to mitigate interference

The margin calculation in Table 45 includes 3 dB polarization loss. The fact that most P-MP systems rely on polarization for maximizing channelization, as many as half of the U-NII transmitters in a given area could be transmitting on each polarization. If so, the 3 dB polarization loss may not be fully realizable.

If the satellite were restricted to one linear polarization and the U-NII transmitters were restricted to the other linear polarization, greater polarization isolation could be achieved. Given the operational needs of both services, this is unlikely to happen.

8.3.9.1.7 No-transmit mode when a Spaceborne SAR is in the area

Earth Resources Satellites operate at very precise orbits, therefore, the Ephemeris (orbital position correlated to time) of the satellites can be calculated with great accuracy. If an Ephemeris calculator is included in the stations, and/or in the networks, the stations could be muted during the satellite pass. This would amount to a muting time of approximately 15 seconds per satellite pass-typically 5-10 days per pass. Coupled with antenna directivity, this feature would allow virtually any number of stations to operate within the satellite footprint. The main concern with Ephemeris calculations the ability to maintain a reliable muting process over time. To do so requires as a minimum: 1) monitoring individual stations to assure that muting is taking place at the correct time, 2) maintenance process that assure prompt repair of faulty stations, 3) capability to update Ephemeris algorithms should orbital/time corrections be required, 4) adding new satellites as they are launched.

8.3.9.1.8 Other ways to mitigate interference

8.3.9.2 Recommended practice for cellular & sectorized operation

8.3.9.2.1 Time synchronization in sectorized environments

In sectorized environments, where several base-stations are collocated in the same hub, the co-channel and adjacent channel interference can be significantly reduced if all base-stations are frame synchronized, i.e. they switch between

transmit and receive and reverse at the same time. The reduction in co-channel and adjacent channel interference comes at the expense of the bandwidth usage because the partition between uplink and downlink cannot be optimized separately for each base station. For synchronization, the base-stations should use the same frame size and the same uplink/downlink partition. They should also be synchronized to a common time reference. A hub controller should be able to change the frame size and the uplink/downlink partition simultaneously in all base-stations that belong to that hub. Also, to preserve synchronization over a long period of time, the base-stations should use a common frequency reference.

If this feature is to be implemented, it is recommended that the BS should be able to synchronize the start of the MAC frame with 1 Hz pulses received on an external input. The same pulses should trigger changes in the frame size and uplink/downlink partition in all BS's at the same time. In other words, after the hub controller has updated these two parameters in each base-station, changes should take place simultaneously in all base-stations at the next synchronization pulse. To preserve synchronization over a long period of time, the base-station should be able to lock its reference frequency to an external 10 MHz reference frequency. It is recommended that the electrical specifications for the 1 Hz and 10 MHz inputs, should be compatible with the GPS. However, it is not required to use GPS for synchronization.

8.3.9.2.2 Time synchronization in cellular environments

Synchronization can be extended beyond a single hub, to the network level, if all hubs use a common time and frequency reference, like the GPS. Such synchronization makes the in-system interference deterministic, which can facilitate various interference mitigation techniques:

- Smart across-network UL/DL scheduling to avoid interference in sensitive areas
- Insertion of silence periods in some sectors/hubs to allow another sector/hub to accomplish difficult connections
- Synchronized Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) across the network

Depending on deployment conditions, different hubs may require different time offsets from the common time reference to reduce the overall interference. Thus, if synchronization between hubs is implemented it is recommended that each hub should be capable to use distinct delays from the 1 Hz pulse, with all base-stations in a hub having the same delay.

8.3.9.2.3 Power coordination in sectorized environments

For a single sector, automatic power control (APC) attempts to equalize the uplink received levels so that the automatic gain control (AGC) in the base station must not track large variations of the received signal level. The resulting received level will usually be a compromise between the near and far stations. In a sectorized environment, the APC may reach different compromise levels for different base stations. In such situations the base stations with lower received levels may suffer an additional bandwidth reduction due to co-channel and adjacent channel interference from the uplinks addressed to other base stations. It is possible to minimize the overall interference effects in a hub by equalizing the transmitted and received power levels (measured at the base-station) across the entire hub. However, a complete optimization should take in consideration also the network traffic for each separate station.

If this feature is to be implemented, the base station should be capable to adjust its APC transmit and receive levels upon request from the hub controller. The hub controller should adjust the levels so that it optimizes the bandwidth usage across the entire hub for the current network traffic.

8.3.9.2.4 Power coordination in cellular environments

Power coordination can be extended beyond a single hub, to minimize the interference between sectors belonging to different hubs. Such coordination, may be used to facilitate various interference mitigation techniques. However, to be efficient, power coordination across multiple hubs may require different transmit and receive power levels within the same hub. In other words, minimizing interference between hubs may cause an increase in the interference between sectors belonging to the same hub.

If such feature is to be implemented, the hub control should be capable to set distinct APC levels for different base stations. It is also recommended that, the power levels should be adjusted so that the overall network bandwidth is optimized for the current traffic.

8.3.9.2.5 Dynamic frequency selection in sectorized environments

8.3.9.2.6 Dynamic frequency selection in cellular environments

8.3.9.3 Loose parts for further discussion

8.3.9.3.1 Power Control

The requirements for power control varies with the bands being used.

8.3.9.3.1.1 Frequency Bands 10 - 66GHz

As with frequency control, a power control algorithm should be supported for the uplink channel with both an initial calibration and periodic adjustment procedure without loss of data. The base station should be able to provide accurate power measurements of the received burst signal. This value can then be compared against a reference level, and the resulting error can be fed back to the subscriber station in a calibration message coming from the MAC layer. The power control algorithm should be designed to support power attenuation due to distance loss or power fluctuations at rates of at most 10 dB/second with depths of at least 40 dB.

8.3.9.3.1.2 License Exempt Bands

The use of a Power Control IE is required to provide a faster Power Control mechanism than that provided by periodic Ranging protocol. This is a requirement of the license exempt environment.

8.3.9.3.1.2.1 Power Control Steps

The anticipated power control on a link at 5.25-5.35 and 5.725-5.825 GHz will span a dynamic range of at least 45 dB. This gain variation is what can be expected between a BS antenna and a SS that is located anywhere from 50 to 2000 meters from the BS. Note that the 45 dB dynamic range applies to both BS and SS.

The power is defined as the EIRP at the antenna. Step size of power control range will be 3 dB and the power level shall provide monotonic transmission power. Power control steps are set in the following manner:

Maximum allowed - $N * 3$ dB, where $N = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 15\}$

True EIRP = Maximum allowed + Antenna correction, where the directive antenna correction is the additional power obtained by the antenna gain

With FCC ruling on U-NII middle and upper bands Antenna correction would become:

0 dB directive antenna gain ≤ 0 dBi

1 dB directive antenna gain = 1 dBi

2 dB directive antenna gain = 2 dBi

3 dB directive antenna gain = 3 dBi

4 dB directive antenna gain = 4 dBi

5 dB directive antenna gain = 5 dBi

6 dB directive antenna gain ≥ 6 dBi

Using the maximum allowed power on U-NII-bands (see Table 2), a system operating in the upper U-NII band with 10 MHz channels utilizing 14 dBi antennas would have the following EIRP power control steps:

32 29 26 23 ... -13

One signed byte is reserved for the EIRP power with 1 dBm resolution. This is enough for future needs too.

8.3.9.3.1.3 Downlink Power Control

The permissible EIRP values are provided in Table 2. The downlink EIRP will be provided in a MAC management message detailed in clause ????

8.3.9.3.1.4 Uplink Power Control

The uplink channel EIRP will be calculated by the SS using the RSSI information, Downlink EIRP characteristics obtained from the DCD message, and other information such as modulation to be used, etc. The uplink channel EIRP will be set on a packet-by-packet basis by the SS. Same applies to all mesh mode transmissions with the exception of the Mesh Scheduling Message transmission (see 2.1). The calculation of this EIRP will be undertaken by control layers operating above the IEEE 802.16.4 MAC and PHY layers. These upper layers will also control the setting of the EIRP in the SS PMD system. EIRP will be set in steps as described above. There will be no other MAC messages giving indication of the EIRP setting of the uplink channel EIRP by the SS. TBD are the uplink EIRP margin settings so as to ensure a specified PER or BER for the modulation that is chosen by the SS.

8.3.9.3.1.5 Uplink Power Control in Ranging Request (RNG-REQ)

The current IEEE 802.16.1 MAC allows the SS, upon initialization and thereafter, to periodically request that the BS determine network delay and request transmit power settings for the SS. This request is undertaken using a Ranging Request Message (RNG-REQ Sec 6.2.2.2.5). In response to this request, the BS transmits a Ranging Response (RNG-RSP) message (Sec. 6.2.2.2.6) which carries TLV encoded information that specifies the relative change in the transmission power level (EIRP) that the SS is to make in order to insure that transmissions arrive at the BS at the desired power level. The amount of power correction is sent as a Type 2 message with a length of 1 byte. The value it carries is a TX power offset adjustment, represented as a signed 8 byte and having 0.25 dB resolution. It should be noted that the RNG-RSP message can be sent at anytime and the SS must be prepared to receive and act on it accordingly.

The SS power control messages as embodied within the RNG-REQ and RNG-RSP messaging will be maintained. The power control information will be used by the upper control layers to determine the EIRP that the SS transmits (and can theoretically adjust) on a packet-by-packet basis. This power control information is useful to the SS since it will tell the SS whether it is calculating the correct EIRP for its packet transmissions. The response from the BS will indicate the effect of factors (such as co-channel interference not measured by the SS) that degrade the reception of its signals at the BS.

8.3.9.3.2 Ranging and Access schemes

The 802.16 MAC provides several mechanisms that can be used by an SS to request from BS additional bandwidth: piggyback, unicast polling and multicast polling. In the later case, all SS's matching the group address can place their bandwidth request in the BW Request Contention part of the uplink. The two proposed subcarrier-based polling methods provide an alternate way to answer the multicast polling without contention. The first method uses on-off keying while the second employs DBSK modulation.

8.3.9.3.2.1 Subcarrier-based polling using on-off keying

With subcarrier based polling each SS uses on-off keying over OFDMA to signal a bandwidth request. A well-known part in the uplink is dedicated to for the purpose of the polling. In this period, each SS is assigned a unique set of N_{BWR_SC} subcarriers spread in time and frequency. An SS requests bandwidth by energizing its allocated subcarriers. When the BS detects the presence of energy in a specific set of allocated subcarriers, it sends a unicast polling addressed to the corresponding SS, at the earliest opportunity.

Let assume that N_{maxSS} is a multiple of the number of data subcarriers N_{SC} or that is increased to be such. The subcarrier based polling requires $N_{BWR_SC} * N_{maxSS} / N_{SC}$ OFDMA symbols. In each allocation, N_{BWR_SC} subcarriers of the same symbol are allocated. Within a symbol, the subcarriers are assigned on a regular grid. The subcarriers are placed N_{SC} / N_{BWR_SC} apart. Thus to specify an allocation the symbol number in the range $0 \dots N_{BWR_SC} * N_{maxSS} / N_{SC} - 1$ and the grid number in the range N_{SC} / N_{BWR_SC} are needed.

To avoid fades, the subcarrier assignment is randomly varied from poll to poll. This is performed as follows. At registration, the BS assigns to each SS a number SSID in the range $0 \dots N_{maxSS} - 1$. Then, with each multicast polling, the BS broadcasts a random number R in the same range. An SS uses these values to determine the frequency allocation according to:

Let $n = (R + SSID) \bmod N_{maxSS}$
 Let $k = \text{floor} (n / (N_{SC} / N_{BWR_SC}))$ be the symbol number.
 Let $l = n \bmod (N_{SC} / N_{BWR_SC})$ be the grid number.

8.3.9.3.2.2 Subcarrier-based polling using DBPSK

With subcarrier based polling each SS sends just one bit as opposed to sending a complete BW request packet (in contention window). If this bit is "1" then the SS needs additional BW and the BS must send a unicast polling addressed to the corresponding SS, at the earliest opportunity. If the bit is "0", the BS knows it does not need to inquire further the SS. The subcarrier based polling response is transmitted using OFDMA with DBPSK modulation. Each SS needs one slot, where a slot occupies one carrier during two OFDMA symbols. The first OFDMA symbol is used as reference and can be the corresponding subcarrier of the long preamble. The second OFDMA symbol encodes differentially the BW request bit. The second OFDMA symbol preserves the phase from the first OFDMA symbol when the BW request bit is "0" and shifts the phase with 180 degrees when BW request bit is "1".

To avoid channel fades, the slot positions are randomly permuted from polling to polling. Let the maximum number of SS's allowed in a system be N_{maxSS} (it could be useful to make N_{maxSS} a multiple of the number of data subcarriers N_{SC}). The subcarrier based polling requires N_{maxSS} OFDMA slots occupying $2 * \text{ceil}(N_{maxSS} / N_{SC})$ OFDMA symbols. Assume the slots indexed in the range $0 \dots N_{SC} * \text{ceil}(N_{maxSS} / N_{SC}) - 1$, first by the carrier and then by the OFDMA symbol. At registration, the BS assigns to each SS a number SSID in the range $0 \dots N_{maxSS} - 1$. Then, with each multicast polling, the BS broadcasts a random number R in the range $0 \dots N_{SC} * \text{ceil}(N_{maxSS} / N_{SC}) - 1$. Each SS calculates the position of its BW request slot from its SSID and the random number R received from BS, by formula $(SSID + R) \bmod (N_{SC} * \text{ceil}(N_{maxSS} / N_{SC}))$.

8.3.9.4 Channel and Interference Model

8.3.9.4.1 Introduction

The purpose of this document is to present channel and interference models for 802.16.4 OFDM PHY. The models are targeted towards parameter optimization rather than for establishing the actual performance of the proposed system.

The models include the following elements:

- A channel model, which captures effects of multipath.
- A Radio impairments models.
- An interference model, capturing the effects of typical interference, which exists at unlicensed bands.

The underlying guidelines for this work, are to try to define a mathematical framework for the elements under consideration, rather than to try to match the models to specific scenarios. This approach will result in a set of flexible models, which can be tailored to specific situations and scenarios by a simple change of parameters.

The models proposed here are straightforward, simple to simulate and yet give a realistic description of the system and the related impairments. The models are also mathematically tractable, and support a single parameter characterization.

The basic model is depicted in Figure 99. The specific blocks are described in subsequent clauses.

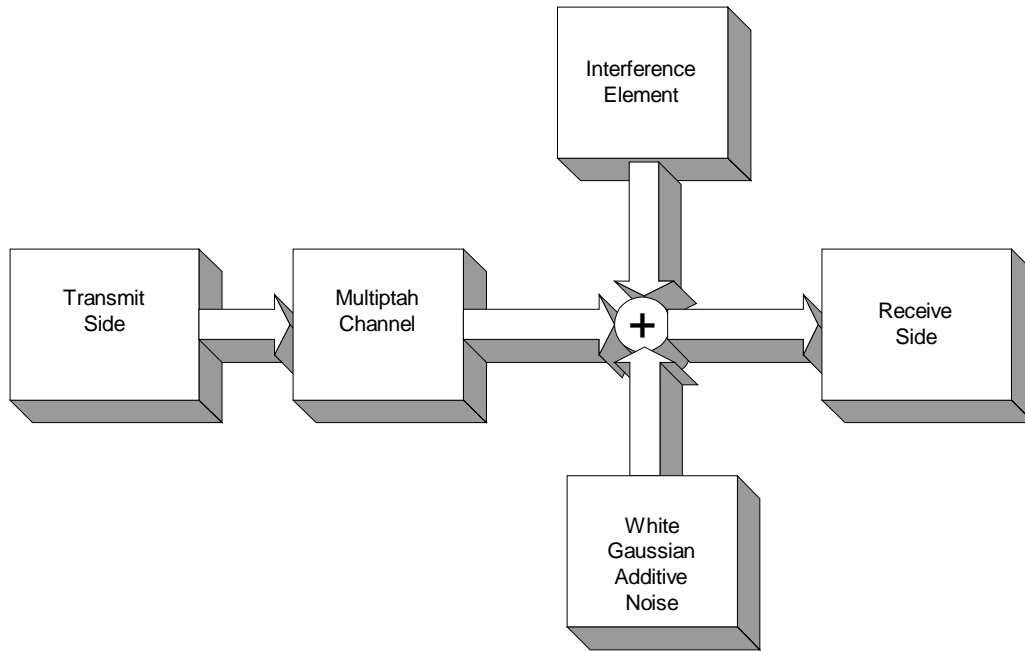


Figure 99—Basic Model

8.3.9.4.2 Multipath channel

The multipath model is selected to be a Rayleigh fading model with an exponentially decaying power profile. The channel is specified by the RMS of the tap weights. This model is simple to analyze and simulate. With a proper choice of delay spread values it represents realistic conditions. For further discussion see [24] or [25].

The following, taken from [21], describes how to implement the multipath model in a discrete time simulation system.

Let $h_k = h(t)|_{t=kT_s}$ denote the sampled impulse response of the channel, where T_s is the sampling rate of the simulation system. The coefficients h_k are complex random numbers with random uniformly distributed phase and Rayleigh distributed magnitude. The average power decays exponentially. The RMS power average of the taps is given by the parameter T_{rms} . The coefficients are selected according to:

$$h_k = N\left(0, \frac{1}{2}\sigma_k^2\right) + jN\left(0, \frac{1}{2}\sigma_k^2\right)$$

$$\sigma_k^2 = \sigma_0^2 \exp(-kT_s/T_{RMS})$$

$$\sigma_0^2 = 1 - \exp(-kT_s/T_{RMS})$$

where $N(0, \sigma_k^2/2)$ is a zero mean Gaussian random variable with $\sigma_k^2/2$ variance, and σ_0^2 is chosen so that the condition $\sum \sigma_k^2 = 1$ is satisfied to ensure same average received power.

In Figure 100, the exponential power profile and a single realization of a channel are shown.

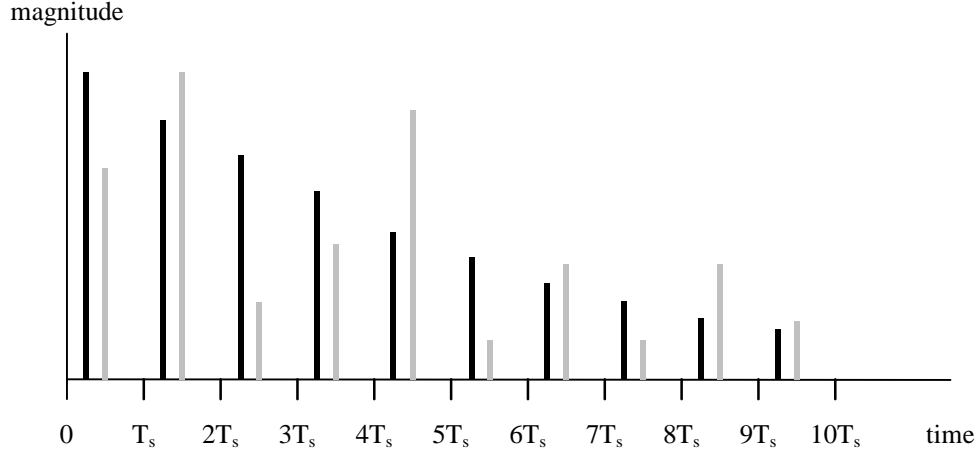


Figure 100—Power Profile (black) and realization (gray) (time staggered for clarity only)

The sampling time T_s in the simulation should not be longer than the smaller of $1/(\text{signal bandwidth})$ or $T_{RMS}/2$. The number of samples to be taken in the impulse response should ensure sufficient decay of the impulse response tail, e.g. $k_{\max} = 10T_{RMS}/T_s$.

For each packet, a new channel response is generated. The channel is assumed to be static during a packet.

8.3.9.4.3 Interference models

Here the interference is assumed to be stemming from wide-band packetized transmissions (e.g. 802.11a HiperLAN/2). The model generates random interference bursts. For each burst the following parameters are selected at random:

1. Arrival time of burst.
2. Length of burst.
3. Center frequency of burst.
4. Power of burst relative to noise floor.

The focus in this clause is to try to establish the mathematical framework for the interference model. Some crude assumptions are made with regard to the actual traffic parameters. These need to be refined.

The parameters are depicted schematically in Figure 101. Section 8.3.9.4.3.1 gives the underlying assumptions for the interference source. From those assumptions, the timing, power and signal descriptions are derived. They are described in clause 8.3.9.4.3.2. Section 8.3.9.4.3.3 describes the procedure of generating the interference signal.

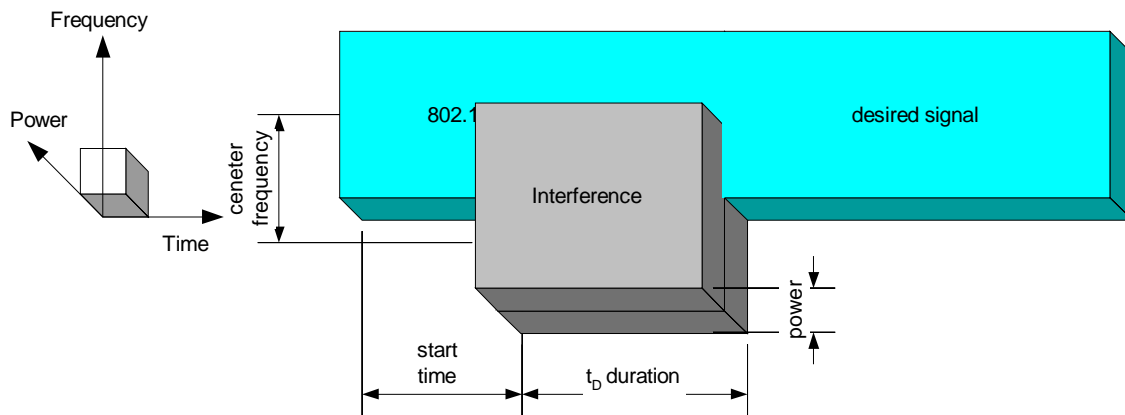


Figure 101—Interference Model

8.3.9.4.3.1 Basic assumptions

Here we shall assume that the interferer is a 802.11a like signal (see [26]). The instantaneous transmission rate is 24Mb/s. The occupied bandwidth is about 17MHz. The PHY layer overhead per packet is assumed to be 20uSec.

For the interferer traffic, we shall use the results published in [27], where histograms of Ethernet packet sizes are shown. It is demonstrated that almost 75% of the packets are shorter than 522 bytes and nearly half the packets are 40-44bytes. In order to simplify and to reach round numbers, we shall assume that the packet size is uniformly distributed in the range 48 ...480bytes. This is equivalent to a packet duration in the range of 36...180 uSec.

The time between consecutive interference bursts is can be computed as follows. We can assume that most traffic, in bytes, is concentrated in long packets, say in 500bytes packets. Let us assume a channel utilization of 25%. Thus the average idle channel time is $(1-0.25)/0.25 \cdot 500 \cdot 8/24\text{Mb/s} = 500\text{uSec}$.

Here we shall assume that the average time from end of interference burst to beginning of next burst is Poisson distribution with a mean of 500uSec.

It is assumed that the power spectral density (PSD) of the interference is in the same order of magnitude as the thermal noise floor. More specifically, the PSD is in the range of N_0 to $N_0+20\text{dB}$, where N_0 is the thermal noise floor. (-174dBm/Hz).

The frequency offset between the interferer and the desired signal is uniformly distributed in the range -10MHz...+10MHz.

8.3.9.4.3.2 Signal Wave shape

The interference signal is generated by passing a white complex Gaussian process, through a raised cosine filter and amplifying it to the desired level. Then it is shifted in frequency in to a randomly selected center frequency.

The motivation for using this wave shape is as follows:

- The proposed signal is easy to generate
- The spectral signature is similar to that of many communication systems.
- It has roughly the same peak to average power ratio as that of an OFDM signal.
- This signal, can be easily modified to represent other interfering signals.

The parameters of the raised cosine filter are rolloff factor of ($\beta=0.25$ and 6dB corner of $f_c=10\text{MHz}$). The filter is given by:

$$H(f) = \begin{cases} 1 & |f| < (1-\beta)f_c \\ 1/2 \left[1 - \sin \frac{\pi}{2} \left(\frac{f}{f_c} - 1 \right) / \beta \right] & (1-\beta)f_c \leq |f| < (1+\beta)f_c \end{cases}$$

8.3.9.4.3.3 Generating Procedure

The signal generation is depicted in Figure 102. The procedure for generating the interference is given below.

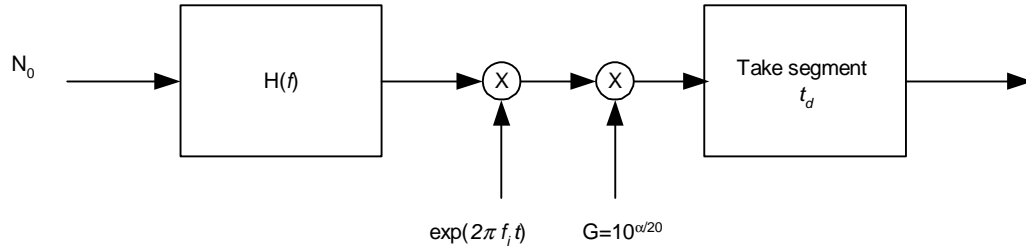


Figure 102—Interference Signal Generation

1. Select the start time. Generate a poisson random variable t_0 with a mean of $1/\lambda = 500\text{uSec}$ according to the probability distribution function given by: $f_i(t) = t\lambda \exp(-\lambda t)$
2. Add t_0 to the end of the last interference Burst. If this is the first interference burst, t_0 signifies start time from beginning of transmission burst.
3. Select the duration. Generate a uniformly distributed random t_D variable in the range $36\text{uSec} \dots 180\text{uSec}$.
4. Generate a white gaussian noise process with double sided PSD of N_0 .
5. Filter the noise process with $H(f)$ given above.
6. Select center frequency, f_i in the range $-10\text{MHz} \dots 10\text{MHz}$.
7. Shift the signal in frequency by multiplying it by $\exp(j2\pi f_i t)$.
8. Select amplification. Generate a random variable (α , uniformly distributed in the range $0 \dots 20$). Set the amplification to $G = 10^{\alpha/20}$.
9. Take a segment of t_D of the generated signal. Add it to the desired signal at the start time selected in steps 1 and 2.
10. Repeat with step 1.

8.3.9.4.4 Radio Impairments

The radio impairments models consist of phase noise models and power amplifier non-linearities.

8.3.9.4.4.1 Power amplifier non-linearity

The power amplifier model is based on the Rapp's model with knee parameter $P=2$. Besides its simplicity, the model well represents typical power amplifiers at the sub 10GHz range.

Consider using a complex baseband notation. Denote by v_{IN} and v_{OUT} the input and output complex signals, respectively. Let $P_{SAT} = |v_{SAT}|^2$ denote the saturated power of the amplifier. Then the relation between v_{IN} and v_{OUT} is given by:

$$v_{OUT} = v_{IN} / (1 + (|v_{IN}|/v_{SAT})^{2P})^{1/(2P)}, \quad P = 2$$

8.3.9.4.2 Phase noise

For the phase noise simplified phase noise model is selected. While maintaining a simple description the model adequately represent the behavior of typical microwave phase-locked loop oscillator.

The phase noise is presented as white gaussian noise process for which is driven through a single pole low pass filter. The 3dB corner of the low-pass should be set at 10KHz, which is a typical value for large step oscillators. A typical PSD is shown in Figure 103.

The model ignores the contribution of the oscillator phase noise, which can be easily tracked and the effects of phase noise PSD flattening in high frequencies.

For simplicity it is recommended that the phase noise effects shall be simulated only on the transmitter side.

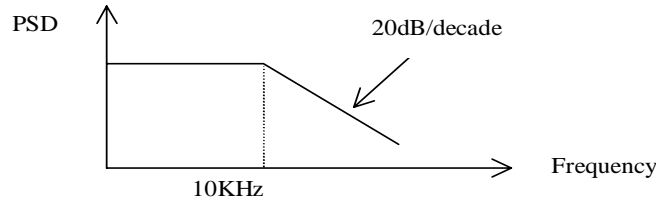


Figure 103—Phase Noise PSD

8.3.10 Annex: MIMO Systems and Beamforming Antenna Technology

In this clause, we will cover application of multiple input / multiple output (MIMO) and beamforming antenna technology.

8.3.10.1 Introduction

FWA system have a key requirement to operate in channels with large delay spreads and to provide a means of operation in line of sight, near line of sight (edge diffraction), an non-line of sight RF propagation channels.

Propagation loss will affect the energy level of the signal and ultimately the modulation complexity that can be supported. Multi-path and the resulting delay spread can result in distortions that make the signal impossible to demodulate regardless of received energy level unless some method to combat the multi-path is implemented. These methods include:

- Signal processing to perform channel equalization
- Directional antennas (limit sources of multi-path)
- Spatial diversity receivers (demodulation and coherent combining of one or more antenna/receiver sources)

In 1999 and 2000 two important paper provided detailed studies of the delay spread in 2 GHz and 2.5 GHz channels across a number of different line of sight (LOS) and non-line of sight (NLOS) channels.

Porter and Thweat provided a study of MMDS frequency propagation in a suburban environment [15]. Their results noted that a combination of directional transmit and receive antennas provided for RMS Delay Spread of less than 1 usec in 90% of the link cases. Also lower antenna heights resulted in lower delay spread but also greater propagation loss due to non-line-of-sight conditions. A summary of the test results is provided in Table 46.

Table 46—Delay spread parameters

Visibility	Antenna Type	RMS Delay spread (μ s)		
		Min	Max	Mean
LOS	directional	0.02	0.04	0.02
LOS	omni	0.02	2.39	0.13
NLOS	directional	0.02	5.26	0.14
NLOS	omni	0.02	7.06	0.37

Erceg, Michelson, et. al. provided a similar study at 2 GHz [16]. As with the previously noted study, delay spread (full time span, not RMS delay spread) of up to 1 usec was detected for both omni and directional antennas.

More importantly, the use of diversity (multiple input) based on one or a combination of spatially separated antennas, polarization, and frequency/coding is considered a standard method of improving link fading performance. Jakes noted in his 1971 IEEE paper [17] that diversity improvement for 2 branches can provide nearly 20 dB of fade improvement while 3 branches can provide nearly 27 dB of improvement.

The use of diversity/MI (Multiple Input) techniques seek to improve signal performance in near/non-line of sight by combining the received energy of multiple diversity branches to reconstruct the receive signal.

In conjunction with Multiple Input technology, Multiple Output technology (e.g. Alamouti antenna diversity algorithm described in the previous clause) seeks to create additional "artificial" diversity branch energy in the received signal.

While MIMO technologies improve link performance they do not reduce the C/I levels between cells or increase the frequency reuse factor in a wide scale system deployment. As systems are rolled out and subscribers densities within deployed cells increases, it is expected that advanced beam forming will be applied at the cell Base Station. Beam-forming antennas will provide spatial reuse factors will typically result in 2x to 4x increase in frequency efficiency.

- Compatibility with existing installed IEEE 802.16.3 subscribers meeting defined minimum requirements (MIMO/beamforming upgrade at a Base Station supports the current installed base)
- Consistent with industry requirements to reduce the cost of subscribers. Add complexity at the Base Station and reduce complexity at the subscriber
- Conform to all Regulatory requirements for EIRP, spurious emissions, and antenna beam restrictions (side lobe and front to back requirements)

The following clauses will discuss the application of MIMO and beamforming. Multiple input processing will be covered separately from multiple output.

Note: These techniques can be applied to both FDD and TDD system. When specific processing for a type of duplexing method is required, this will be noted in the text

8.3.10.2 Multiple Input (MI) Systems

Diversity (MI) processing is the most powerful way to minimize multi-path and combat fading. Spatial techniques are applicable to any choice of modulation and represent a powerful enhancement that can improve the performance of any wireless access system. These techniques include:

- Directional antennas
- Multiple antennas with selection/scanning diversity
 - o Spatial separation
 - o Polarization separation
- Multiple antenna/receivers with signal combining.

As noted in the previous clause, directional antennas at the subscriber greatly reduce multi-path and resulting delay spread. The directional antenna acts as a spatial filter. Signals that are in the main beam (main-lobe) of the antenna are passed to the receiver while signals that reach the subscriber from the side-lobes are reduced by typically 25 to 40 dB. There are two other derivative benefits of directional antennas:

- Increase transmission gain and reduce cost and complexity of transmit PA (subscriber and basestation) Reduce interference from subscribers in adjacent cells. Increase the overall capacity of a multiple cell system deployment.

Diversity is the use of separate distinct signal sources to enhance the received error rate and/or throughput of the system. Frequency diversity (use of 2 or more transmission paths send the same data) has been used in microwave radio for decades. Likewise polarization diversity (use of horizontal and vertical antenna patterns) has been used in microwave radio and in 2nd generation cellular system Base Stations to enhance mobile subscriber reception. Time diversity (transmitting the same information at different times) has been used to mitigate periodic burst interference in military systems. These techniques can enhance reception by as much as 20 to 30 dB at the expense of reducing system capacity.

It is possible to have significant gains at the receiver by processing two or more receive paths using spatial or polarization diversity receivers. The implementation cost clearly increases with the number of paths/receivers that are processed. As a practical matter the use of a second receive source can improve resistance to fade and multi-path by as much as 20 dB. The addition of a 3rd receive source provides only an additional 6 to 7 dB under optimal conditions.

The simplest form of diversity is to sample the received SNR (lowest error rate) of one or more antennas and select the best source. The rate of scanning and selection must be performed at a rate much higher than the fade rate of the system. Selection diversity is shown Figure 104. This requires only a single receiver and represents one of the most cost effective methods to implement receive diversity. This technique maps well to TDD duplexing where the start of frame header can be used to perform diversity selection. The performance of selection diversity is inferior (by 3 to 6 dB) to combining of multiple receivers.

Combining Diversity is shown in Figure 105. An active receiver is required for each antenna. The signals of each receiver are combined (co-phased and summed) using either a maximum ratio criteria or by equal gain. The maximum ratio method weights signals based on their measured SNR (general $S+N/N$, i.e. signal & noise to noise ratio) and provides an output SNR that is the SUM of the input SNR (a gain in SNR). The benefit of maximum ratio combining is that the procedure it can result in producing an acceptable output SNR even when the individual channels have marginal SNR.

Selection Diversity

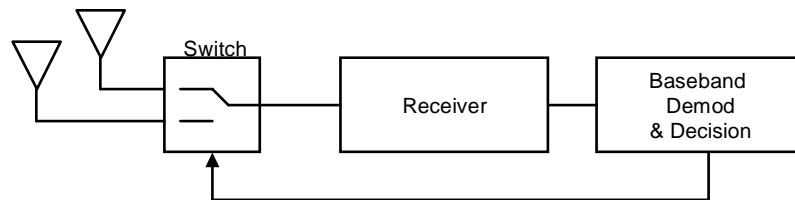


Figure 104—Selection Diversity Receiver

Combining Diversity

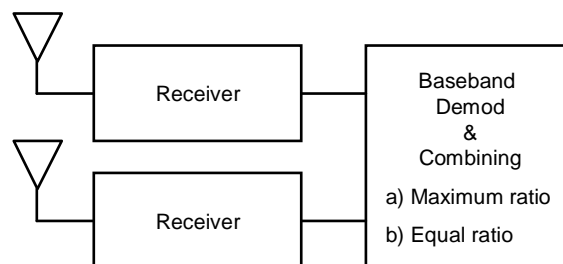


Figure 105—Combining Diversity Receiver

Selection diversity can readily be applied to both TDD and FDD systems. TDD systems have the added benefit that the selected diversity branch can also be used to improve transmission.

8.3.10.3 Multiple Output Systems

As previously discussed, the motivation for multiple output (MO) is to create and exploit a self-generated diversity branch in the processing of the system.

Given that the minimum requirements for Single Input Single Output (SISO) subscriber, the MO technique selected must be compatible with the minimum standards processing. It is anticipated that MO transmissions will at the Base Station and that the subscriber will, to minimize costs, be of either a SISO or MISO configuration.

At the current time two type of Multiple Output techniques are being investigated:

- The Alamouti antenna diversity algorithm
- Subscriber equalization delay diversity algorithm.

(Base Station would transmit the signal and a delayed replica at a delay that exceeds the channel delay spread ... Thus the equalizer would effectively act as a time domain combiner).

8.3.10.4 Application of Beam Forming Antenna Technology

The use of advanced antenna technology introduces an additional level of Media Access Control (MAC) complexity. The MAC/PHY has an added spatial/ beam component that must be factored into MAC coordination of the PHY. On a subscriber by subscriber (link by link) basis the MAC/PHY must coordinate the following parameters:

- Communications burst duration

- o Individual uplink or downlink for TDD
- o Joint up/down link for FDD
- Modulation Complexity
- FEC Rate
- Beam/Combining parameters.

Figure 106 illustrates the concept of coordinating MAC/PHY with the beam forming antenna element. While this standard does not attempt to define the specific technology or implementation of the beam forming technology the design of the MAC and PHY must take into account that the beam forming subsystem places distinct restrictions on MAC/PHY management and the coordination and passing of parameters necessary to support advanced beam forming.

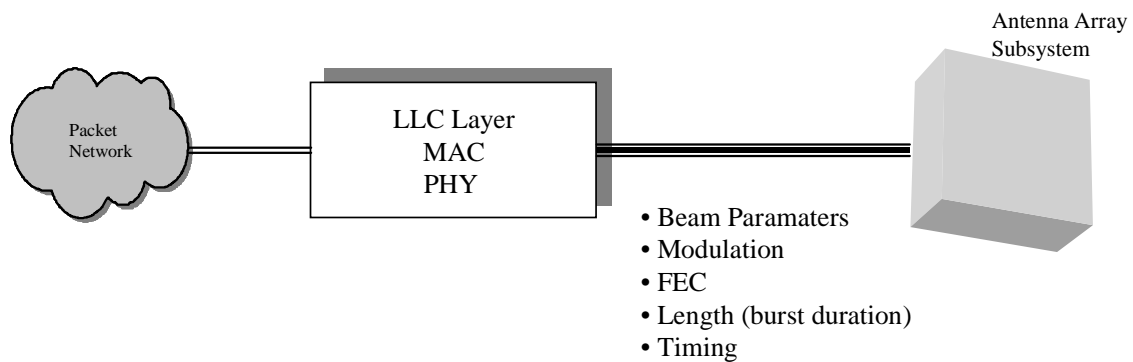


Figure 106—MAC/PHY Coordination concept with Beam Forming Antenna

Beam forming and advanced antennas remove the basic paradigm that all subscribers have the capability of simultaneously receiving broadcast information from the Base Station. Beams are formed to optimize communications to a given subscriber with a channel response $H_n(t)$ and beam parameters $B_n(t)$. Figure 107 illustrates a sector of a base station that is communicating with 3 separate subscribers. Each subscriber is spatially distinct from the other subscribers. The transmission bursts sent to or from subscriber #1 would not be received by subscribers #2 or #3.

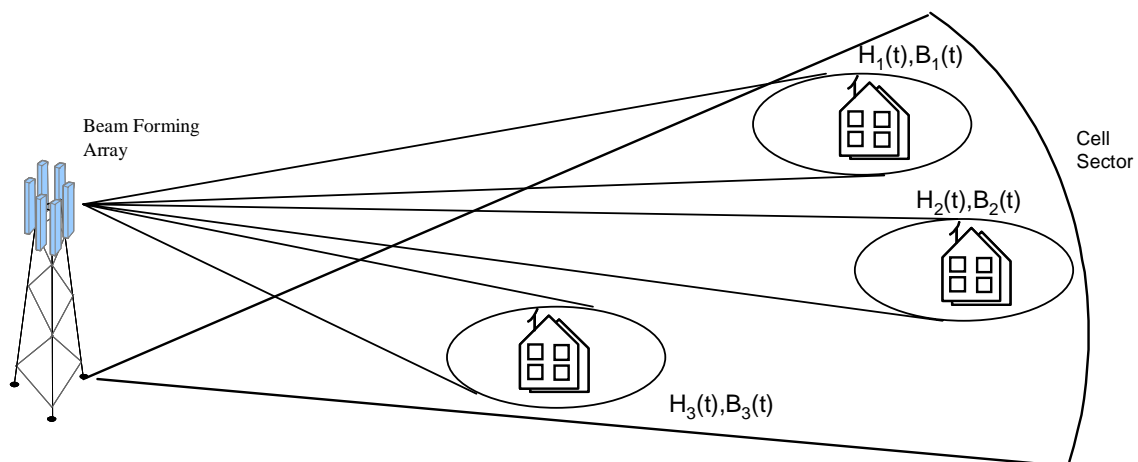


Figure 107—BS sector with 3 Subscribers

In the described scenario, the Base Station is sequentially forming the beam and either sending or receiving from the subscribers in an order determined by the MAC. To support advanced antenna systems both FDD and TDD links must be designed to provide transmissions based on self-contained bursts.

The following diagram illustrates the beam forming burst concept for both FDD and TDD.

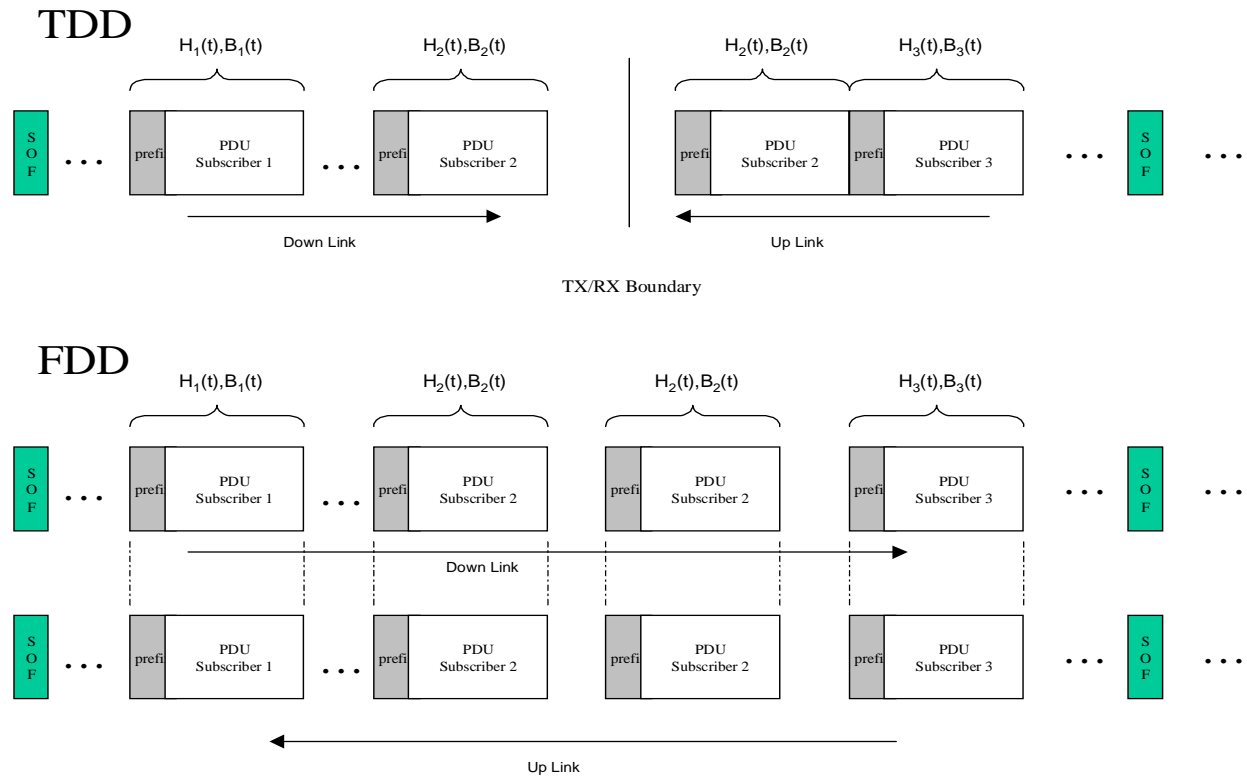


Figure 108—Beamforming Concept for TDD and FDD

Conceptually, TDD is easy to understand. A beam is formed for each transmitted burst in either the uplink or the down stream. The FDD solution can work one of two ways:

- Single beam forming for the Up/ Down Link
- Independent Up and Down Link beamforming. The system can support 2 independent formations of the beam on the up link frequency and the down link frequency (below)

FDD with Independent beam forming

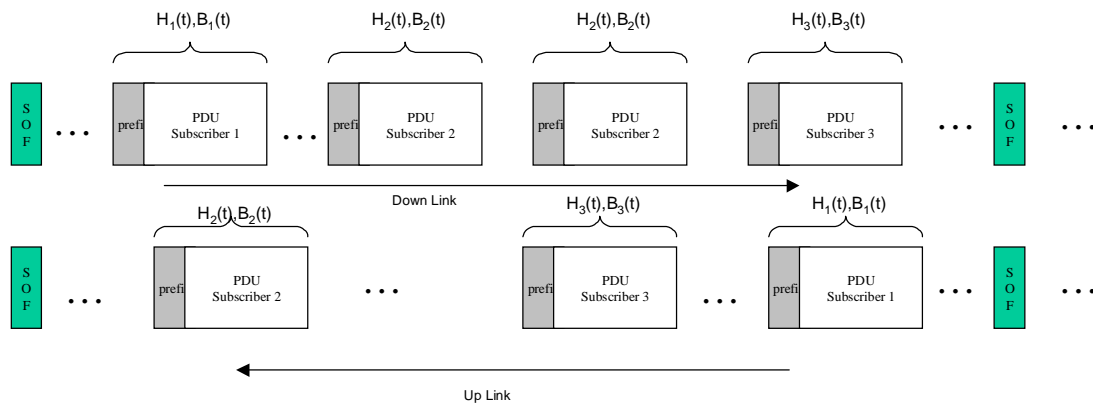


Figure 109—FDD with Independent UL/DL Beam Forming Example

These simple sequential cases can be expanded to advanced beam forming techniques to provide simultaneous multiple access to spatially independent users. A beam-forming network can create 2 or more independent beams with low self-interference that allow simultaneous communications using the same frequency. While beam-forming complexity is increased, spectral reuse is also increased. The complexity of PHY hardware and MAC scheduling software also increase proportionally with the number of beams created.

The MAC and PHY also need to perform burst scheduling and transmission based on "spatial concatenation". One or more subscribers can be supported by a single set of beam-forming parameters due to close physical proximity as shown in Figure 110. For this case, bursts to the subscribers that share the same beams.

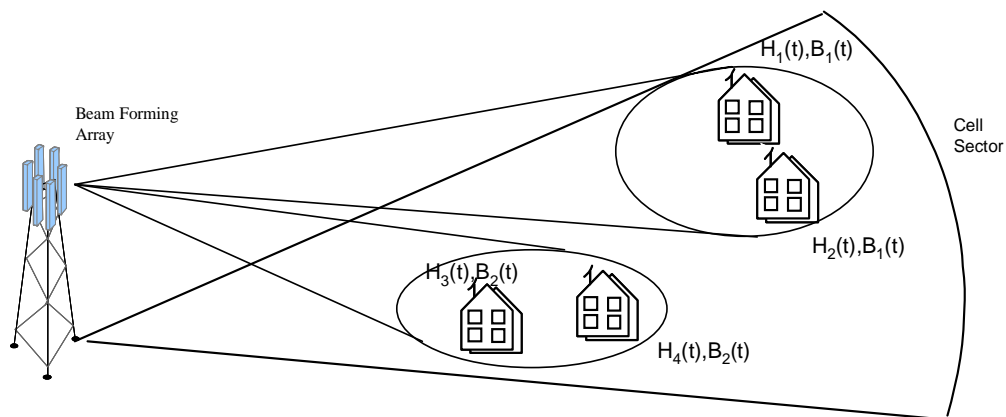


Figure 110—BS sector using Spatial Concatenated Communication

Figure 111 illustrates how packets are grouped (concatenated) and transmitted by based on physical proximity for a TDD Physical layer.

TDD

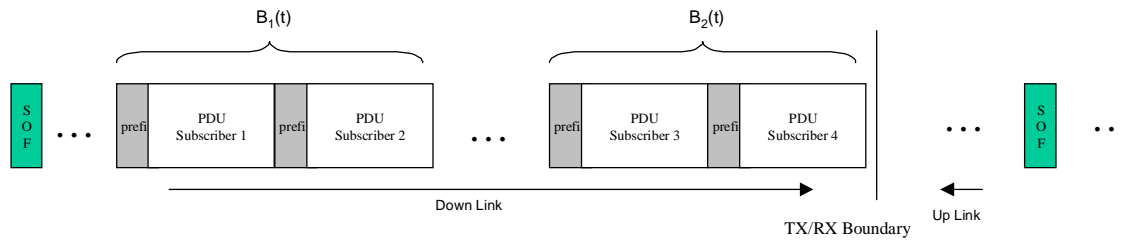


Figure 111—TDD with Concatenated Packet Transmission Example

The PHY based on block processing and burst packet formats meets all the requirements to support advanced antenna processing techniques. As the standard progresses we must address the following issues in greater detail:

- Beam forming Transition/ Set-up time definition in the MAC (passing parameters to PHY)
- Method for broadcasting Uplink and Downlink MAP information
- Acquisition methods and beam scanning
- Cell to Cell interference and C/I issues
- Spatial multiplexing.

8.3.11 Annex: SC LINK Budget Analysis

We have made a complete Link budget analysis for the various combinations of modulation format and channel bandwidth that were specified by Erceg's latest version of "channel model" for this proposal. The path loss given below was calculated using the median value for Condition C of the model in Erceg's latest version of the path model (802.16.3c-29r1). For each Downlink (D/S) and Uplink (U/S) pair we have calculated the maximum path length that could be supported given the 43 dBm EIRP at the BTS and a 40 dBm EIRP at the SS with "typical" values for SNR at the receiver for each modulation format. Some typical results are presented in Table 47.

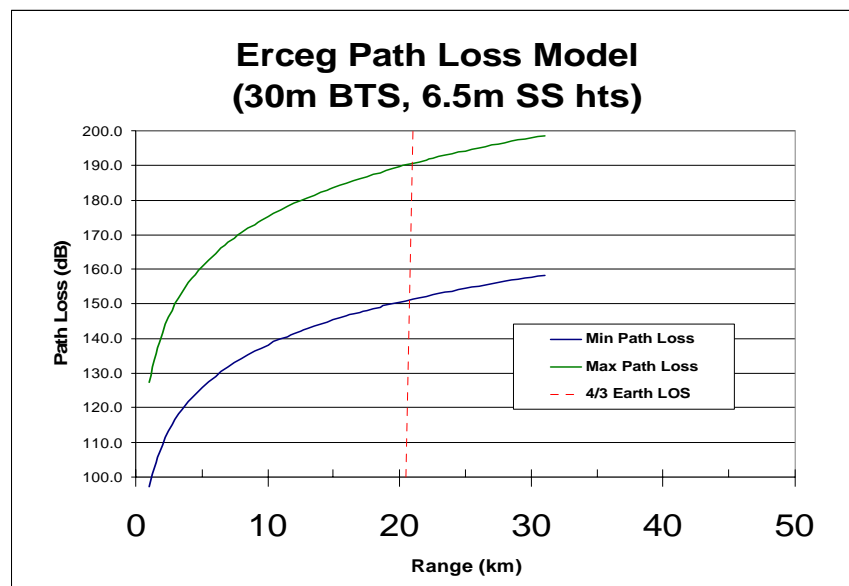


Figure 112—Path Loss Model

Table 47 present's channel model as per Erceg's contribution 802.16.3c-29r1. The selected channel is a typical MMDC channel at 2.5 GHz band.

Table 47—Channel Model

Parameter	Category		
	C	B	A
	Flat, few Trees	Intermediate	Hilly, heavy trees
a	3.6	4	4.6
b	0.005	0.0065	0.0075
c	20	17.1	12. 6
Channel Frequency (GHz)	2.5		
Wavelength (m)	0.12		
SS RX antenna height h (m)	6.5		
BS antenna height h_{bs} (m)	80		
$y=(a-b h_b+c/h_b)$	4.116667	4.375	4.795
$A = 20\log(4\pi d_0/\lambda)/\log(10)$	80.40057		
s	9.4		
$PL = A + 10\gamma\log(d/d_0)/\log(10) + DPI + DPh \pm s$			
4/3 Earth Line of Sight (km)	32.5		

Based on the parameter selection in Table 47, we have generated link budget for various scenarios. Some typical results are for QPSK and 64 QAM that are presented in the following Table 48 and Table 49, respectively. These results assume very similar scenarios for SC-FDE and OFDM systems.

Table 48—Typical Link Budgets for SC and OFDM for QPSK (1.5 and 6 MHz)

Bandwidth Modulation type/ Target SNR	Single Carrier		512 Carriers			Single Carrier		512 Carriers	
	1.5 MHz	10 dB	1.5 MHz	10 dB		6.0 MHz	10 dB	6 MHz	10 dB
Downstream									
EIRP (BTS)	43.0 dBm	20 w	43.0 dBm	20 w		43.0 dBm	20 w	43.0 dBm	20 w
Antenna Gain	3.0 dB		3.0 dB			3.0 dB		3.0 dB	
Back off	12.0 dB		14.0 dB			11.0 dB		14.0 dB	
Nominal 1 dB compression point	52.0 dBm	158 w	54.0 dBm	251 w		51.0 dBm	126 w	54.0 dBm	251 w
Normalized Price	1.0		1.3			1.0		1.3	
Path distance for targeted SNR	8.0 km		8.0 km			8.0 km		8.0 km	
Associated Path Loss (from 802.16.3c-29r1)	-153.8 dB		-153.8 dB			-153.8 dB		-153.8 dB	
Receive Antenna gain	14.0 dB		14.0 dB			14.0 dB		14.0 dB	
Power at Input to Receiver	-96.8 dBm		-96.8 dBm			-96.8 dBm		-96.8 dBm	
Receiver Noise Figure	5.0 dB		5.0 dB			5.0 dB		5.0 dB	
Equivalent Noise Power in channel BW	-107.2 dBm		-107.2 dBm			-101.2 dBm		-101.2 dBm	
SNR, Calculated	10.4 dB		10.4 dB			4.4 dB		4.4 dB	
Upstream									
EIRP (SS)	34.0 dBm	3 w	34.0 dBm	3 w		40.0 dBm	10 w	40.0 dBm	10 w
Antenna Gain	14.0 dB		14.0 dB			14.0 dB		14.0 dB	
Back off	6.0 dB		14.0 dB			11.0 dB		14.0 dB	
Nominal 1 dB compression point	26.0 dBm	0.40 w	34.0 dBm	3 w		37.0 dBm	5 w	40.0 dBm	10 w
Normalized Price	1.0		4.0			1.0		4.0	
Path distance for targeted SNR	3.0 km		3.0 km			3.0 km		3.0 km	
Associated Path Loss (from 802.16.3c-29)	-136.3 dB		-136.3 dB			-136.3 dB		-136.3 dB	
Receive Antenna gain	6.0 dB		6.0 dB			6.0 dB		6.0 dB	
Power at Input to Receiver	-96.3 dBm		-96.3 dBm			-90.3 dBm		-90.3 dBm	
Receiver Noise Figure	4.0 dB		4.0 dB			4.0 dB		4.0 dB	
Equivalent Noise Power in channel BW	-108.2 dBm		-108.2 dBm			-102.2 dBm		-102.2 dBm	
SNR, Calculated	12.0 dB		12.0 dB			12.0 dB		12.0 dB	

Table 49—Typical Link Budget for SC and OFDM for 64QAM (1.5 and 6 MHz)

Bandwidth Modulation type / Target SNR	Single Carrier		512 Carriers			Single Carrier		512 Carriers	
	1.5 MHz	25 dB	1.5 MHz	25 dB		6.0 MHz	25 dB	6 MHz	25 dB
Downstream									
EIRP (BTS)	43.0 dBm	20 w	43.0 dBm	20 w		43.0 dBm	20 w	43.0 dBm	20 w
Antenna Gain	3.0 dB		3.0 dB			3.0 dB		3.0 dB	
Back off	12.0 dB		14.0 dB			12.0 dB		14.0 dB	
Nominal 1 dB compression point	52.0 dBm	158 w	54.0 dBm	251 w		52.0 dBm	158 w	54.0 dBm	251 w
Normalized Price	1.0		1.3			1.0		1.3	
Path distance for targeted SNR	6.5 km		6.5 km			4.5 km		4.5 km	
Associated Path Loss (from 802.16.3c-29r1)	-150.1 dB		-150.1 dB			-143.5 dB		-143.5 dB	
Receive Antenna gain	14.0 dB		14.0 dB			14.0 dB		14.0 dB	
Power at Input to Receiver	-93.1 dBm		-93.1 dBm			-86.5 dBm		-86.5 dBm	
Receiver Noise Figure	5.0 dB		5.0 dB			5.0 dB		5.0 dB	
Equivalent Noise Power in channel BW	-107.2 dBm		-107.2 dBm			-101.2 dBm		-101.2 dBm	
SNR, Calculated	14.2 dB		14.2 dB			14.7 dB		14.7 dB	
Upstream									
EIRP (SS)	34.0 dBm	3 w	34.0 dBm	3 w		40.0 dBm	10 w	40.0 dBm	10 w
Antenna Gain	14.0 dB		14.0 dB			14.0 dB		14.0 dB	
Back off	6.0 dB		14.0 dB			6.0 dB		14.0 dB	
Nominal 1 dB compression point	26.0 dBm	0.40 w	34.0 dBm	3 w		32.0 dBm	2 w	40.0 dBm	10 w
Normalized Price	1.0		4.0			1.0		4.0	
Path distance for targeted SNR	2.5 km		2.5 km			2.5 km		2.5 km	
Associated Path Loss (from 802.16.3c-29)	-133.0 dB		-133.0 dB			-133.0 dB		-133.0 dB	
Receive Antenna gain	6.0 dB		6.0 dB			6.0 dB		6.0 dB	
Power at Input to Receiver	-93.0 dBm		-93.0 dBm			-87.0 dBm		-87.0 dBm	
Receiver Noise Figure	4.0 dB		4.0 dB			4.0 dB		4.0 dB	
Equivalent Noise Power in channel BW	-108.2 dBm		-108.2 dBm			-102.2 dBm		-102.2 dBm	
SNR, Calculated	15.2 dB		15.2 dB			15.2 dB		15.2 dB	

8.3.12 Annex OFDM/OFDMA - FDD/TDD Co-existence

Coexistence requires additional consideration of adjacent channel interference, and has a significant impact on system design.

1 A number of engineering tradeoffs must be balanced in order to maximize system performance, maintain compatibil-
2 ity and enable RF coexistence. A number of facts are listed below which are significant factors within this trade
3 space.
4

- 5
- 6 • We seek to fill the channel BW with active tones (the active tone bandwidth), thus minimizing the symbol dura-
7 tion and maximizing the link rate.
- 8 • We need to have adequate guard bands on each side of the active bandwidth so that energy generated by BSs and
9 SSs decays to an acceptable level in the active tone region of the adjacent channel.
- 10 • Conditions will exist where an FDD system and a TDD system operating in adjacent channels will transmit while
11 the other is receiving. Unfortunately, complying with the ETSI and North American emissions masks does not
12 ensure RF coexistence between FDD and TDD systems in this case.
- 13 • RF emissions generated outside of the active tone bandwidth (ATB) arise from the spectral leakage of the rectan-
14 gular windowed FFTs. For larger FFT sizes, this leakage decays more quickly for a fixed guard band.
- 15 • RF emissions generated outside of the active tone bandwidth arise from power amplifier intermodulation distor-
16 tion (IMD) caused principally by 3rd order and 5th order non-linearities. The spectral bandwidth of the
17 unwanted emissions is 3 and 5 times the ATB respectively for 3rd and 5th order IMD. In typical SS amplifiers,
18 the 3rd order IMD dominates with the 5th order IMD 15 dB below the 3rd order. The 3rd order IMD is typically
19 controlled by backing off output power to meet the emission mask limits
- 20 • Power amplifier IMD typically produces more unwanted IMD than spectral leakage from the FFT.
- 21 • High Q filtering technology is not available at SS price points that would significantly lower 3rd and 5th order
22 IMD for the 2 - 3.5 MHz bands.
- 23 • High Q filtering technology is available at BS price points and can be used to reduce IMD. High Q filtering is
24 usually needed at the BS since the active bandwidth occupies the majority of the channel bandwidth. Typical fil-
25 ter performance provides 20 dB rejection at 0.1% of the filter center frequency. Higher performance is achiev-
26 able at 0.075% of the filter center frequency.
- 27 • Additional 3rd order IMD suppression can be obtained if the IMD falls in guard bands of the channel and adja-
28 cent channel. Only 5th order IMD will be present in the victim's band. In this case, the guard band should be
29 specified as 1/2 of the active bandwidth.
- 30
- 31
- 32
- 33
- 34
- 35
- 36
- 37
- 38
- 39
- 40
- 41
- 42
- 43
- 44
- 45
- 46
- 47
- 48
- 49
- 50
- 51
- 52
- 53
- 54
- 55
- 56
- 57
- 58
- 59
- 60
- 61
- 62
- 63
- 64
- 65

802.16a/b Amendment to the 802.16 Standard Air Interface for Fixed Broadband Wireless Access Systems

NOTE-The editing instructions contained in this amendment/corrigendum define how to merge the material contained herein into the existing base standard and its amendments to form the comprehensive standard.

The editing instructions are shown in ***bold italic***. Four editing instructions are used: ***change***, ***delete***, ***insert***, and ***replace***. ***Change*** is used to make small corrections in existing text or tables. The editing instruction specifies the location of the change and describes what is being changed by using strikethrough (to remove old material) and underscore (to add new material). ***Delete*** removes existing material. ***Insert*** adds new material without disturbing the existing material. Insertions may require renumbering. If so, renumbering instructions are given in the editing instruction. ***Replace*** is used to make large changes in existing text, subclauses, tables, or figures by removing existing material and replacing it with new material. Editorial notes will not be carried over into future editions because the changes will be incorporated into the base standard.

1. Overview

1.1 Scope

In this document, sections marked as “*For future study*” are not necessary for the current version of the specification.

Please add the following subclauses and move the content of clause 1.1's first paragraph into the first sub-clause 1.1.1

1.1.1 10 - 66 GHz Bands

This standard specifies the air interface, including the medium access control layer (MAC) and physical layer (PHY), of fixed point-to-multipoint broadband wireless access (BWA) systems providing multiple services. The medium access control layer is capable of supporting multiple physical layers optimized for the frequency bands of the application. The standard includes a particular physical layer implementation broadly applicable to systems operating between 10 and 66 GHz.

For the purposes of this document, a “system” consists of an 802.16 MAC and PHY implementation with at least one subscriber station communicating with a base station via a point-to-multipoint (P-MP) radio air interface, along with the interfaces to external networks and services transported by the MAC and PHY protocol layers.

1.1.2 2-11 Ghz Bands

802.16a MAC and PHY have to support point-to-multipoint applications in the range 2 to 11 GHz. Radio communications in the above range may be possible in near- and non-line-of-sight situations between a base station and subscriber station. Operation may include partial blockage by foliage, which contributes to signal attenuation and multipath effects. 802.16a compliant systems shall be deployable in multiple- cell frequency reuse systems and single cell frequency reuse systems. The range of 802.16.3 radios varies with transmit power, channel characteristics, availability requirement, local regulations and atmospheric conditions (see IEEE 802.16.3-00/02r4 “Functional Requirements for the 802.16.3 Interoperability Standard”).

All the above features request implementation of such PHY functions as support of non-line-of-sight communication, advanced power management, smart antennae support. These functions are absent or insufficient in the baseline 802.16 standard and this is why the 802.16a amendment is focused on the definition of the above PHY and MAC functions.

For MAC it means that first of all it has to support the abovementioned PHY features and implement the proper interface to PHY. On the other hand, some of these problems may be completely or partially fixed in MAC sublayer using such tools as ARQ, advanced packing, additional scheduling flexibility.

1.2 Purpose

1.3 IEEE 802 Architectural Conformance

1.4 Reference Model

Please add the following new subclause

1.4.1 License Exempt Mesh Topology Option

The IEEE 802.16 TG4 system has an optional mesh topology. Unlike the basic point-to-multipoint mode, there are no clearly separate downlink and uplink subframes in the mesh mode. Each station (BS or SS) is able to create direct communication links to a number of other stations in the network instead of communicating only with the BS.

The stations with which a station has direct links with are called neighbors and shall form a neighborhood. A two-hop neighborhood contains, additionally, all the neighbors of the neighborhood. All the stations shall coordinate their transmissions in their two-hop neighborhood. A station may select any of the links it does have to its neighbors to forward traffic originated in the node itself or in some other node in the network. Coordinated transmissions ensure collision-free scheduling.

For transmission coordination, there is a specific control period in the beginning of each MAC frame in which each station shall periodically transmit its own schedule on a point-to-multipoint basis to all its neighbors. Within a given frequency channel, all neighbor stations receive the same schedule transmissions. All the stations in a network shall use this same channel to transmit schedule information in a format of specific

resource requests and grants. A unique schedule transmission slot shall be determined with the aid of two-hop neighborhood addresses. (?)

In normally scheduled transmissions, all stations act like either a BS or an SS does for uplink bandwidth requests in the point-to-multipoint mode. In other words, a station that wishes to transmit must be granted the bandwidth it had requested earlier from a neighbor. Thus the transmitting station acts like a SS in uplink direction. Likewise, when a receiving station must have previously granted bandwidth in response to a request from its neighbor. Thus a receiving station acts like a BS in the uplink direction.

2. Normative references

3. Definitions

4. Abbreviations and acronyms

ARP	Address Resolution Protocol
ARQ	Automatic Retransmit Request
ATDD	Adaptive Time Division Duplexing
ATM	Asynchronous Transfer Mode
BNI	Base Station Network Interface
BR	Bandwidth Request
BS	Base Station
CCS	Common Channel Signaling
CG	Continuous Grant
CID	Connection Identifier
CLP	Cell Loss Priority
CPS	Common Part Sublayer
CPT	CS Pass Through
CS	Convergence Sublayer
CSI	Convergence Subprocess Indicator
ChID	Channel ID
DAMA	Demand Assign Multiple Access
DCD	Downlink Channel Descriptor
DES	Data Encryption Standard
DIUC	Downlink Interval Usage Code
DL	Down Link
DSA	Dynamic Service Addition
DSC	Dynamic Service Change
DSD	Dynamic Service Deletion
EC	Encryption Control
EKS	Encryption Key Sequence
EUI	Extended Unique Identifier
FBWA	Fixed Broadband Wireless Access
FC	Fragment Control
FDD	Frequency Division Duplex
FSN	Fragment Sequence Number
GM	Grant Management
GPC	Grant Per Connection
GPT	Grant Per Terminal

1	HCS	Header Check Sequence
2	HEC	Header Error Check
3	HL-MAA	High Level Medium Access Arbitration
4	HMAC	Keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication
5	HT	Header Type
6	IE	Information Element
7	IP	Internet Protocol
8	IUC	Interval Usage Code
9	IWF	InterWorking Function
10	LL-MAA	Low Level Medium Access Arbitration
11	LLC	Logical Link Control
12	LOS	Line of Sight
13	MAA	Medium Access Arbitration
14	MAC	Medium Access Control
15	MIB	Management Information Base
16	MIC	Message Integrity Check
17	MPEG	Moving Pictures Experts Group
18	MPLS	Multi-Protocol Label Switching
19	MSDU	MAC Service Data Unit
20	MTG	Modulation Transition Gap
21	NNI	Network to Network Interface (or Network Node Interface)
22	OOB	Out of Band or Out of Block
23	PBR	Piggy-Back Request
24	PCI	Protocol Control Information
25	PDH	Plesiochronous Digital Hierarchy
26	PDU	Protocol Data Unit
27	PHS	Payload Header Suppression
28	PHSF	Payload Header Suppression Field
29	PHSI	Payload Header Suppression Index
30	PHSM	Payload Header Suppression Mask
31	PHSR	Payload Header Suppression Rule
32	PHSS	Payload Header Suppression Size
33	PHSV	Payload Header Suppression Valid
34	PHY	Physical Layer
35	PI	PHY Information element
36	PKM	Privacy Key Management
37	PM	Poll Me Bit
38	PMD	Physical Media Dependant
39	PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
40	PS	Physical Slot
41	PSH	Packing Sub-Header
42	PSP	Packing Sub-Header Present
43	PTI	Payload Type Indicator
44	PVC	Permanent Virtual Connection
45	QoS	Quality of Service
46	RS	Reed-Solomon
47	RTG Rx/Tx	Transmission Gap
48	SA	Security Association
49	SAID	Security Association IDentifier
50	SAP	Service Access Point
51	SDH	Synchronous Digital Hierarchy
52	SDU	Service Data Unit
53	SF	Service Flow
54	SI	Slip Indicator

1	SNI	Subscriber Station Network Interface
2	SS	Subscriber Station
3	STG	SS Transition Gap
4	SVC	Switched Virtual Connection
5	TC	Transmission Convergence
6	TDD	Time Division Duplex
7	TDM	Time Division Multiplex
8	TDMA	Time Division Multiple Access
9	TDU	TC Data Unit
10	TEK	Traffic Encryption Key
11	TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
12	TLV	Type-Length-Value
13	TTG	Tx/Rx Transmission Gap
14	UCD	Uplink Channel Descriptor
15	UGS	Unsolicited Grant Service
16	UGS-AD	Unsolicited Grant Service with Activity Detection
17	UIUC	Uplink Interval Usage Code
18	UL	Uplink
19	UNI	User to Network Interface
20	UTC	Coordinated Universal Time
21	VC	Virtual Channel
22	VCI	Virtual Channel Identifier
23	VP	Virtual Path
24	VPI	Virtual Path Identifier

5. Service Specific Convergence Sublayer

6. MAC Sublayer - Common Part

Change the first paragraph of this clause to the following:

A network that utilizes a shared medium must provide a mechanism to efficiently share it. ~~A two-way~~ point-to-multipoint and mesh topology wireless networks ~~is~~ are good examples of a shared medium; here the medium ~~s~~ is are the space through which the radio waves propagate.

6.1 MAC Service Definitions

6.2 Data/Control Plane

6.2.1 Addressing and Connections

6.2.2 Message Formats

Please change the text in the following heading

6.2.2.4.3 10 to 66 Ghz Downlink Map (DL-MAP) Message

Please add the following new subclause

6.2.2.4.3.1 Sub-11 GHz Downlink Map (DL MAP) Message

The Downlink MAP (DL-MAP) message defines the access to the downlink information.

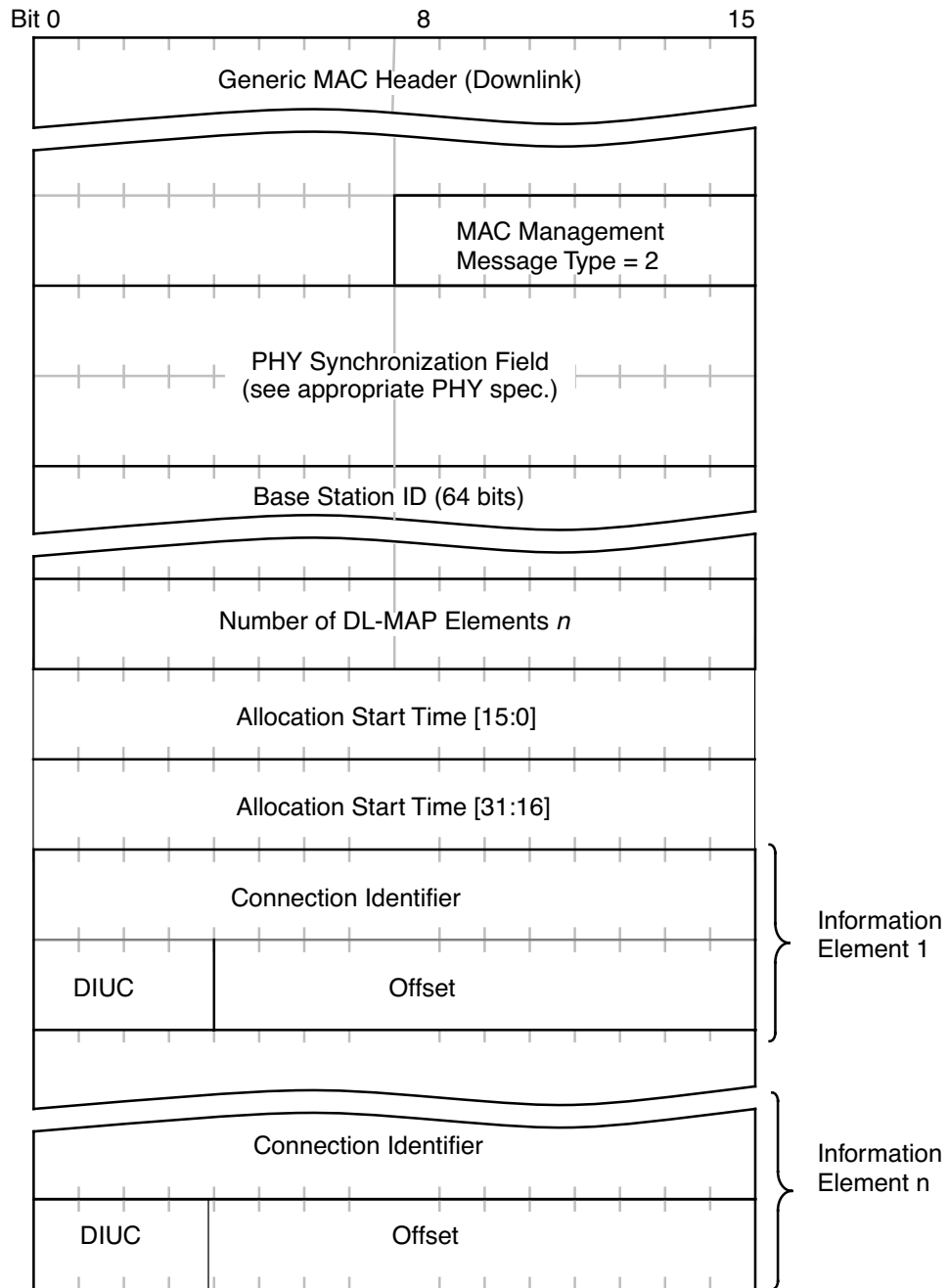


FIGURE 1.

A BS shall generate DL-MAP messages in the format shown in Figure 1, including all of the following parameters:

- **Length**
If the length of the DL-MAP message is a non-integral number of bytes, the Length field in the MAC header is rounded up to the next integral number of bytes. The message must be padded to match this length but the SS must disregard the 4 pad bits.
- **PHY Synchronization**
The PHY Synchronization field is dependent on the PHY layer used. The encoding of this field is given in each PHY separately.
- **Base Station ID**
The Base Station ID is a 64 bit long field identifying the BS. The Base Station ID may be programmable.
- **Alloc Start Time**
Effective start time of the uplink allocation defined by the DL-MAP in units of mini-slots. The start time is relative to the start of a frame in which DL-MAP message is transmitted.
- **Number Of Elements**
The number of Information Elements that follows.
- **MAP Information Elements**
Each Information Element (IE) consists of three fields:
 - 1) Connection Identifier
 - 2) Downlink Interval Usage Code
 - 3) Offset

The encoding of remaining portions of the DL-MAP message is PHY dependent and may not be present. Refer to the appropriate PHY specification.

Please change the following heading name

6.2.2.4.4 10 to 66 GHz Uplink Map (UL-MAP) Message

Please insert the following new subclause

6.2.2.4.4.1 Sub-10 GHz Uplink MAP (UL-MAP) Message

The Uplink MAP (UL-MAP) message allocates access to the uplink channel. The UL-MAP message shall be as shown in Fig. ?.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

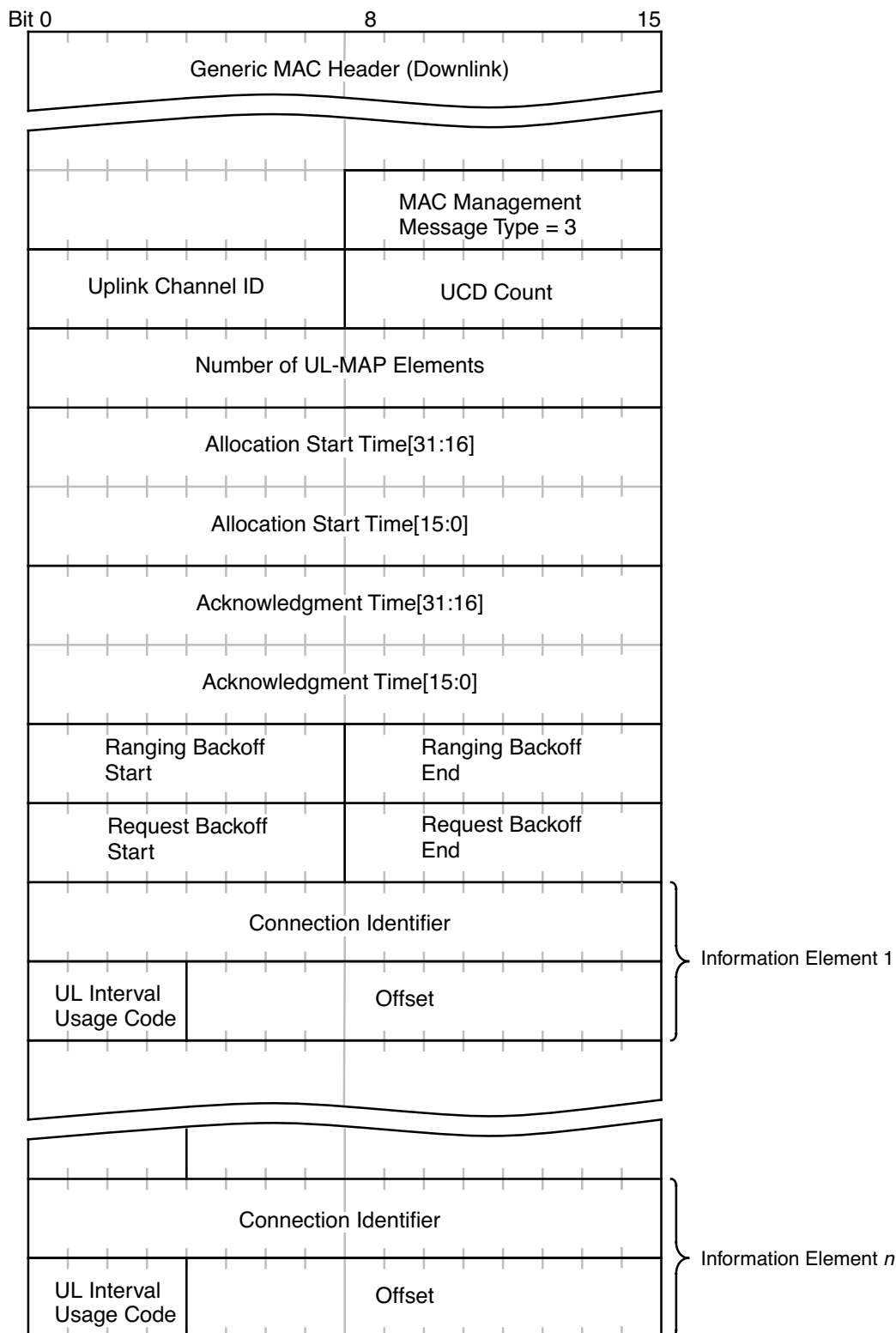


FIGURE 2.

The BS shall generate the UL-MAP with the following parameters:

- **Uplink Channel ID**
The identifier of the uplink channel to which this Message refers.
- **UCD Count**
Matches the value of the Configuration Change Count of the UCD which describes the burst parameters which apply to this map.
- **Number of Elements**
Number of information elements in the map.
- **Alloc Start Time**
Effective start time of the uplink allocation defined by the UL-MAP in units of mini-slots. The start time is relative to the start of a frame in which UL-MAP message is transmitted (PHY Type = {0,1}) or from BS initialization (PHY Type = 2).
- **Ack Time**
Latest time processed in uplink in units of mini-slots. This time is used by the SS for collision detection purposes. The ack time is relative to the start of a frame in which UL-MAP message is transmitted (PHY Type = {0,1}) or from BS initialization (PHY Type = 2).
- **Ranging Backoff Start**
Initial back-off window size for initial ranging contention, expressed as a power of 2. Values of n range 0–15 (the highest order bits must be unused and set to 0).
- **Ranging Backoff End**
Final back-off window size for initial ranging contention, expressed as a power of 2. Values of n range 0–15 (the highest order bits must be unused and set to 0).
- **Request Backoff Start**
Initial back-off window size for contention data and requests, expressed as a power of 2. Values of n range 0–15 (the highest order bits must be unused and set to 0).
- **Request Backoff End**
Final back-off window size for contention requests, expressed as a power of 2. Values of n range 0–15 (the highest order bits must be unused and set to 0).
- **MAP Information Elements**
Each Information Element (IE) consists of three fields:
 - 1) Connection Identifier
 - 2) Uplink Interval Usage Code
 - 3) Offset

Information elements define uplink bandwidth allocations. Each UL-MAP message shall contain at least one Information Element that marks the end of the last allocated burst. The Information Elements are strictly order within the UL-MAP, as shown in Figure 2.

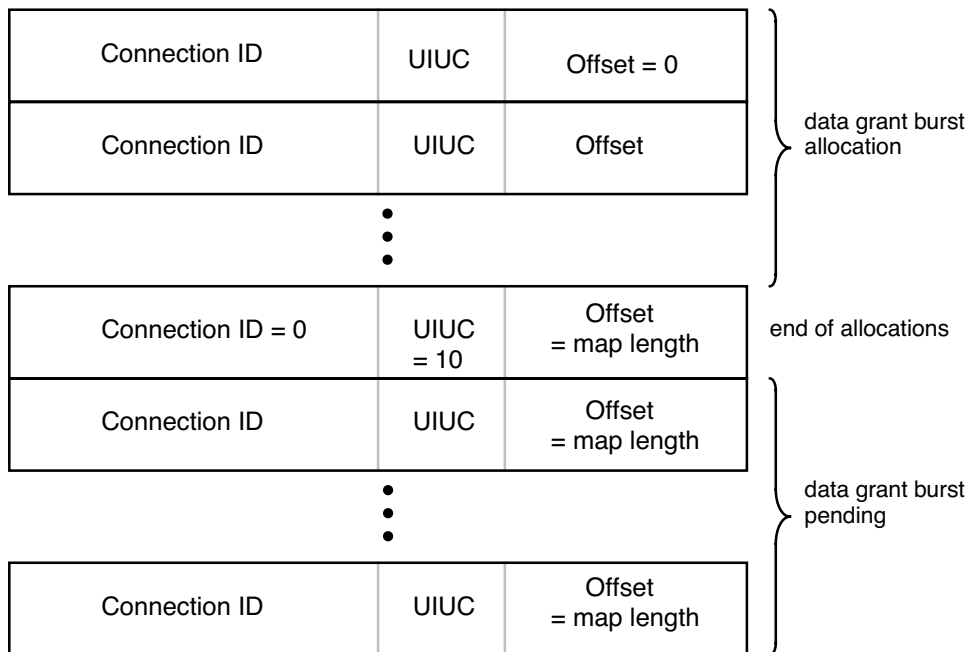


FIGURE 3.

The Connection Identifier represents the assignment of the IE to either a unicast, multicast, or broadcast address. When specifically addressed to allocate a bandwidth grant, the CID may be either the Basic CID of the SS or a Traffic CID for one of the connections of the SS. A four-bit Uplink Interval Usage Code (UIUC) shall be used to define the type of uplink access and the burst type associated with that access. A Burst Descriptor shall be included for each Interval Usage Code that is to be used in the UL-MAP. The Interval Usage Code shall be one of the values defined in Table 1. The offset indicates the start time, in units of minislots, of the burst relative to the Allocation Start Time given in the UL-MAP message. Consequently the first IE will have an offset of 0. The end of the last allocated burst is indicated by allocating a NULL burst

(CID = 0 and UIUC = 10) with zero duration. The time instants indicated by the offsets are the transmission times of the first symbol of the burst including preamble.

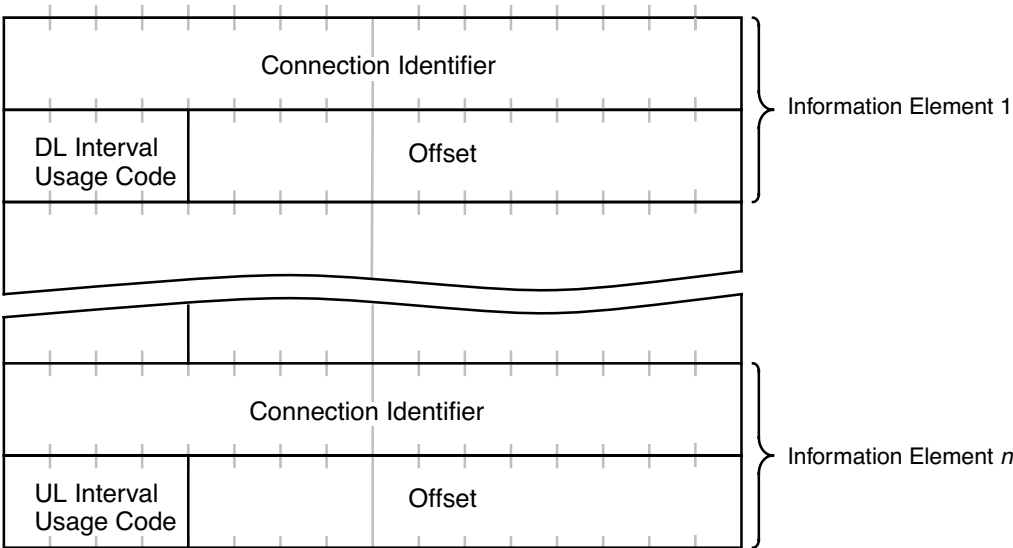
Table 1 – Uplink Map Information Elements

IE Name	Uplink Interval Usage Code (UIUC)	Connection ID	Mini-slot Offset
Reserved	0	NA	Reserved for future use
Request	1	any	Starting offset of REQ region
Initial Maintenance	2	broadcast	Starting offset of MAINT region (used in Initial Ranging)
Station Maintenance	3	unicast	Starting offset of MAINT region (used in Periodic Ranging)
Data Grant Burst Type 1	4	unicast	Starting offset of Data Grant Burst Type assignment If inferred length = 0, then it is a Data Grant Burst Type pending.
Data Grant Burst Type 2	5	unicast	Starting offset of Data Grant Burst Type assignment If inferred length = 0, then it is a Data Grant Burst Type Pending
Data Grant Burst Type 3	6	unicast	Starting offset of Data Grant Burst Type 2 assignment If inferred length = 0, then it is a Data Grant Burst Type pending.
Data Grant Burst Type 4	7	unicast	Starting offset of Data Grant Burst Type 2 assignment If inferred length = 0, then it is a Data Grant Burst Type pending.
Data Grant Burst Type 5	8	unicast	Starting offset of Data Grant Burst Type 3 assignment If inferred length = 0, then it is a Data Grant Burst Type pending.
Data Grant Burst Type 6	9	unicast	Starting offset of Data Grant Burst Type 3 assignment If inferred length = 0, then it is a Data Grant Burst Type pending.
Null IE	10	zero	Ending offset of the previous grant. Used to bound the length of the last actual interval allocation.
Empty	11	zero	Used to schedule gaps in transmission
Reserved	11-14	any	Reserved
Expansion	15	expanded UIUC	# of additional 32-bit words in this IE

Please insert the following new subclause:

1 **6.2.2.4.5 Sub-10 GHz Uplink + Downlink MAP**

2
3 For TDD and Burst FDD systems, a single MAP message is defined, that covers both uplink and downlink
4 directions.
5
6
7
8
9
10



39 **FIGURE 4.**

40
41
42 *Please change the text in the following heading*

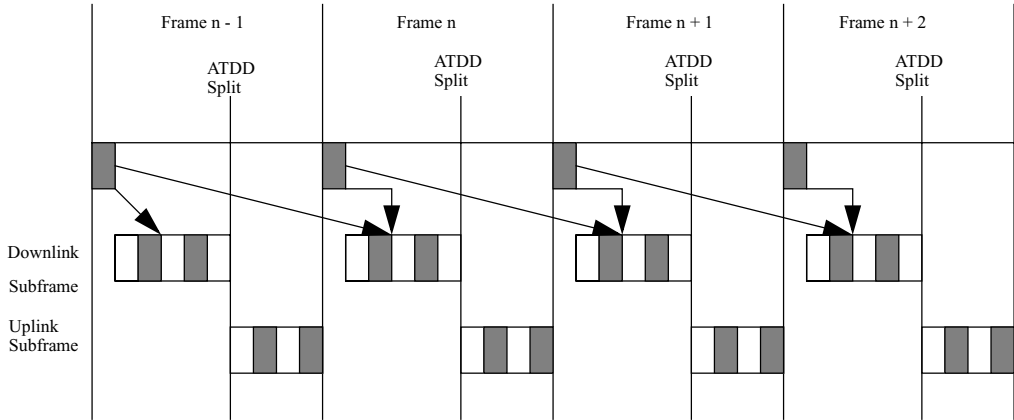
43
44 **6.2.7.6.1 10 to 66 GHz Map Relevance for Framed (Burst) PHY Systems**

45
46
47 *Please add the following new subclause*
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

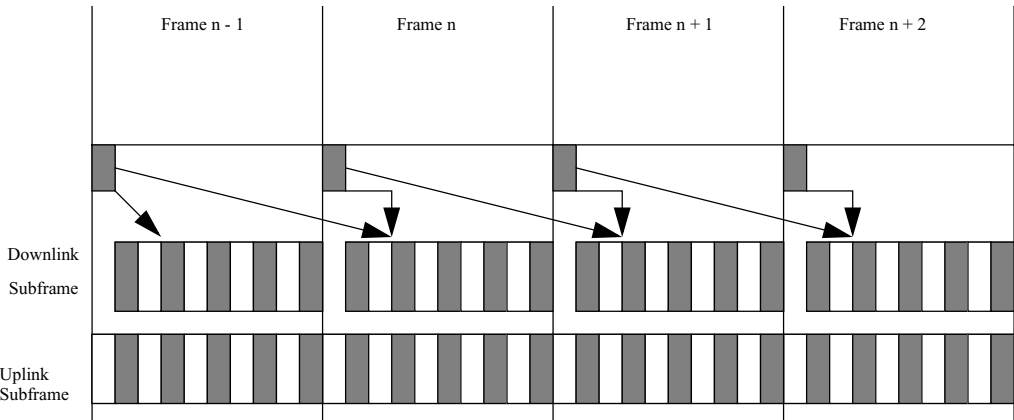
1 **6.2.7.6.1.1 Sub-10 GHz MAP Relevance and Synchronization**

2
3 **6.2.8 MAP Relevance for Burst PHY Systems**

4
5
6
7 -



33 **FIGURE 5. Maximum Time Relevance of PHY and MAC Control Information (TDD)**



66 **FIGURE 6. Maximum Time Relevance of PHY and MAC Control Information (FDD)**

As shown in Figure 5 and 6, the portion of the time axis described by the MAP is a contiguous area whose duration is equal to the duration of a frame. In the example shown in Figure 5, it consists of a portion of the downstream time of the frame in which the MAP is contained, the upstream time in this frame, followed by a portion of the downstream time in the next frame. The fraction of the downstream time in the current frame (or alternatively, the Allocation Start Time), is a quantity that is under the control of the scheduler.

Please insert the following new subclause:

6.2.8.0.0.1 License Exempt Bands - Power Control Information Element

When a power change for a connection (CID) is required, use the Expansion IE (UIUC Code=15) as follows:

- 1) Connection Identifier (16-bit)- This is the CID.
- 2) Additional Set - (4-bits)
- 3) Power Control - (4-bits)

This IE shall be sent only when is needed.

For example, to adjust the power control for a specific CID, the BS must create a UL-MAP message with two different IEs applied to the same SS (in case of GPT mode), a standard IE providing the active Burst Type (Dynamic Set) with offset, and a second Expanded IE (UIUC=15). This IE contains both the Power Control adjustments and an additional set of parameters.

Please insert the following new subclause and figures

6.2.2.4.33 License Exempt Mesh Option - Mesh Schedule (MSH-SCH) Message

A Mesh Schedule message shall be transmitted by all the stations in a mesh mode at a periodic interval to inform all the neighbors the schedule of the transmitting station. Each station shall determine its own unique Mesh Schedule message transmission time using the two-hop neighborhood information.

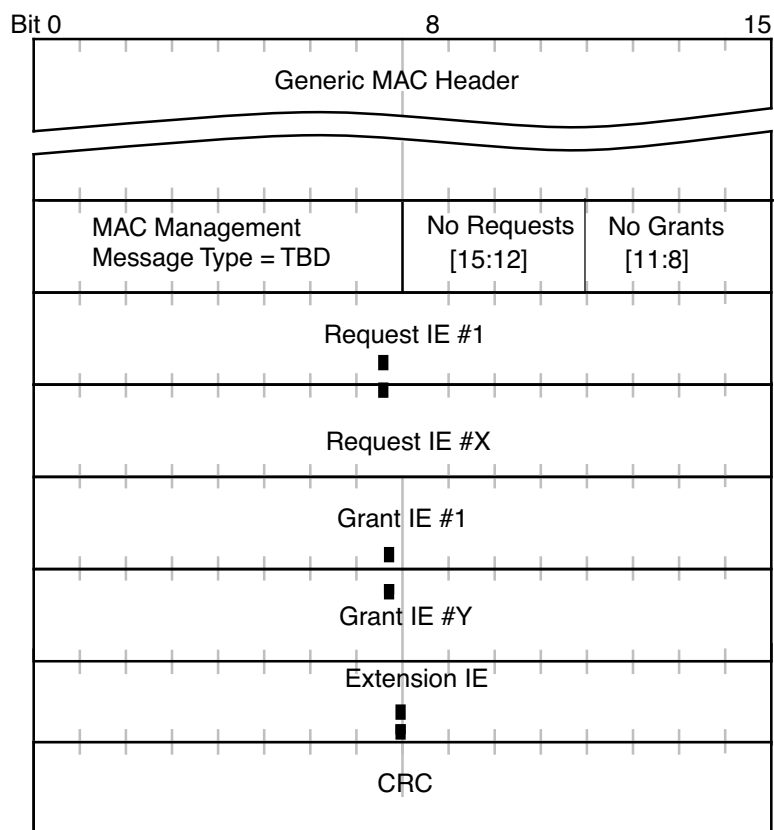


Figure TBD—MSH-SCH Message Format (SS to SS)

The transfer syntax of each of the information elements of the MSH-SCH message is illustrated in Figure tbd through Figure tbd+3. Various fields are respectively described in Table n through Table n+3.

6.2.2.4.33.1 License Exempt Mesh Option - Mesh Mode Bandwidth Request Information Element

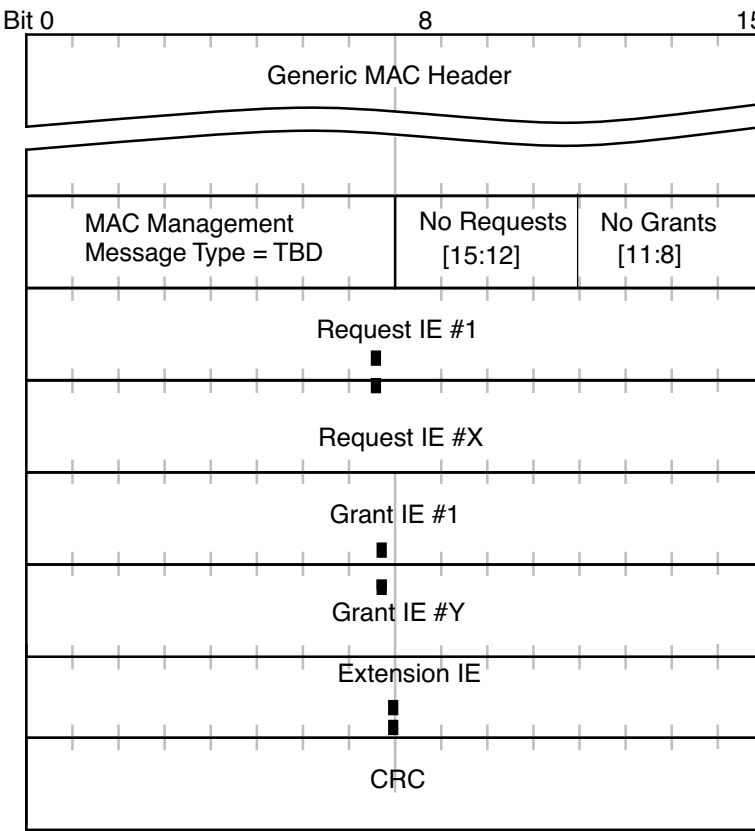


Figure TBD—MSH-REQ Format (SS to SS)

6.2.3 Transmission of MAC PDUs

6.2.4 Uplink Service

6.2.5 Bandwidth Allocation and Request Mechanisms

6.2.6 MAC support of PHY layers

6.2.7.7 License Exempt Dynamic Frequency Selection

DFS is the process that is used primarily to assign one of several possible channels to the SS. Additionally, especially in a mesh mode, DFS may be also used to assign a most feasible channel to each link (unicast/multicast/broadcast). The process requires monitoring by the SS and assignment of channels by the upper processing layers of the BS.(Comment: in both Mesh and Directional Antenna Systems the DFS will assign the most feasible channels)

6.2.7.7.1 License Exempt RSSI and CCI measurement of a Downlink Channel:

Within the mesh and directive antenna system architectures, each SS, prior to registration, will monitor the available channel spectrum. Typically, the SS will go to each assigned channel (which can be a few as 4) and monitor each channel and compile a list of readable channels. Each channel will be characterized in terms of its RSSI, which will be determined by the PMD measurement of the preamble bits of the OFDM bursts (in a TBD manner), and a similar reading will be made of the Co-Channel Interference (CCI), also to be determined by the PMD measurement of a designated OFDM "quiet time" (TBD).

6.2.7.7.2 License Exempt Valid Channels

Valid channels will be considered to be only those channels which have a high enough S/N allowing successful synchronization and demodulation of the MAC Management Messages

6.2.7.7.3 License Exempt Assignment of Downlink Channel ID's to RSSI and CCI Measurements.

Valid channels will allow the MAC layer to read the Downlink Channel Descriptor (DCD) and Downlink Access Definition (DL-MAP) messages. These messages are transmitted periodically (see Table 67 in Ref 1) on the channel being monitored.

The DCD will provide the SS with a Downlink Channel ID (1 Byte) and the channel EIRP, which is encoded at a TLV tuple in the DCD (specifically as a Type 2 byte; 1 byte message described as a Downlink Physical Channel Attribute. See 11.1.2.1, DCD Channel Encodings)

The DL-MAP will provide the 64 bit Base Station ID.

The Base Station ID; Downlink Channel ID, channel EIRP, RSSI reading and CCI reading will be sent to higher processing layers.

The higher processing layers, not detailed herein, will make a choice concerning the most acceptable downlink channel to monitor. The higher processing layers will then tune the PMD to the most acceptable channel, and re-synchronize to this channel.

6.2.7.7.4 License Exempt Registration Procedure

The SS will obtain all necessary downlink and uplink parameters as described in Sections 6.2.7.2 and 6.2.7.3. This being done, a link will be established with the BS and ranging will be undertaken to finalize any corrections to timing and synchronization; as per Section 6.2.7.5 and 6.2.7.6.

This procedure being completed the SS would then normally proceed with the establishment of IP connectivity, as per Section 6.2.7.8.1. However; in the IEEE 802.16.4 MAC it is proposed that this step be delayed; and that a new message, a Dynamic Frequency Selection Request Message (DFS-REQ) be transmitted to the BS.

The DFS-REQ would be in the standard MAC Management Message Format (6.2.2). The DFS-REQ can be sent by the SS or the BS. Base Station originated DFS-REQ messages would be soliciting best-channel information from the particular SS (identified by the Vendor ID in the configuration file). SS originated DFS-REQ messages would be carrying candidate channel information to the BS.

Additionally, there is a new MAC management message called DFS-RSP. This message is a BS originated message sent in response to the DFS-REQ message from the SS.

The DFS-REQ would carry TLV encoded information. The TLV tuples will have configuration files having the settings described below.

6.2.7.7.5 License Exempt TLV Configurations for SS Transmitted DFS-REQ Messages

All uplink DFS-REQ messages sent by the SS to the BS must contain the following TLV settings:

- 1) Vendor ID of SS
- 2) Base Station ID (current)
- 3) Downlink Channel Configuration Setting (current)
- 4) Uplink Channel Configuration Setting (current)
- 5) Downlink ID
- 6) Channel EIRP
- 7) Mean RSSI
- 8) Mean CCI
- 9) CCI variance
- 10) RSSI variance
- 11) RSSI Fading rate (optional) (current channel)

Base Station ID, Downlink ID, Channel EIRP, mean RSSI, mean CCI, CCI variance, RSSI Variance, RSSI Fading rate (optional) (First Alternative channel)

Base Station ID, Downlink ID, Channel EIRP, mean RSSI, mean CCI, CCI variance, RSSI Variance, RSSI Fading rate (optional) (Last Alternative channel)

6.2.7.7.6 License Exempt TLV Configurations for BS Transmitted DFS-REQ Messages

All downlink DFS-REQ messages are sent by the BS to the SS after the SS has successfully registered with the BS. This message is sent in order to interrogate the SS on the quality of all, or a set of, the possible received channels. This message is generated by the upper processing layers beyond the scope of this specification (such layers would be unique to either the Mesh or Directive Antenna systems). The SS would respond to this message by sending the DFS MAC management message described earlier.

The TLV for this message would contain:

- 1) Vendor ID of SS
- 2) Base Station ID
- 3) Downlink ID (1st channel to measure)
- 4) Base Station ID
- 5) Downlink ID (Nth channel to measure)
- 6) Measurement Bandwidth

6.2.7.7.7 License Exempt TLV Configuration Settings for BS Transmitted DFS-RSP Messages

All downlink DFS-RSP messages sent by the BS to the SS shall contain the following TLV configuration settings:

- 1) Vendor ID of SS
- 2) Base Station ID (assigned)
- 3) Downlink ID (assigned)
- 4) Downlink Channel Configuration Setting (assigned)
- 5) Uplink Channel Configuration Setting (assigned)
- 6) Uplink EIRP setting (assigned)

6.2.7.8 License Exempt Co-Existence

The DRFM forms the basis on co-existence, it is needed so that other terminals, operating on different systems will at least be able to learn something about the potential interference.

6.2.7.8.1 License Exempt Downlink Radio Frequency Management (DRFM) Message

This message is sent out on an occasional basis (once every 30 seconds to once every minute) on the downstream channel of a base station, which can have multiple antennas. Its purpose is to send its RF configuration information to adjacent Base Stations. This message will provide the adjacent base stations with information that is useful for the choice of frequencies, radiation patterns, and EIRP's that the adjacent base stations can use in such a way that potential CCI is mitigated.

6.2.7.8.2 License Exempt Hierarchical Assumptions for Interference Mitigation and Co-Existence: First Come/First Claim

In the License-Exempt environment of the IEEE 802.16.4 specification, it is proposed that for fixed point to multipoint access systems complying to the specification, that the first FWA systems' occupation of a space/frequency zone be respected and protected against co-channel interference from any FWA system installed thereafter. Control would be exercised by an adaptive algorithm that would operate within the BS and set up its RF transmission characteristics in compliance to this general co-existence rule. Such algorithms work best with configurations of oblong microcells arranged in rosette configurations. However, they can work with omnidirectional radiating systems as well.

6.2.7.8.3 License Exempt Downlink Radio Frequency Management (DRFM) Message

A Radio Frequency Management Message shall be transmitted by the BS at a periodic interval (30 sec. TBD) (Table XX TBD). The DRFM is a MAC Management Message of Type 28 (TBD). It begins with a Generic Downlink MAC header and its format is shown in Figure (XX TBD)

This message will characterize the Radio Frequency Emission properties of the BS, and other co-located emitters which can be other base stations or channels controlled by the single base station. The purpose of this message is to inform nearby and potentially interfering BS and SS of the radiation of the originating BS

Each emission from the BS is characterized by giving its channel frequency, EIRP, direction, and beam-width. The following parameters will be included in a DRFM:

- 1) Base Station ID - The Base Station ID is a 64 bit long field identifying the BS. The Base Station ID may be programmable or derived from the configuration file used to set up Base Station parameters on installation and activation.
- 2) GPS Locator - GPS Location of the BS which can have up to 64 co-located radio emitters which can be either other base stations or a multiple of channels from a single base station. The GPS coordinates are loaded into the configuration file used to set up the Base Station parameters on installation and activation. The resolution of the GPS inputs are to 0.01 minute, and consist of signed latitude and longitudes. The GPS locator field is 7 bytes long and contains reserved bit fields.
- 3) Height of BS - The height of a BS in meters above ground level. This is a 10 bit long field allowing the indication of a maximum height of 1024 Meters.
- 4) Base Station Emitter Number - The number of distinct channel emissions that are emanating from the BS and its co-located base stations (having the same GPS locator). This is a 6 Bit long field that also defines the number of TLV Downlink Channel Emission (DCE) frames to be read.
- 5) Downlink Channel Emission (DCE) Frame - This is a TLV encoded frame that contains information on each emission's radiation characteristics. Up to N=64 emissions can be specified as

1 originating from the location of single BS. Each frame shall contain the frequency of the emis-
2 sion (4 bytes in multiples of KiloHertz); EIRP per emission (in signed units of Power Spectral
3 Density dBm/MHz) 1 Byte; direction of emission with respect to Magnetic North in increments
4 of 2 degrees covering 0-360 degrees azimuth (1 Byte); Beamwidth of emitting antenna in incre-
5 ments of 2 degrees covering 0-360 degrees beamwidth (1 Bytes); and 1 Byte reserved for future
6 use. The DCE frames $N=\{1 \text{ to } X\}$ will correspond to the emissions from the BS whose ID is
7 given. Emissions from other co-located but independent base stations will be given in
8 $N=\{(X+1) \text{ to } 64\}$.
9

10
11
12 **|** *Please insert the following new figure:*
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

Bit 0					8						Bit 15
EC	EKS	Rsvd	Length								
Connection Identifier											
HT= 0	CS I	FC	FSN	CI	PDE	CPT	PSP	Rsvd			
HCS					MAC Management Message Type = 28 (TBD)						
Base Station ID Byte 1					Base Station ID Byte 2						
Base Station ID Byte 3					Base Station ID Byte 4						
Base Station ID Byte 5					Base Station ID Byte 6						
Base Station ID Byte 7					Base Station ID Byte 8						
LAT 0=N 1=S	Latitude Reading Degrees (0-90)				Latitude Reading Minutes (0-60)				Reserved		
Latitude Reading 1/100 Minute (0-100)					Reserved						
LNG 0=W 1=E	Longitude Reading Degrees (0-90)				Longitude Reading Minutes (0-60)				Reserved		
Longitude Reading 1/100 Minutes (1-100)						Height of BS in 1 meter Increments (0-1024) Bits 10-15					
Height of BSCont.Bits 0-3		Number of Base Station Emitters (N=1-64)				Reserved					
DCE Byte 1 Frequency of Emitter N=1					DCE Byte 2 Frequencyof Emitter N=1						
DCE Byte 3 Frequency of Emitter N=1					DCE Byte 4 Frequency of Emitter N=1						
Eirp 0= - 1= +	EIRP in dBm/MHz for Emitter N=1				Direction of Emitter N=1 in 2 degree steps 0-360 degrees with Magnetic North Ref={00000000}						
Beamwidth of Emitter N=1 in 2 degree steps 0-360 degrees					Reserved						
1.0					??						
1					??						
??					??						
DCE Byte 1 Frequency of Emitter N=64					DCE Byte 2 Frequencyof Emitter N=64						
DCE Byte 3 Frequency of Emitter N=64					DCE Byte 4 Frequency of Emitter N=64						
Eirp 0= - 1= +	EIRP in dBm/MHz for Emitter N=64				Direction of Emitter N=64 in 2 degree steps 0-360 degrees with Magnetic North Ref={00000000}						
Beamwidth of Emitter N=64 in 2 degree steps 0-360 degrees					Reserved						

Figure XX TBD Downlink Radio Frequency Management Message Format

6.2.7.8.4 License Exempt Reception of the HBS-RFMM

The HBS-DRFM is solely for use by the upper management layers of the BS. It will require the BS to either direct an independent receiver to monitor this message, or it may direct one of its link receivers to undertake monitoring. The BS would have to scan its environment for each adjacent BS and embark on a Scanning and Synchronization procedure as outlined in Section 2.11.2. Once synchronization is achieved and DL-MAP MAC management messages are received the receiver will have to wait for the HBS-DRFM. This being done, the BS receiver, under control of the upper management layers, will scan another sector until all possible adjacent BS have been identified and characterized through their HBS-DRFM messages.

6.2.7.9 License Exempt Mesh Mode Option

Only TDD is supported. On contrary to the basic point-to-multipoint mode, there are no clearly separate downlink and uplink subframes in the mesh mode. Otherwise the frame is similar:

- 1) It is divided into an integer number of physical slots.
- 2) TDD framing is adaptive (though a fixed framing is favored to ease MSCH scheduling).

Downlink-MAP and uplink-MAP messages are not used. Instead, mesh option specific MAC Management messages (MSCH) are used to define the usage of the rest of the TDD frame. First TBD Pass in the beginning of the frame shall be reserved solely for MSCH transmission.

Insert the following subclause after the QoS subclause

6.2.12 ARQ - 2-11 GHz Bands Only

While there are several well-known ARQ algorithms, two are more commonly used; go-back-N and selective-repeat. Both of these algorithms require the sender to assign a monotonically increasing integer values to each transmitted packet. The difference lies in the method by which they handle lost packets. These methods are outlined below to assist in determining suitability.

The go-back-N algorithm receiver detects a loss when a packet arrives with a sequence number that is higher than expected. The receiver then sends a negative acknowledgement (NACK) to its peer to request a retransmission of the missing packet. The receiver then throws away any packets received whose sequence number is higher than that of the missing packet. The sending peer now begins retransmitting the missing packet and the following packets even though they were received by the receiver.

The selective-repeat algorithm likewise notifies the peer of a lost packet by issuing a NACK. However, it buffers any other received packets with higher sequence numbers and sends out an ACK for each. The sending peer receives the NACK and retransmits the missing packet. Following this retransmission, the sending peer continues sending packets again. However, it begins where it left off prior to the retransmission. There is no retransmission of segments which were correctly received by the receiver peer prior to the lost packet.

There is a variation of selective-repeat that improves performance and link utilization. This variation involves the use of a cumulative acknowledgment (CACK). For example, if the receiving peer receives a set of contiguously sequenced number packets, it can send a CACK with the last sequence number received. This informs the sending peer that all packets up to and including the packet whose sequence number is included in the CACK have been correctly received. This permits the sending peer to advance its transmission window upon receipt and thus reduces the amount of bandwidth required to transmit ACKs for each packet.

It is of use to note that if a window size of one is chosen, perhaps due to a lack of receiver buffer, then all three algorithms are reduced to a form of ARQ known as stop-and-go.

6.2.12.1 TLV Encoded Information ARQ Parameters Selection

ARQ algorithms can be tuned to fit an application. The following parameters can be negotiated between session endpoints for this purpose.

6.2.12.2 TLV Encoded Information ARQ Algorithm Parameter

The ARQ Algorithm TLV indicates the ARQ protocol to be used. The DSA/DSC-RSP message will contain:

- 1) An acknowledgement of this parameter, signified by the parameter's exclusion from an SFES (if one is included).
- 2) A different suggested value for the algorithm in the TLV parameter which is included in the SFES.
- 3) A negative acknowledgement signified by the presence of an unmodified copy of the TLV parameter in the SFES.

A peer may attempt to change the algorithm at any time using the DSC mechanism and this TLV parameter. The DSA/DSC-REQ message includes the following QoS parameter

Table TBD—TLV Encoded Information ARQ Algorithm TLV

Name	Type (1 octet)	Length (1 octet)	Value (variable length)
ARQ Algorithm	1	4	Unsigned 16-bit value 1 - selective-repeat w/ CACK - default 2 - selective-repeat 3 - go-back-n All other values are illegal, ignore TLV The peer sending this TLV parameter indicates its desire to use Service Flow ARQ by including this parameter. Service Flow ARQ is not used by default.

6.2.12.3 TLV Encoded Information ARQ Window Size Parameter

The Window Size TLV indicates the maximum number of outstanding packets, which may be sent without receiving a NACK. Note that the receiving peer of the reliable packet stream is responsible for buffering higher sequence numbered acknowledged packets and thus has final say for the window size. The DSA/DSC-RSP message will contain:

- 1) An acknowledgement of this parameter, signified by the parameter's exclusion from an SFES (if one is included).
- 2) A different suggested value for the algorithm in the TLV parameter which is included in the SFES.
- 3) A negative acknowledgement signified by the presence of an unmodified copy of the TLV parameter in the SFES.

A peer may attempt to change the window size at any time using the DSC mechanism and this TLV parameter. The DSA/DSC-REQ message includes the following QoS parameter

Table TBD— TLV Encoded Information ARQ Window Size

Name	Type (1 octet)	Length (1 octet)	Value (variable length)
ARQ Window Size	1	4	<p>Unsigned 16-bit value Range: 1 - 255 Default: 8 0 or 255+ are illegal values, ignore TLV</p> <p>The peer sending this TLV parameter indicates its desire to use Service Flow ARQ by including this parameter. Service Flow ARQ is not used by default</p>

6.2.12.4 TLV Encoded Information Retries Count Parameter

The Retries Count TLV indicates the maximum number of attempts that will be made to retransmit any packet. Note that the receiving peer of the reliable packet stream is responsible for buffering higher sequence numbered acknowledged packets and thus has final say for the window size. The DSA/DSC-RSP message will contain:

- 1) An acknowledgement of this parameter, signified by the parameter's exclusion from an SFES (if one is included).
- 2) A different suggested value for the algorithm in the TLV parameter which is included in the SFES.
- 3) A negative acknowledgement signified by the presence of an unmodified copy of the TLV parameter in the SFES.

A peer may attempt to change the retries count at any time using the DSC mechanism and this TLV parameter. The DSA/DSC-REQ message includes the following QoS parameter

Table TBD—TLV Encoded Information ARQ Retries Count

Name	Type (1 octet)	Length (1 octet)	Value (variable length)
ARQ Retries Count	1	4	<p>Unsigned 16-bit value Range: 1 - 15 Default: 2 0 or 15+ are illegal values, ignore TLV</p> <p>The peer sending this TLV parameter indicates its desire to use Service Flow ARQ by including this parameter. Service Flow ARQ is not used by default</p>

6.2.12.5 TLV Encoded Information ARQ Timeout Parameter

The ARQ Timeout TLV indicates the maximum number of frame times that may elapse before the receiving ARQ peer should consider the retransmission retries to have expired. This value will depend upon many factors including the flow's priority and bandwidth as well as the number of active stations. Therefore, there is no default value. The DSA/DSC-RSP message will contain:

- 1) An acknowledgement of this parameter, signified by the parameter's exclusion from an SFES (if one is included).
- 2) A different suggested value for the algorithm in the TLV parameter which is included in the SFES.
- 3) A negative acknowledgement signified by the presence of an unmodified copy of the TLV parameter in the SFES.

A peer may attempt to change the timeout period at any time using the DSC mechanism and this TLV parameter. The DSA/DSC-REQ message includes the following QoS parameter

Table TBD—TLV Encoded Information ARQ Timeout

Name	Type (1 octet)	Length (1 octet)	Value (variable length)
ARQ Timeout	1	4	<p>Unsigned 16-bit value Range: 1 - 64k Default: N/A 0 is an illegal value, ignore TLV</p> <p>The peer sending this TLV parameter indicates its desire to use Service Flow ARQ by including this parameter. Service Flow ARQ is not used by default</p>

6.2.12.6 TLV Encoded Information ARQ Element Type Parameter

The ARQ Element Type TLV indicates the type of element that will be transmitted and acknowledged within the ARQ mechanism. The DSA/DSC-RSP message will contain:

- 1) An acknowledgement of this parameter, signified by the parameter's exclusion from an SFES (if one is included).
- 2) A different suggested value for the algorithm in the TLV parameter which is included in the SFES.
- 3) A negative acknowledgement signified by the presence of an unmodified copy of the TLV parameter in the SFES.

A peer may attempt to change the element type at any time using the DSC mechanism and this TLV parameter. A dynamic change for this ARQ element will require that all outstanding elements of the previously employed element type be acknowledged prior to sender's change request (TLV) and subsequent use of the new element type. The receiver should interpret all elements received following the receipt of the TLV to be of the new element type.

The DSA/DSC-REQ message includes the following QoS parameter

Table TBD – TLV Encoded Information ARQ Element Type

Name	Type (1 octet)	Length (1 octet)	Value (variable length)
ARQ Element Type	1	4	Unsigned 16-bit value 1 - MPDU 2 - MSDU 3 - Byte Count Default: MPDU All other values are illegal, ignore TLV The peer sending this TLV parameter indicates its desire to use Service Flow ARQ by including this parameter. Service Flow ARQ is not used by default

6.3 Formats and Data Structures

[Editorial Group: Vladimir, Subbu, Jacob, Subir, Chet, Demos, Huan Chun]

6.3.1 General

- a) The ARQ implementation is obligatory
- b) The ARQ invocation is optional, per connection. ARQ can be enabled only for the unicast transmissions
- c) Sequential Numbers are used to identify the retransmitted portions of data
- d) ARQ operations are defined in the scope of 802.16 MAC connection including:
 - 4) ARQ invocation (thus presence of ARQ Sub-header). Decision on ARQ invocation should be done at the step of the connection creation/change

- 5) ARQ parameters
- 6) ARQ state variables
- 7) Sequential Numbers are unique (within the transmission window) as considered within the scope of the connection

6.3.2 Block Numbering Based Retransmission Scheme

6.3.2.1 ARQ Blocks

An **ARQ Block** is employed as an identifiable logical unit. The transmitted MSDUs and the MSDU fragments are logically divided into blocks that never change but MAY be assembled differently when retransmitting the data.

The parameter **ARQ_BLK_SIZE** should be of the form 2^N . It defines the block size in bytes. It is negotiated between the peers during the connection creation/change. **ARQ_BLK_SIZE** may vary from 1 to TBD bytes.

The block size MAY be more than the maximum MAC Message size. Then the only incomplete blocks appear.

Another parameter is acknowledgment window size **ACK_WIN_SIZE** that limits the amount of the blocks, transmitted but not acknowledged.

6.3.2.2 Transmitter Operations: MAC Message Creation and Numbering

The following is the sequence of MAC operations at the transmitting side with ARQ enabled

- 1) MSDU arriving from the CS MAY be fragmented. For the retransmission, further re-fragmentation might be performed, but without any change of existing blocks. It means that each original fragment may be splitted into smaller fragments with their boundaries aligned to the boundaries of the existing blocks.
- 2) The complete MSDUs and fragments are logically divided into portions (**ARQ blocks**) of the given size **ARQ_BLK_SIZE**. The last block in the MSDU/fragment MAY be smaller than **ARQ_BLK_SIZE**, such a block is called “incomplete block”. Once defined as a piece of data, block never changes (split or recombined)
- 3) A set of blocks is selected for the transmission and aggregated into MAC Messages. This set may include also the blocks selected for the retransmission. At this step a Sequential Number should be assigned to any block not having yet such a number. Sequential Numbers, taken in the order of their assignment, form a sequence of numbers $0 \dots 2^N - 1$ where N is the number bits (with wrap-around at 2^N). The following are the restrictions:
 - a) Only contiguous Block Sequential Numbers may appear within a single MAC Message
 - b) An incomplete block may be placed only at the end of a MAC Message or at the end of partial payload in the case of packed MAC Message
- 4) Each MAC Message gets a Sequential Number, which is the Sequential Number of the FIRST, block in the MAC Message. This number is encoded in the ARQ sub-header (see section Receiver Operations). Note that according to MAC rules, if a payload (partial payload) of a MAC message contains a MSDU fragment, it should be described correspondently in the Fragmentation Sub-header of Packing Sub-header.

It is a matter of transmitter’s policy whether the set of blocks once transmitted as a single MAC Message, will be retransmitted also as a single MAC Message.

The following picture figures examples of MSDUs, fragments, block numbering and MAC Messages.

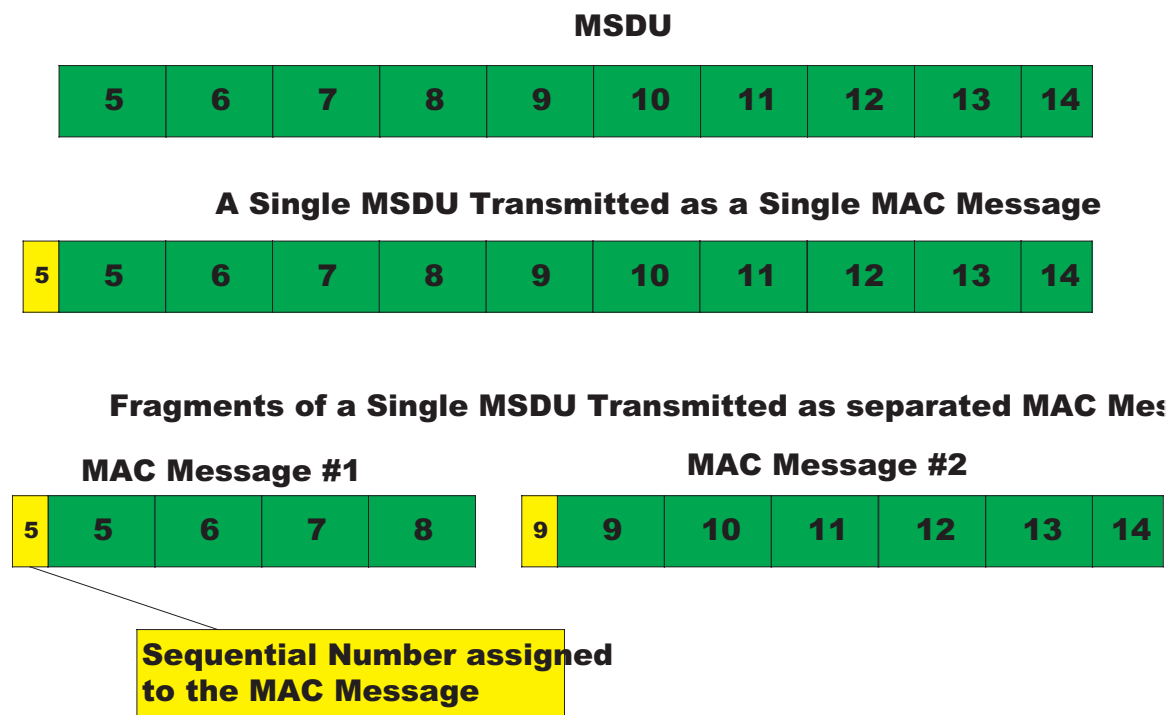
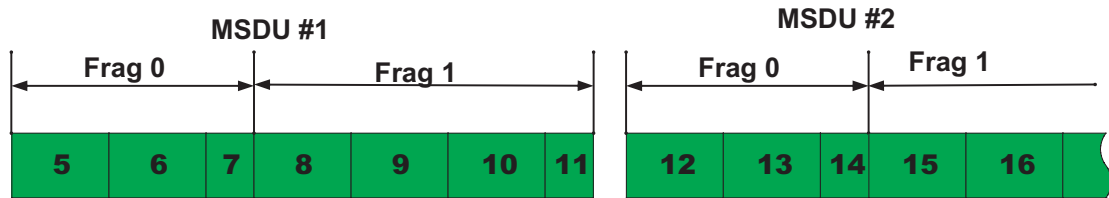
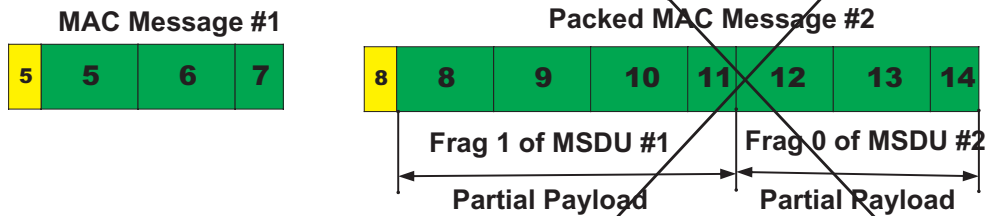


Figure 1. Options for the MSDU transmission

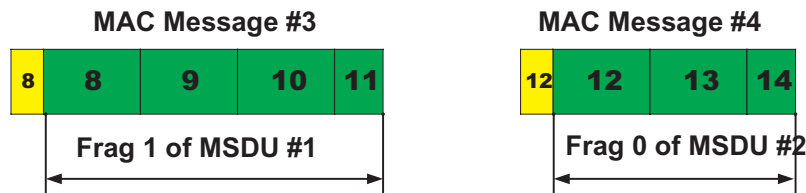
The following is an example of retransmission with and without the rearrangement of MAC Messages. Note the MAC Message #2 that contains two incomplete blocks: 11 and 14. Note that the incomplete blocks appear only at the end of either MAC Message or partial payload.



Original Transmission



Retransmission with rearrangement of MAC Messages



Retransmission without rearrangement of MAC Messages

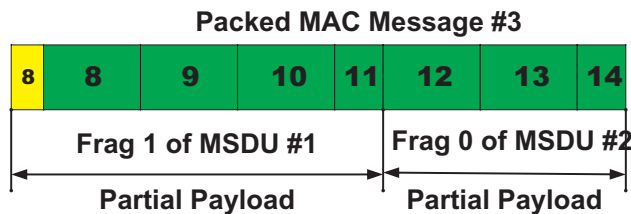


Figure 2. Retransmission with and without the rearrangement of MAC Messages

The following picture provides an important example of numbering and retransmission with a block size that exceeds the maximum of possible fragment size and therefore each fragment composes a single incomplete block. Such a definition of block size provides especially simple numbering.

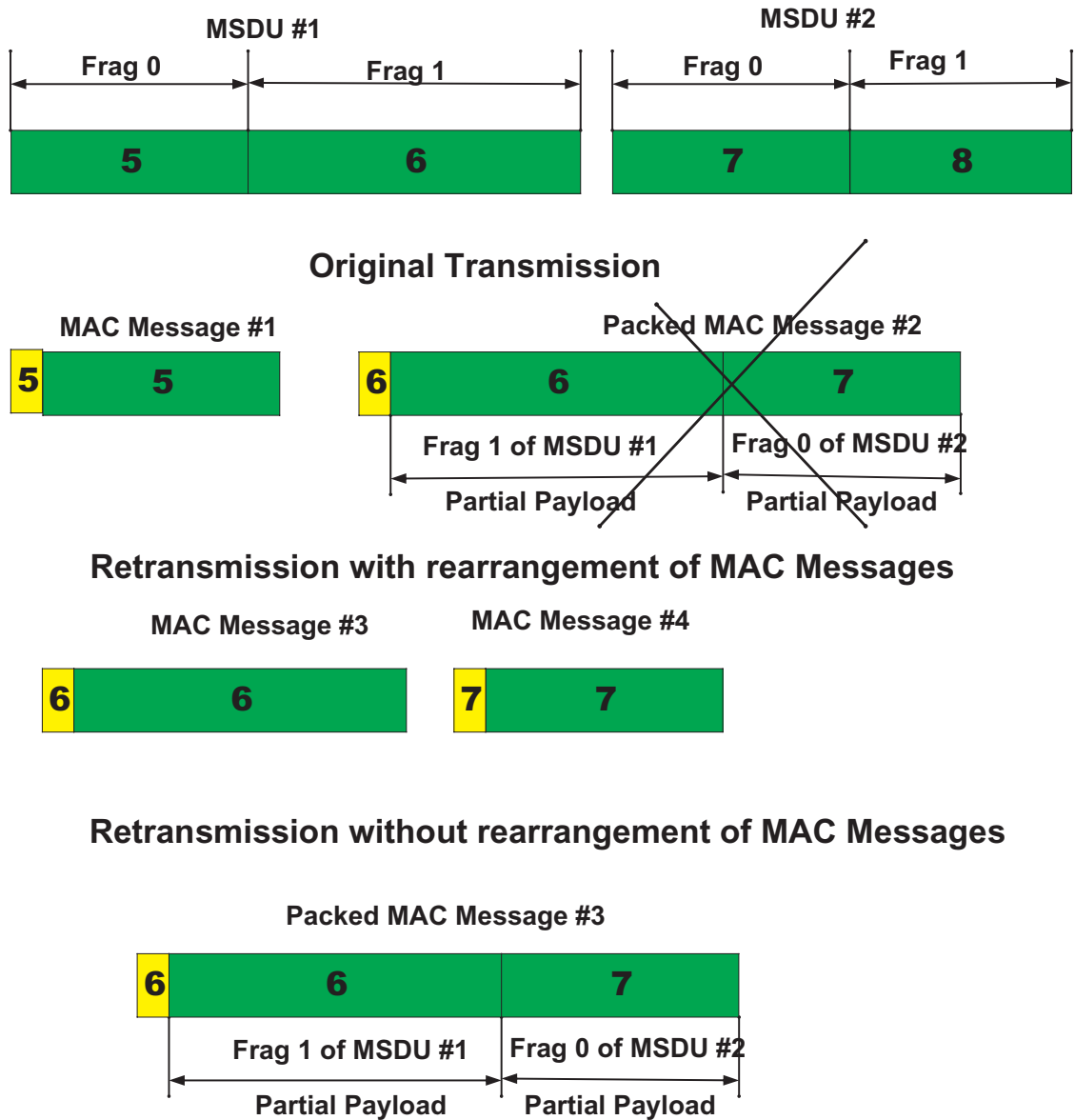


Figure 3. Retransmission with and without the rearrangement of MAC Messages

The following picture explains the interaction between the ARQ numbering and fragmentation signaling:

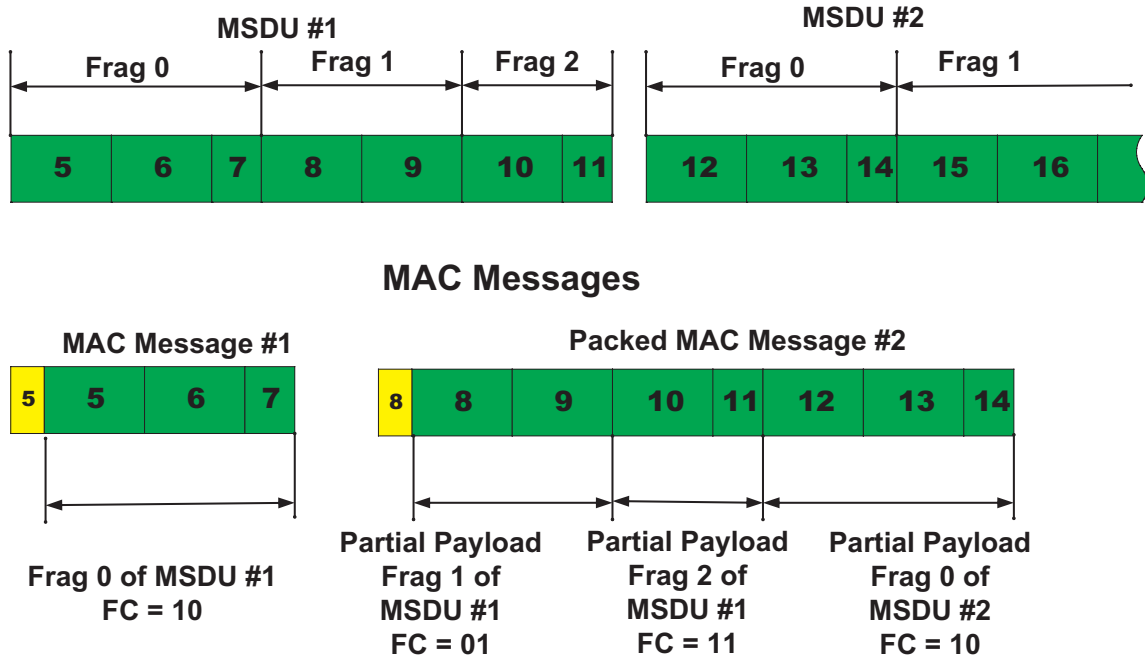


Figure 4. Interaction between the ARQ numbering and fragmentation signaling

6.3.2.3 Receiver Operations

At the Receiver side, after the successful reception of a MAC Message, the MAC Message is decoded including parsing of MAC Header, ARQ Sub-header (containing the Sequential Number), Fragmentation Sub-header (if present), Packing Sub-headers (if present). MAC compares the Sequential Number with the expected value and decides whether the MAC Message is out of order (and then MAY be rejected).

Then Receiver calculates the number of blocks in the payload or, in the case of packed MAC Message, in each partial payload.

In the case when the block size exceeds the maximum MSDU length, the number of blocks simply is equal to the number of fragments contained in the given MAC Message. For example, at the Figure 5. Block Numbering in the Case when the Block Size Exceeds the Maximum MSDU Length, after the reception of packed MAC Message #2, the next expected BSN is calculated as $6 + 2 = 8$.

Having the number of blocks and the BSN of the first block, MAC may decide what range of Block Sequential Numbers is present in the received MAC Message.

According to that, MAC calculates the next BSN expected to receive and generates the ARQ Feedback information. This information identifies the status of the blocks constituting the MAC Message, e.g. "blocks 126 to 143 have been received successfully". This information may be accumulated by MAC and then it should be sent back to Transmitter. See the format of ARQ feedback in MPDU Numbering Base Retransmission Scheme.

Finally, MAC assembles as many MSDUs as possible, according to the Sequential Numbers and FC information.

MAC MAY decide after receiving Discard message or [TBD] that certain blocks will never arrive.

Then MAC supplies some of assembled MSDUs to the Convergence Sublayer following the best efforts policy to deliver them in order.

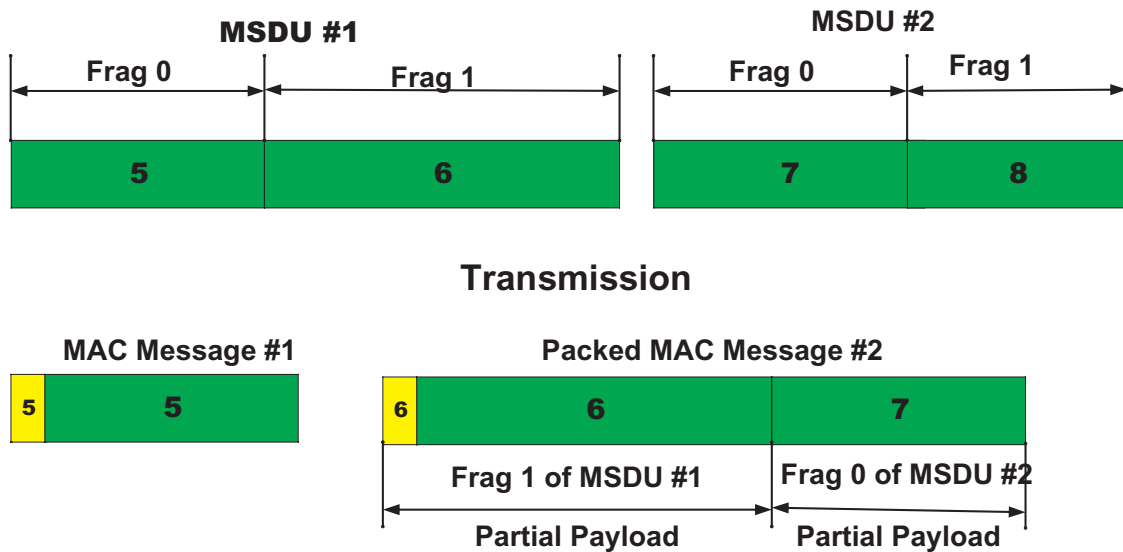


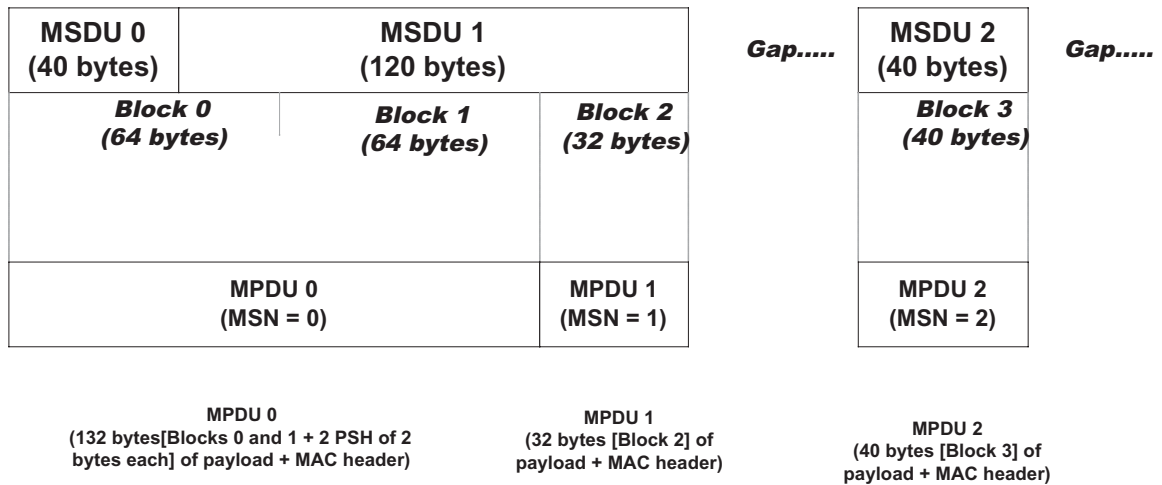
Figure 5. Block Numbering in the Case when the Block Size Exceeds the Maximum MSDU Length

6.3.3 MPDU Numbering Base Retransmission Scheme

6.3.3.1 Transmitter Operations: MAC Message Creation and Numbering

- 1) Each MPDU is assigned a sequence number irrespective of the number of bytes in the MPDU
- 2) Unit of retransmission is MPDU

The following picture shows an example of MAC PDU numbering.



<<< To be extended >>>

6.3.3.2 Receiver Operations

The next expected MPDU number is calculated as the last received MPDU sequence number + 1

<<< To be extended >>>

6.3.4 Formats of ARQ Related Signaling

6.3.4.1 Encoding of the Sequential Number

The Sequential Number is encoded in the ARQ sub-header.

6.3.4.1.1 ARQ Sub-header Presence and Formats

ARQ Sub-header is placed after the MAC Header of the MAC Message. The presence of the ARQ Sub-header and its type (Short or Long) is defined by the Payload Type value:

<<< TBD Specification of the Type values >>>

There are two formats for Sequential Numbers: Short (6 bits) and Long (14 bits) and correspondently Short and Long formats of ARQ Sub-header.

In the pictures below **FC** stands for the Fragmentation Control (see the definition of this field in [1], 6.2.3.2). **BSN** stands for the Block Sequential Number referencing to the FIRST ARQ Block in the MAC Message.

These formats of the ARQ Sub-header combine the functions of ARQ control and Fragmentation Control. So this type of sub-header will be used instead of the Fragmentation Sub-header described in [1] in the case when the MAC message carries a MSDU fragment as a payload.

<<< Seems that there is no need in the Fragmentation Sub-header as described in TG1 draft. Technically, it is suggested to replace the TG1 definition of the Fragmentation Sub-header format with ARQ Sub-header Short Formats. The new formats definitively may be used even with ARQ disabled to avoid ambiguity in the assembling of MSDUs >>>

6.3.4.1.2 ARQ Sub-header **Short Formats**

The following picture figures formats of the ARQ sub-headers with the short and long Sequential Numbers.

<<< Actually there are two options of “long” SN. Choice is TBD at the step of finalization of the ARQ Feedback format >>>

Short Number

FC(2)	SN (6)
--------------	---------------

Long Number: 14 bits

FC(2)	SN (6)
BSN (8) - Cont.	

Long Number: 11bits

FC(2)	Rsvd(3)	SN (3)
BSN (8) - Cont.		

6.3.4.2 Encoding of the ARQ Feedback in Sub-headers and Partial Payloads

<<< This section suggests two options for the ARQ feedback. The first option is based on the usage of yet another sub-header. The second is based on the enhanced packing.

The Information Elements carrying the ARQ feedback may be embedded either into the ARQ Feedback Sub-header or into a packed MAC Message as a partial payload. This option requires a change in the Packing Sub-header format comparatively to TG1 draft.

One more assumption is that the ARQ feedback for the given connection may be transmitted at arbitrary connection in opposite direction. >>>

6.3.4.3 ARQ Feedback Information Elements used in Sub-headers and Partial Payloads

The following types of Feedback Information Elements are employed

- a) Cumulative ACK-Short
- b) Cumulative ACK/NACK-Short
- c) Cumulative ACK-Long
- d) Cumulative ACK/NACK-Long

<<< There is no “non-cumulative” ACKs because of lack of bits in the type. If we don’t implement ARQ feedback sub-header, the “Last” bit may be changed to “Cumulative” flag >>>

Usage of short/long ACKs is negotiated during the connection creation/change.<<< Same way we may handle the presence / absence of CID >>>

These elements may be used in

- a) ARQ feedback piggybacked onto MAC header, particularly in standalone ACK/NACK message
- b) Partial payload within a packed MAC message

In the formats below the following fields are mentioned:

- 1) The **Last** bit is used to mark the last ARQ IE in the Sub-header.
- 2) **BM** = 1 means presence the BM field
- 3) The **BSN** value means acknowledging all the blocks with the Sequential Number < BSN within the transmission window.
- 4) **BM** means the bitmap that contains ‘1’ for NACK and ‘0’ for ACK for the blocks from BSN*8 to (BSN*8+7)

6.3.4.3.0.1 Cumulative ACK-Short

Last	BM = 0	BSN (6)
CID (8)		
CID-cont. (8)		

6.3.4.3.0.2 Cumulative ACK/NACK-Short

Last	BM= 1	BSN (6)
BM (8)		
CID (8)		
CID-cont. (8)		

6.3.4.3.0.3 Cumulative ACK-Long

<<< Option #1 >>>

Last	BM = 0	BSN (6)
BSN-cont. (8)		
CID (8)		
CID-cont. (8)		

<<< Option #2 >>>

Cumulative ACK-Long

Last	BM Flag=0	ACK / NACK	F	Rsvd
SN(8)				
SN(8) - Cont.				
CID(8)				
CID (8) - Cont.				

<<< These formats should be revisited >>>

6.3.4.3.0.4 Cumulative ACK/NACK-Long

Last	BM = 1	BSN (6)
BSN-cont. (8)		
BM (8)		
CID (8)		
CID-cont. (8)		

6.3.4.3.1 ARQ Feedback Sub-header

The following is the structure of MAC Message, which is a standalone ACK if the payload is absent. The ARQ Feedback Sub-header consists of variable number of ARQ IEs.

Generic Header Payload type points to the presence of ARQ Feedback Sub-header
Other Sub-Headers
ARQ Feedback IE with Last = 0
ARQ Feedback IE with Last = 0
.
ARQ Feedback IE with Last = 1
Payload (optional)
CRC

Figure 6. ARQ Feedback Sub-header

1 **6.3.4.3.2 ARQ Feedback as Partial Payload**

2
3 In the packed MAC Message (case of the “variable size SDUs”) the following is the structure of Packing
4 Header in the case when the payload is an ARQ Feedback IE.

5
6 “Last” fields are not used.

7
8
9
10 -

11

Type (3) = 001 or 010	FC (2)	Length (11)
-----------------------------	--------	-------------

12
13
14
15
16
17

18
19
20 The whole MAC Message structure is the following

21
22
23 -

24

Generic Header Payload type points to the presence of Packing Sub-headers and partial payloads
Packing Sub-Header
ARQ Feedback IE
Packing Sub-Header
ARQ Feedback IE
.
Packing Sub-Header
SDU
Packing Sub-Header
SDU
.
CRC

25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59

60 <<< This requires change in the definition of Packing Sub-header comparatively to TG1 draft. Technically
61 such a change may be done by replacing (for TG3) the correspondent pictures in [1], 6.2.3.3 . The following
62 might be a picture
63
64
65

Type (3)	FC (2)	Length (11)
----------	--------	-------------

Type is encoded according to the following table

Type	Meaning
000	Data payload
001	ARQ Feedback with BM
010	ARQ Feedback without BM
011-111	Reserved

>>>

6.3.4.4 Encoding of the ARQ Feedback in MAC Messages

6.3.4.4.1 Encodings used in the ARQ related MAC Messages

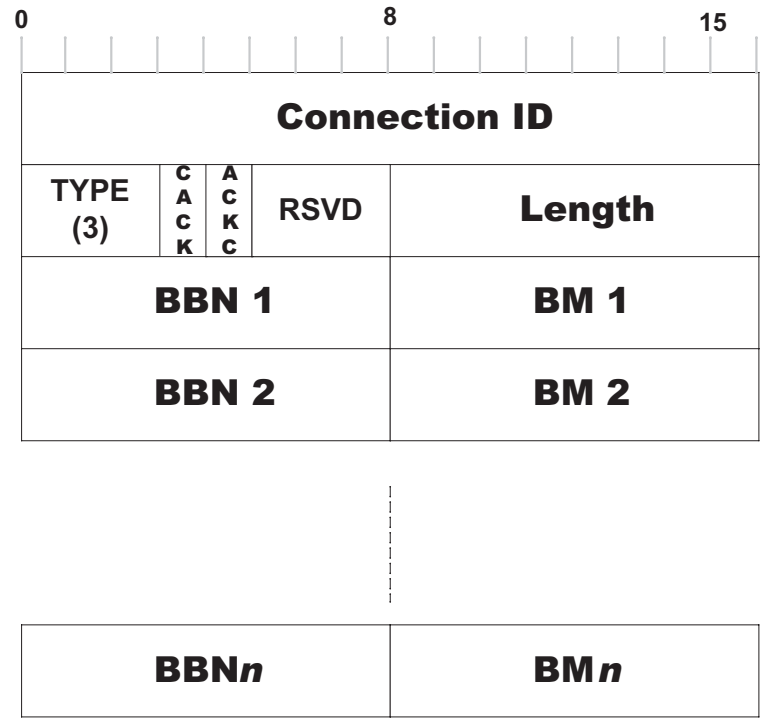
ARQ Control Message Fields

- 1) CID: ID of Connection for which the message was generated
- 2) Type: the type of the message. For ACK/NACK Type = 001
- 3) CACK Flag = '1' if Cumulative Acknowledgement
- 4) ACKC Flag – ACK congestion flag
- 5) Length = number of ACK maps
- 6) ACK MAP = BBN (Bitmap Block Number) + BM (bitmap)

6.3.4.4.2 ARQ MAC Header

HT=1 (1)	EC=0 (1)	Type = "ACK"	Rsvd	ACK/NAC	SN(6)
SN (8)			CID (8)		
CID - cont (8)			HCS (8)		

6.3.4.4.3 ACK Message



6.4 ARQ Algorithm

<<< Specify up to minimal extent ARQ related operations of Transmitter and Receiver >>>

6.5 Support for Advanced Antenna Technology

[Editorial Group: Einan, Huan Chun, John]

<<< Support for Adaptive Antenna Arrays – [title of the submission](#) >>>

6.5.1 Architectural Overview

Adaptive Antenna Arrays are elements of the BWA system that are used in conjunction with the PHY, to enhance the performance of the system. Adaptive Arrays can improve range and system capacity. From the MAC point of view, the PHY can be equipped with an Adaptive Array element or not, depending on the system implementation. In the context of this standard, adaptive array support in the MAC sub-layer is defined by a set of services supplied by the underlying PHY, and by MAC protocol functions controlled by the CS. The main functions affected by Adaptive Array Support are:

- a) MAC control functions- Uplink/Downlink MAP distribution, Channel Description
- b) MAC utility function- PHY related information provided by MAC
- c) Registration functions- Initial Synchronization/Ranging

The main purpose of Adaptive Array Support is to enable the MAC to use any PHY that may have Adaptive Array capabilities, independent of the PHY type, or the type of Adaptive Array in use. Adaptive Array Support can be implemented in the SS MAC (which then will be able to interoperate with the MAC of any BS that have Adaptive Array Support at the MAC layer), or in the BS MAC (Which will be able to interoperate with any SS that have this capability, at the MAC layer).

6.5.2 Definitions

The following definitions apply to Adaptive Array support:

<<< It is a list of the terms, that still need definitions >>>

- a) AAS- Adaptive Array Support
- b) Broadcast Coverage
- c) Unicast Coverage
- d) Reciprocal Matrix Channel Estimation
- e) Feedback Matrix Channel Estimation
- f) AAS Ranging interval

6.5.3 Compatibility model

The Adaptive Array Support (AAS) is an optional component of the 802.16.3 standard MAC.

<<< An 802.16.3 compliant system may implement this option. In the case AAS option is implemented in an 802.16.3 system, it must comply with all specifications as specified in this chapter. The AAS option, if present must not prevent the system from interoperating with other 802.16.3 MAC compliant systems at the MAC level, when operating without AAS option. – [all this is contained in the first sentence >>>](#)

6.5.4 MAC Control functions to support Adaptive Arrays

The main difference between a system with Adaptive Array Processing capabilities, and a system that do not have these, are related to differences in capacity and range that is offered to each of the individual SSs. One property, inherent to FBWA system with AAS is that the Broadcast Coverage is in general, smaller then the Unicast Coverage. The MAC control functions related to AAS are aimed to compensate for this property, as to enable the MAC to work seamlessly with respect to the Adaptive array.

The following messages are used to provide AAS MAC control functions.

- a) P-DUCD (Private Uplink/Downlink Channel Descriptor) used as an alternative to UCD and DCD
- b) P-MAP (Private MAP) used as an alternative to UL-MAP and DL-MAP.

6.5.4.1 Private Uplink/Downlink Channel Descriptor (P-DUCD) message

A Private Uplink/Downlink Channel Descriptor message shall be transmitted by the BS to each SS that did not receive the last DCD or UCD. The P-DUCD message should contain all information contained in the DCD and UCD messages that is relevant to the addressed SS.

The MAC header and Downlink/Uplink channel ID are identical to the type-0 (UCD) packet format. The Type field value is TBD. The Configuration Change Count field is the sum of the values of Configuration Change Count fields in both corresponding UCD and DCD messages, to allow each SS to track changes and discard the P-DUCD message, in case no changes made since last update.

All TLV information that describe Uplink and Downlink channel and burst profiles are identical to their corresponding fields in the original DCD/UCD messages (the final TLV encodings should be updated after determination of the final channel encodings and DCD/UCD fields content for 802.16.3). A SS receiving a P-DUCD will ignore the message, if it had received the UCD and DCD containing the same information. This can be verified easily by comparing the Configuration Change Count field.

6.5.4.2 Private MAP (P-MAP) message

The BS shall generate a Private MAP (P-MAP) message for each SS that had not received the last UL-MAP or DL-MAP. The P-MAP message defines the access to Downlink and Uplink information and contains all information relevant to the addressed SS, contained in the UL-MAP and DL-MAP messages.

The MAC header and Downlink/Uplink channel ID are identical to the type-2 (DL-MAP) packet format. The Type field value is TBD. The P-MAP contains the same fields of UL-MAP and DL-MAP, in a single message. Unlike the typical UL-MAP, which has a large number of information elements (one for each connection for several SSs), the P-MAP shall have only few information elements, since only connections relevant to the addressed SS are informed. A SS receiving a P-MAP will ignore the message, if it had received the MAP of the current frame correctly.

6.5.5 MAC Utility functions to support Adaptive Arrays

Adaptive Arrays use channel state information that are measured by the receiver at one end of the link. When channel state of the downlink is required at the BS, there are two ways to obtain it:

- 1) By relying on reciprocity, thus using the uplink channel state estimation as the downlink channel state.
- 2) By using feedback, thus transmitting the estimated channel state from the SS to BS.

While the first method seems to be more elegant, it will not fit FDD systems, where reciprocity does not apply (due to the large frequency separation between uplink and downlink channels).

Adaptive Array Support for FDD systems contains two MAC control messages: Request for estimation and a reply. The reply contains channel state information, obtained at the SS. The channel state information shall be computed periodically during Channel Estimation Interval (CEI). The CEI is time allowed from the arrival of the signal that the SS uses for channel estimation, to the reply sent by the SS. The value of CEI shall be determined by the BS and broadcasted to all SSs at registration.

6.5.5.1 CSF-REQ message

The Channel State Feedback Request (CSF-REQ) message shall be sent by the BS from time to time, to signal the SS that channel state information should be updated. The time between requests is an internal parameter of the BS MAC, and should not be limited to any specific value. The SS should perform channel estimations on a regular time basis, in order to be able to provide up-to-date estimations upon request.

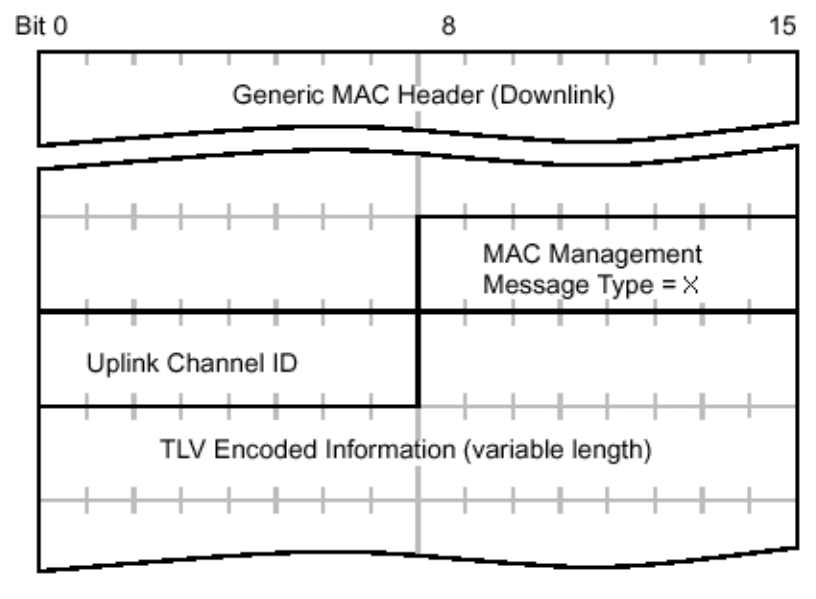


Figure 3: CSF-REQ message

The CID used in the header will be the basic CID of the SS that is addressed.

The following parameters may be included in the TLV encoded information of the message:

- a) Frequency adjust information
- b) Power adjust information
- c) Timing adjust information

6.5.5.2 CSF-REP message

The Channel State Feedback Reply (CSF-REP) message shall be sent by the SS as a response to a CSF-REQ sent by the BS. The SS reply shall be the most up-to-date estimation of the channel, obtained during a Chan-

nel Estimation Interval (CEI). The Channel Estimation Age field shall be used to indicate the number of CEI periods elapsed since the channel estimation was performed. Any value of Channel Estimation Age field, greater then zero, indicates to the BS that the channel information send by SS is not up to date.

Note:

The value of CEI shall be predefined according to channel stability over time (a typical value is 20 msec). The BS is responsible to determine the actual value of CEI, and for the distribution of this value to all SSs.

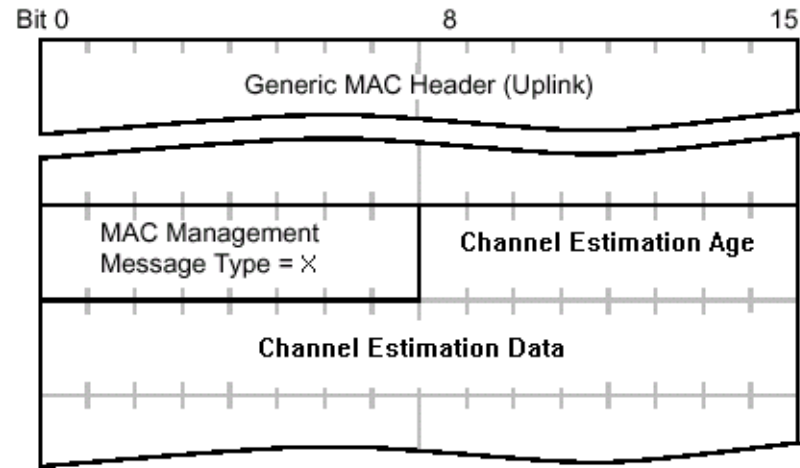


Figure 4: CSF-REP message

The Channel Estimation Data is a stream of data bits captured by the SS PHY. The definition of this stream is left to the PHY, since it may be different for different PHY types. As an example only, this data stream may represent 64 consecutive complex samples (of 8 bits I and Q) of the received preamble or synchronization signal.

Insert the new subclause

6.6 Dynamic Frequency Selection

Insert the new subclause after 6.4

6.7 Coexistence with other 802.16b Systems